

Making Everything Easier!™

Nexus One™

FOR DUMMIES®

Learn to:

- Harness all the power of your amazing Google superphone
- Text, e-mail, browse the Web, and use social networking sites
- Take great-looking photos and video

IN FULL COLOR!

Dan Gookin

Bestselling For Dummies author since 1991



Get More and Do More at Dummies.com®



Start with **FREE** Cheat Sheets

Cheat Sheets include

- Checklists
- Charts
- Common Instructions
- And Other Good Stuff!

To access the Cheat Sheet created specifically for this book, go to
www.dummies.com/cheatsheet/nexusone

Get Smart at Dummies.com

Dummies.com makes your life easier with 1,000s of answers on everything from removing wallpaper to using the latest version of Windows.

Check out our

- Videos
- Illustrated Articles
- Step-by-Step Instructions

Plus, each month you can win valuable prizes by entering our Dummies.com sweepstakes.*

Want a weekly dose of Dummies? Sign up for Newsletters on

- Digital Photography
- Microsoft Windows & Office
- Personal Finance & Investing
- Health & Wellness
- Computing, iPods & Cell Phones
- eBay
- Internet
- Food, Home & Garden

Find out “HOW” at Dummies.com

*Sweepstakes not currently available in all countries; visit Dummies.com for official rules.



Nexus OneTM
FOR
DUMMIES[®]

Nexus OneTM FOR **DUMMIES**[®]

by Dan Gookin



WILEY

Wiley Publishing, Inc.

Nexus One™ For Dummies®

Published by

Wiley Publishing, Inc.

111 River Street

Hoboken, NJ 07030-5774

www.wiley.com

Copyright © 2010 by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published by Wiley Publishing, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permission Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

Trademarks: Wiley, the Wiley Publishing logo, For Dummies, the Dummies Man logo, A Reference for the Rest of Us!, The Dummies Way, Dummies Daily, The Fun and Easy Way, Dummies.com, Making Everything Easier, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Nexus One is a trademark of Google, Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. Wiley Publishing, Inc., is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

LIMIT OF LIABILITY/DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY: THE PUBLISHER AND THE AUTHOR MAKE NO REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE CONTENTS OF THIS WORK AND SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION WARRANTIES OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO WARRANTY MAY BE CREATED OR EXTENDED BY SALES OR PROMOTIONAL MATERIALS. THE ADVICE AND STRATEGIES CONTAINED HEREIN MAY NOT BE SUITABLE FOR EVERY SITUATION. THIS WORK IS SOLD WITH THE UNDERSTANDING THAT THE PUBLISHER IS NOT ENGAGED IN RENDERING LEGAL, ACCOUNTING, OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL SERVICES. IF PROFESSIONAL ASSISTANCE IS REQUIRED, THE SERVICES OF A COMPETENT PROFESSIONAL PERSON SHOULD BE SOUGHT. NEITHER THE PUBLISHER NOR THE AUTHOR SHALL BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES ARISING HEREFROM. THE FACT THAT AN ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE IS REFERRED TO IN THIS WORK AS A CITATION AND/OR A POTENTIAL SOURCE OF FURTHER INFORMATION DOES NOT MEAN THAT THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER ENDORSES THE INFORMATION THE ORGANIZATION OR WEBSITE MAY PROVIDE OR RECOMMENDATIONS IT MAY MAKE. FURTHER, READERS SHOULD BE AWARE THAT INTERNET WEBSITES LISTED IN THIS WORK MAY HAVE CHANGED OR DISAPPEARED BETWEEN WHEN THIS WORK WAS WRITTEN AND WHEN IT IS READ.

For general information on our other products and services, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

For technical support, please visit www.wiley.com/techsupport.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2010930959

ISBN: 978-0-470-64173-6

Manufactured in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



About the Author

Dan Gookin has written over 115 books about technology, many of them accurate. He is most famously known as the author of the original *For Dummies* book, *DOS For Dummies*, published in 1991. Additionally, Dan has achieved fame as one of the first computer radio talk show hosts, the editor of a computer magazine, a national technology spokesman, and an occasional actor on the community theater stage.

Dan still considers himself a writer and technology “guru” whose job it is to remind everyone that our electronics are not to be taken too seriously. His approach is light and humorous, yet very informative. He knows that modern gizmos can be complex and intimidating, but necessary to help people become productive and successful. Dan mixes his vast knowledge of all things high-tech with a unique, dry sense of humor that keeps everyone informed — and awake.

Dan Gookin’s most recent books are *Word 2010 For Dummies*, *PCs For Dummies*, *Windows 7 Edition*, and *Laptops For Dummies*, 4th Edition. He holds a degree in communications/visual arts from the University of California, San Diego. Dan dwells in North Idaho, where he enjoys woodworking, music, theater, riding his bicycle, being with his boys, and fighting local government corruption.

Publisher's Acknowledgments

We're proud of this book; please send us your comments through our online registration form located at <http://dummies.custhelp.com>. For other comments, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at 877-762-2974, outside the U.S. at 317-572-3993, or fax 317-572-4002.

Some of the people who helped bring this book to market include the following:

Acquisitions and Editorial

Senior Project Editor: Mark Enochs

Acquisitions Editor: Katie Mohr

Copy Editor: Rebecca Whitney

Technical Editor: Erick Tseng

Editorial Manager: Leah Cameron

Editorial Assistant: Amanda Graham

Sr. Editorial Assistant: Cherie Case

Cartoons: Rich Tennant
(www.the5thwave.com)

Composition Services

Project Coordinator: Sheree Montgomery

Layout and Graphics: Samantha K. Cherolis,
Kelly Kijovsky

Proofreaders: Dwight Ramsey, Evelyn Wellborn

Indexer: BIM Indexing & Proofreading Services

Publishing and Editorial for Technology Dummies

Richard Swadley, Vice President and Executive Group Publisher

Andy Cummings, Vice President and Publisher

Mary Bednarek, Executive Acquisitions Director

Mary C. Corder, Editorial Director

Publishing for Consumer Dummies

Diane Graves Steele, Vice President and Publisher

Composition Services

Debbie Stailey, Director of Composition Services

Contents at a Glance

<i>Introduction</i>	<i>1</i>
<i>Part I: Say Hello to Your New Phone</i>	<i>7</i>
Chapter 1: A Nexus One Just for You	9
Chapter 2: Setup and Configuration	25
Chapter 3: The Nexus One Basic Tour	41
Chapter 4: Human–Phone Interaction	59
<i>Part II: Your Basic Phone</i>	<i>73</i>
Chapter 5: The Telephone Thing	75
Chapter 6: More Phone Stuff	93
Chapter 7: Message for You!	107
Chapter 8: Friends, Enemies, Contacts	117
<i>Part III: Other Forms of Communication</i>	<i>131</i>
Chapter 9: When Your Thumbs Do the Talking	133
Chapter 10: The Electronic Missive	147
Chapter 11: Out on the Web	165
Chapter 12: A Social Networking Butterfly	179
Chapter 13: The Nexus One Connection	189
<i>Part IV: O What Your Phone Can Do!</i>	<i>205</i>
Chapter 14: Fun with Maps and Navigation	207
Chapter 15: Say “Cheese”	221
Chapter 16: A Digital Louvre	231
Chapter 17: Your Pocket Is Alive with the Sound of Music	247
Chapter 18: Various and Sundry Apps	261
Chapter 19: More Apps from the Android Market	273
<i>Part V: Off the Hook</i>	<i>285</i>
Chapter 20: Out and About	287
Chapter 21: Customize Your Phone	293
Chapter 22: Maintenance and Troubleshooting	305

<i>Part VI: The Part of Tens</i>	319
Chapter 23: Ten Tips, Tricks, and Shortcuts	321
Chapter 24: Ten Things to Remember	329
Chapter 25: Ten Worthy Apps.....	335
<i>Index</i>	339

Table of Contents

Introduction 1

About This Book	1
How to Use This Book.....	2
Foolish Assumptions.....	2
How This Book Is Organized	3
Part I: Say Hello to Your New Phone	3
Part II: Your Basic Phone	3
Part III: Other Forms of Communication.....	4
Part IV: O What Your Phone Can Do!.....	4
Part V: Off the Hook.....	4
Part VI: The Part of Tens.....	4
Icons Used in This Book	4
Where to Go from Here.....	5

Part I: Say Hello to Your New Phone..... 7

Chapter 1: A Nexus One Just for You9

Initial Phone Setup	9
Looking in the box	10
Installing the phone's battery	10
Charging the battery.....	13
Nexus One Orientation	14
Knowing what's what on your phone.....	14
Discovering the earphones.....	18
Exploring your phone's guts	19
Using other phone accessories	21
A Home for Your Phone.....	22
Carrying the Nexus One	22
Storing the Nexus One.....	23

Chapter 2: Setup and Configuration25

Hello, Phone	25
Turning on the Nexus One for the first time	26
Turning on the phone.....	28
Waking up the phone.....	31



Account and Synchronization Setup.....	32
Getting a Google account.....	32
Setting up a Google account on your phone	33
Changing your Google password	35
Configuring the Nexus One for corporate use	36
Goodbye, Phone.....	37
Snoozing the phone	37
Controlling snooze options	38
Turning off the phone.....	38

Chapter 3: The Nexus One Basic Tour 41

Basic Nexus One Operations.....	41
Using the soft buttons	42
Manipulating the touch screen	42
Setting the volume	43
Using the trackball.....	43
“Silence your phone!”	44
Going horizontal.....	44
There’s No Screen Like Home	46
I’ve Been Working on the Home Screen.....	50
Reviewing notifications	50
Starting an application	53
Accessing a widget	53
Using Car Home.....	53
The Launcher	54
Discovering all apps on your phone.....	54
Finding lost apps.....	56
Reviewing your most recently used apps.....	56

Chapter 4: Human–Phone Interaction. 59

The Onscreen Keyboard.....	59
Displaying the keyboard	60
Typing on your phone.....	63
Displaying special characters	64
Choosing a word as you type	65
Text Editing	66
Moving the cursor.....	66
Selecting text	66
Selecting text on a Web page.....	68
Cutting, copying, and pasting text.....	68
Voice Input	70

Part II: Your Basic Phone..... 73**Chapter 5: The Telephone Thing75**

Reach Out and Touch Someone	75
Making a phone call.....	76
Dialing a contact	80
Phoning someone you call often.....	83
Using the Voice Dialer	84
It's the Phone!	86
Receiving a call.....	86
Setting incoming call signals	88
Who's Calling Who When?.....	89
Dealing with a missed call	89
Reviewing the call log.....	89

Chapter 6: More Phone Stuff93

Multiple Call Mania.....	94
Putting someone on hold.....	94
Receiving a new call when you're on the phone.....	94
Juggling two calls.....	96
Making a conference call	98
Send a Call Elsewhere	101
Forwarding phone calls.....	101
Sending a contact directly to voice mail.....	102
Fun with Ringtones.....	103
Choosing the phone's ringtone.....	103
Setting a contact's ringtone.....	103
Using music as a ringtone.....	104
Creating your own ringtones.....	105
Other Phone Features	105
Setting Caller ID.....	105
Activating call waiting	106

Chapter 7: Message for You!107

Carrier Voice Mail.....	107
Setting up carrier voice mail	108
Getting your messages	108
Voice Mail with Google Voice	110
Understanding Google Voice.....	110
Setting up Google Voice	111
Getting a Google Voice message	113
Using Google Voice on the Internet.....	115

Chapter 8: Friends, Enemies, Contacts 117

The People You Know	118
Presenting the Contacts list	118
Searching contacts	121
A New Contact Is Born	121
Making a new contact.....	121
Importing a boatload of contacts	125
Editing a contact	126
Sharing a contact	130
Removing a contact	130

Part III: Other Forms of Communication 131**Chapter 9: When Your Thumbs Do the Talking 133**

Message for You!.....	133
Composing a new text message to a contact	134
Sending a text message when you know only the phone number	136
Receiving a text message	138
Multimedia Messages.....	139
Composing a multimedia message	139
Attaching multimedia to a message	141
Receiving a multimedia message	143
Message Management.....	143
Deleting a conversation	143
Controlling message settings	144

Chapter 10: The Electronic Missive 147

Mail Call!	148
You've Got Mail.....	149
Getting a new message.....	149
Checking the inbox.....	149
Reading an e-mail message.....	152
Searching e-mail.....	155
Make Your Own Mail	155
Composing a new electronic message	156
Starting a new message from a contact	158
Message Attachments.....	159
E-Mail Configuration.....	160
Setting up an e-mail account	160
Creating a signature.....	162
Setting e-mail options.....	163

Chapter 11: Out on the Web	165
Behold the Web Page	166
Looking at the Web	166
Visiting a Web page	166
Browsing back and forth	168
Using bookmarks	168
Managing multiple Web page windows	170
Search the Web	171
Sharing a page	172
The Perils and Joys of Downloading	174
Grabbing an image from a Web page	174
Downloading a file	174
Reviewing your downloads	175
Web Controls and Settings	175
Setting a home page	176
Changing the way the Web looks	176
Setting privacy and security options	177
Chapter 12: A Social Networking Butterfly	179
Your Life on Facebook	179
Creating a Facebook account	180
Visiting Facebook	181
Setting your Facebook status	183
Taking a picture and sending it to Facebook	184
Sharing a picture you already have	185
Changing various Facebook settings	186
Become Famous with Twitter	186
Setting up Twitter on the Nexus One	187
Tweeting to other twits	187
Other Social Networking Opportunities	188
Chapter 13: The Nexus One Connection.	189
Phone-to-Computer Sharing	189
Connecting the phone to the computer	190
Disconnecting the phone from the computer	191
Accessing information on the MicroSD card	191
Synchronizing with doubleTwist	193
Unmounting, removing, and replacing the MicroSD card	195
Wireless Network Access	196
Using the digital network	196
Turning on Wi-Fi	196
Accessing a Wi-Fi network	197
Bluetooth Gizmos	200
Activating Bluetooth	200
Using a Bluetooth device	201

Part IV: O What Your Phone Can Do! 205

Chapter 14: Fun with Maps and Navigation207

Basic Map	208
Using the Maps app	208
Spiffing up the map with Labs	211
The Phone Is Your Copilot	211
Locating your address.....	212
Finding locations on the map	214
Getting directions	216
Navigating to your destination.....	218
Adding a navigation shortcut to the Home screen.....	219

Chapter 15: Say “Cheese”221

The Phone Has a Camera.....	222
Taking a picture	222
Reviewing the picture.....	223
Adjusting the camera	224
You Ought to Be on Video.....	226
Recording video	226
Reviewing your movie	227
Setting various video options.....	229

Chapter 16: A Digital Louvre231

A Gallery of Images.....	232
Perusing the Gallery	232
Working with pictures.....	236
Managing images and videos in groups	238
Share Your Pics and Vids with the World	240
Sharing your pictures and videos.....	241
Uploading a video to YouTube.....	244

Chapter 17: Your Pocket Is Alive with the Sound of Music247

Now Hear This!.....	247
Browsing your music library	248
Playing a tune	249
Turning your phone into a deejay	251
Organize Your Music.....	252
Reviewing playlists	252
Creating a playlist	253
Deleting music	255
More Music.....	255
Synchronizing music with your computer	255
Buying music at the Amazon MP3 store	257

Chapter 18: Various and Sundry Apps261

More than a Wall Calendar	261
Understanding the Calendar	261
Browsing dates	262
Reviewing your schedule	264
Making a new event	266
Your Phone the Calculator	267
Ticktock Goes the Clock	268
Here's Your News and Weather	270
There's No Tube like YouTube	271

Chapter 19: More Apps from the Android Market273

Welcome to the Market.....	274
Visiting the Market	274
Getting a free app.....	276
Buying an app.....	277
Manage Your Applications	278
Reviewing your downloads.....	278
Updating an app.....	279
Removing installed software	281
Controlling your apps	282

Part V: Off the Hook..... 285**Chapter 20: Out and About287**

Where the Nexus One Roams.....	287
Airplane Mode.....	289
International Calling.....	290
Dialing an international number	291
Taking your Nexus One abroad	292

Chapter 21: Customize Your Phone293

It's Your Home Screen	293
Changing wallpaper	294
Adding apps to the Home screen.....	295
Slapping down widgets	296
Creating shortcuts	297
Rearranging and removing icons and widgets.....	297
Organizing apps into folders	299
Phone Security.....	300
Setting a lock	301
Creating an unlock pattern	301
Using a PIN.....	302
Adding a password	303

Various Phone Adjustments	303
Changing various settings	303
Using accessibility settings	304

Chapter 22: Maintenance and Troubleshooting 305

Battery Care and Feeding	305
Monitoring the battery	306
Determining what is sucking up power	307
Saving battery life	309
Regular Phone Maintenance	311
Keeping it clean	311
Backing up your phone	311
Updating the system	312
Help and Troubleshooting	313
Fixing random and annoying problems	313
Getting support	315
Nexus One Q&A	316
“The touch screen doesn’t work!”	316
“The keyboard is too small!”	316
“The battery won’t charge!”	317
“The phone gets so hot that it turns itself off!”	317
“The phone doesn’t do Landscape mode!”	317

Part VI: The Part of Tens 319

Chapter 23: Ten Tips, Tricks, and Shortcuts 321

Summon a Recently Opened App	321
Redundant E-Mail Checking	322
Stop Unneeded Services	323
Set Keyboard Feedback	324
Add a Word to the Dictionary	324
Set Vibrate with the Volume Control	326
Create a Direct-Dial Screen Shortcut	326
Create a Direct Text-Message Screen Shortcut	327
Find Your Lost Cellphone	327
Enter Location Information for Your Events	328

Chapter 24: Ten Things to Remember 329

Lock the Phone on a Call	330
Landscape Orientation	330
Use the Trackball	330
Use the Keyboard Suggestions	331
Things That Consume Lots of Battery Juice	331

Check for Roaming	332
Use the Plus Sign When Dialing Internationally.....	332
Properly Access the MicroSD Card	332
Snap a Pic of That Contact	333
The Search Command.....	333

Chapter 25: Ten Worthy Apps. 335

Advanced Task Killer	336
AK Notepad	336
FlightMode Control Widget	336
Google Finance.....	337
Linda Manager	337
Movies	337
Ringdroid	338
ScreenMode Widget	338
Voice Recorder	338
Zedge.....	338

Index..... 339

Introduction

Well, I suppose it has come to this, a whole book about using a cellphone. Honestly, this is the first technology book I've written where the book itself is larger and weighs more than the technology I'm writing about. In fact, if you find this book's content completely useless, you can carve out its pages and use the book as a handy carrying case for your Nexus One. I do believe, however, that this book has a lot more to offer you than a clever cellphone disguise.

I'm thankful that modern cellphones, or *smartphones*, let you easily make phone calls. Sure, they do other things, but most people are just too intimidated or bewildered to figure that stuff out. Phones now have so many features, and so many new ways to access them, that the mere thought of owning a phone as advanced as the Nexus One can make a typical mortal human flee in terror.

Relax. You have nothing to fear from the Nexus One, primarily because the book you have in your hands is designed to ease your anxiety and show you that you aren't a cellphone dummy. Technology can be intimidating, but armed with the material in this book, you'll be using your Nexus One to its fullest abilities in no time. Heck, you might even enjoy it.

About This Book

This book is a reference. I don't intend for you to read it from cover to cover. Instead, you'll find each chapter its own, self-contained unit covering a specific topic about using the Nexus One. Each chapter is further divided into sections representing tasks you perform with the phone or explaining how to get something done. Sample sections in this book include:

- ✓ Typing on your phone
- ✓ Receiving a new call when you're on the phone
- ✓ Understanding Google Voice
- ✓ Taking a picture and sending it to Facebook
- ✓ Turning your phone into a deejay
- ✓ Getting a free app
- ✓ Dialing an international number
- ✓ Battery-saving tips

There's nothing to memorize, no mysterious utterances, no animal sacrifices, and definitely no PowerPoint presentations. Instead, every section explains a topic as though it's the first thing you read in this book. Nothing is assumed, and everything is cross-referenced. Technical terms and topics, when they come up, are neatly shoved to the side, where they're easily avoided. The idea here isn't to learn anything. This book's philosophy is to help you look it up, figure it out, and get back to your life.

How to Use This Book

This book follows a few conventions for using the Nexus One. The main way you interact with your phone is by using the touch screen, the glassy part of the phone as it's facing you. Buttons also adorn the Nexus One, all of which are explained in Part I of this book.

You have various ways to touch the screen, which are explained and named in Chapter 3.

Chapter 4 discusses text input on the Nexus One, which can either involve the onscreen keyboard or dictation. Whenever you're told to input information into the phone, you use the onscreen keyboard or dictation (though dictation doesn't work everywhere).

This book directs you to do things on your phone by following numbered steps. Each step involves a specific activity, such as touching something on the screen — for example:

3. Choose Downloads.

This step directs you to touch the text or item on the screen labeled Downloads. You might also be told to do this:

3. Touch Downloads.



Some phone options can be turned off or on, as indicated by a gray box with a green check mark, shown in the margin. By touching the box on the screen, you add or remove the green check mark. When the green check mark appears, the option is on; otherwise, it's off.

Foolish Assumptions

Even though this book is written with the gentle handholding required by anyone who is just starting out or who is easily intimidated, I have made a few assumptions. For example, I assume that you're a human being and not merely a cleverly disguised owl.

My biggest assumption: You have a Nexus One phone from Google. Though this book can be used generically with any Android phone, it's specific to the tasks the Nexus One can perform, and to all the special features added by Google to its very own phone.

I also assume that you have a computer, either a desktop or laptop. The computer can be a PC or Windows computer, or it can be a Macintosh. Oh, I suppose it could also be a Linux computer. In any event, I refer to your computer as “your computer” throughout this book. When my directions are specific to a PC or Mac, I say so.

A program that runs on the Nexus One is an *app*, which is short for *application*.

Finally, this book doesn't assume that you have a Google account, but having one already really helps. Information is provided in Chapter 2 about setting up a Google account — an important part of using a Nexus One; having an account opens up a slew of useful features, information, and programs that make using your Nexus One more productive.

How This Book Is Organized

This book has been sliced into six parts, each of which describes a certain aspect of the Nexus One or how it's used.

Part I: Say Hello to Your New Phone

This part of the book serves as your introduction to the Nexus One. Chapters cover setup and orientation and familiarize you with how the phone works. This part is a good place to start because you'll discover information that isn't obvious from just guessing how the phone works.

Part II: Your Basic Phone

Nothing is more basic for a phone to do than make phone calls, which is the topic of the chapters in this part of the book. The Nexus One can make calls, receive calls, and serve as an answering service for calls you miss. It also manages all the people you know and even those you don't want to know but have to know anyway.

Part III: Other Forms of Communication

The Nexus One is about more than just telephone communications. This part of the book explores other ways you can use your phone to stay in touch with people, the Internet, and other gizmos such as your desktop computer or a Bluetooth headset. Chapters in this part explain how to use the Nexus One for text messaging, sending and receiving e-mail, browsing the Web, using social networking sites, and setting up your phone for networking, among other things.

Part IV: O What Your Phone Can Do!

This part of the book explores those nonphone tasks that your Google phone can do. For example, it can find locations on a map, give you verbal driving directions, take pictures, shoot videos, play music, play games, and do all sorts of wonderful things that no one would ever believe that a phone can do. The chapters in this part of the book get you up to speed on those activities.

Part V: Off the Hook

The chapters in this part of the book discuss a slate of interesting topics, from taking the phone overseas and making international calls to customizing the phone and completing the necessary chore of maintenance and troubleshooting.

Part VI: The Part of Tens

Finally, this book ends with the traditional *For Dummies* Part of Tens, where each chapter lists ten items or topics. For the Nexus One, the chapters include tips, tricks, shortcuts, things to remember, and a list of some of my favorite Nexus One apps.

Icons Used in This Book



This icon flags useful, helpful tips or shortcuts.



This icon marks a friendly reminder to do something.



This icon marks a friendly reminder *not* to do something.



This icon alerts you to overly nerdy information and technical discussions of the topic at hand. The information is optional reading, though it may win you a round of *Double Jeopardy*.

Where to Go from Here

Start reading! Observe the table of contents and find something that interests you. Or, look up your question in the index. When those suggestions don't cut it, just start reading Chapter 1.

My e-mail address is dgookin@wambooli.com. Yes, that's my real address. I reply to all e-mail I receive, and you get a quick reply if you keep your question short and specific to this book. Although I enjoy saying Hi, I cannot answer technical support questions, resolve billing issues, or help you troubleshoot your phone. Thanks for understanding.

You can also visit my Web page for more information or as a diversion: www.wambooli.com.

Enjoy this book and your Nexus One!

Part I

Say Hello to Your New Phone

The 5th Wave

By Rich Tennant

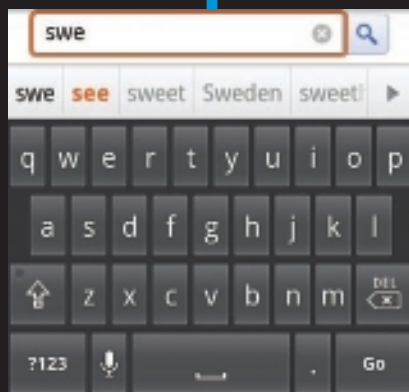
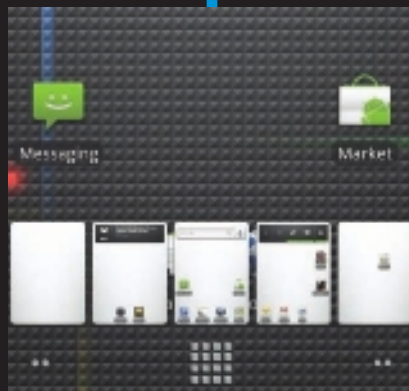
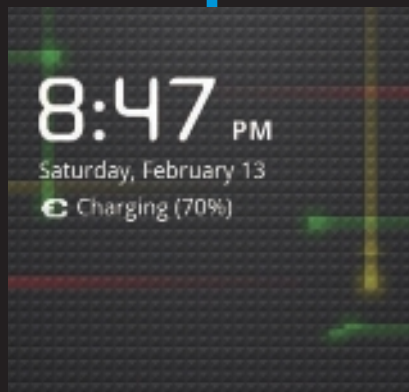
On April 25th, 2051, a smartphone was released with a keyboard that humans could actually use.



In this part . . .

Once upon a time, it wasn't your phone. No, the phone belonged to The Phone Company. When you moved, you left the phone. When you bought a new house, The Phone Company gave you a new phone to use. It may seem terrible not to own your phone, but what's *truly* terrible is having to get a new phone over and over again, often just to flee the oppressive tyranny of a cellular pricing plan.

Ho boy! Change has come, and it's a good thing for you as a cellphone owner. You have in your possession one of the best phones ever, the Nexus One. It does a lot. I won't fool you by saying that it's uncomplicated and easy to use. Seriously, the Nexus One is such an advanced cellphone that it has been dubbed the *superphone*. This part of the book introduces you to the Nexus One, explaining some of the advanced complex information in as calm a manner as possible.





A Nexus One Just for You

In This Chapter

- ▶ Putting your phone together
- ▶ Charging the battery
- ▶ Identifying the phone's pieces parts
- ▶ Taking the phone with you
- ▶ Keeping the phone in one place

I find high-tech packaging to be either a source of joy or a cause of woe. The boxes that some gizmos come in are delightful to open, almost breathtaking. Then there's the hard-shell plastic container. It's impossible to open, requiring assault with a heavy-gauge knife or an industrial laser to free its contents. Heck, those packages should be air-dropped on strategic positions during wartime. Enemy soldiers would either die from the frustration of not being able to open the darn things or cut themselves on the hard plastic and bleed to death.

Fortunately for you, the Nexus One comes in a charming box that's pleasurable to open and explore. It's fun! Your enjoyment lasts a short time, though, because it isn't opening the box that inspired this chapter. No, it's what's inside the box that makes this orientation chapter necessary.



Initial Phone Setup

Wouldn't it be cool if you were opening the box your new phone came in and the phone started to ring? You'd quickly open the box, lift the phone from its gentle, cardboard cradle, and put the phone to your ear as a cartoony voice said, "Thanks for buying me!" Someday that may happen. Until then, you have to complete some initial phone setup for the Nexus One, which is covered in this section.

Looking in the box

Several things come in the Nexus One phone box. Even though you've probably opened the box already and scattered its contents to the four winds, I suggest that you take a moment to locate and identify each of the following goodies:

- ✓ Nexus One phone
- ✓ Papers, instructions, the warranty, perhaps a booklet tersely titled *Important*
- ✓ The phone's battery
- ✓ Earphones (including the tiny ear bud covers and cable clip)
- ✓ USB cable
- ✓ Power adapter
- ✓ Sleeve

The most important doodad is the phone itself, which must be assembled before you can use it. So, no, it won't be ringing inside the box. (See the next section for assembly directions.)

You can safely set all this stuff aside until you get the phone assembled. I recommend keeping the instructions and other information as long as you own the phone: The phone's box makes an excellent storage place for that stuff as well as for anything else you don't plan to use right away. Plus, the box looks handsome on any bookshelf or bureau.

Your phone may come with more goodies than the ones described in this book. If anything is missing or appears to be damaged, contact Google support at (888) 48NEXUS, or online at

google.com/phone/support

Installing the phone's battery

Your first duty as a Nexus One owner is to install the battery. Your second duty is to charge the battery. Installing the battery is easy, and charging it doesn't require a lightning storm and a kite.

To install the battery, you remove the phone's back cover. Remove the phone from its box and from any plastic wrapping, if you haven't already. Follow these steps:

- 1. Flip the phone over so that the front (the glassy part) is facing away from you.**



You cannot remove the phone's cover when the headset is plugged in or when the phone is turned on. If the headset is plugged in, unplug it; if the phone has already been turned on (which is difficult when the battery hasn't been installed), turn off the phone.

2. Place both your thumbs on the bottom part of the upper back cover.

Refer to Figure 1-1 for the proper thumb placement.



Figure 1-1: A thumb placement suggestion for removing the back cover.

3. Using your thumbs, push up the upper part of the back of the case.

A gentle push is all that's required; feel free to squeeze the phone as you push upward. The back cover pops up a wee bit, about 1/8-inch (refer to Figure 1-1).

4. Remove the phone's back cover and set it aside.

Avoid the temptation to look through the camera's eye hole before you set aside the cover — well, unless the room is empty. Then it's okay.

5. Orient the battery so that its metallic contacts are in the lower left corner as you're looking at the back of the phone.

The battery is shaped like a giant, square mint cookie. The phone's battery doesn't taste like mint, so please do not eat it.

6. Insert the battery, left edge first, into the phone, and then lower the right edge, like you're closing the cover on a book.

See Figure 1-2 for help in positioning and inserting the battery. The metal contacts on the battery should be on the lower left edge as you insert the battery into the phone, as illustrated in the figure.

When the battery is fully inserted, the back of it is flush with the back of the phone; it cannot stick up, not one itty bit.

7. Replace the phone's back cover.

Put the cover back on the phone just about 1/8-inch above where it normally sits. Then slide down the cover, using your thumbs, until it locks into position.

After the battery is installed, the next step is to charge it. Continue reading in the next section.



The phone may turn itself on after you insert the battery the first time. If you're ready to set up and configure the phone, go to Chapter 2 and read the section "Turning on the Nexus One for the first time." Otherwise, follow these steps to turn off the phone:

1. Press and hold the power button on top of the phone.

After a moment, you see the Power Off button, on the phone's touch screen display.

2. Touch the Power Off button with your finger.**3. Touch the OK button to confirm.**

The phone turns itself off.

When you're ready to turn the phone on for the first time, read the section "Turning on the Nexus One for the first time" in Chapter 2.



Figure 1-2: Inserting the phone's battery.

Charging the battery

After inserting the battery into your new phone, your next step is to charge it. It's cinchy:

- 1. Plug the phone's charging adapter into a wall socket.**
- 2. Plug the phone into the charger cord.**

The charger cord plugs into the micro USB connector, found at the phone's bottom edge. The connector plugs in only one way.

As the phone charges, the notification light on the phone's front side lights up. When the light is orangish yellow, the phone is charging. When the light is green, the phone is fully charged.



- ✓ Wait until the notification light turns green before unplugging the phone from the power cable, especially the first time you charge the phone.
- ✓ The notification light uses three colors: amber for charging, green for fully charged, and red for a low battery.
- ✓ You can use the phone while it's charging.
- ✓ The Nexus One can use any standard cellphone charger. The charger must have a *micro USB connector* to be able to plug into the phone.
- ✓ You can charge the Nexus One in your car, using what was once called a “cigarette lighter.” Simply ensure that your car cellphone charger features a micro USB connector.
- ✓ The phone also charges itself when plugged into a computer using either the USB cable that came with the phone or any micro USB cable attached to a computer. The computer must be on for charging to work.
- ✓ A *micro USB connector* is a standard USB connector, but one that features a teensy dongle that plugs into the bottom of the Nexus One phone. The connector has a flat, trapezoid shape, which makes it different from the *mini-USB connector*, which is squat and slightly larger and used primarily on evil cellphones.

Nexus One Orientation

People still refer to “dialing” a phone even though you have to look hard to find a phone with a dial on it any more. Even the familiar touch-tone pad is gone from modern cellphones such as the Nexus One. Instead, you find a nice, flat, glass front and a sleek body that 50 years ago my grandmother would have mistaken for a fancy cigarette case. Festoon that case with buttons, knobs, and holes and you have a need for some basic gizmo orientation.

Knowing what's what on your phone

Like all other confusing things, the Nexus One attempts to intimidate you with some new terms for its features, not to mention that you may not be aware of all the hardware features available. Fret not, gentle reader.

Figure 1-3 illustrates the names of all the useful knobs and doodads on the front of your Nexus One phone. Figure 1-4 illustrates the same thing, but for your phone's backside.



Figure 1-3: Your phone's face.



Figure 1-4: Your phone's rump.

The terms referenced in both Figures 1-3 and 1-4 are the same as used elsewhere in this book as well as in whatever scant Nexus One documentation exists.

- ✓ The phone's power button, which turns the phone off or on, is found on top of the phone, as shown in both figures.
- ✓ The main part of the phone is the touch screen display. You use the touch screen with one or more of your fingers to control the phone, which is where it gets the name *touch* screen.
- ✓ The soft buttons appear below the touch screen (refer to Figure 1-3). They have no function unless the phone is turned on.
- ✓ Yes, the main microphone is on the bottom of the phone. Even so, it still picks up your voice, loud and clear. You have no need to hold the phone at an angle for the bottom microphone to work.
- ✓ The trackball rolls around and can be pressed like a button. It also lights up and pulses when the phone tries to alert you.
- ✓ The trackball cannot be used to turn the phone off or on, though it seems like it should. See Chapter 4 for more information on how the trackball is used.
- ✓ The trackball may flash when you receive an incoming call. The flashing is in addition to the phone's ringing or vibrating signal.
- ✓ When the phone is connected to a Bluetooth headset, the trackball flashes blue for an incoming call. I find that coincidence odd.
- ✓ A slow, pulsing white light from the trackball indicates that a notification has been received, such as a new e-mail, text message, or missed call. Chapter 3 reviews the various types of notifications on the Nexus One.
- ✓ Adjust the phone's volume by using the volume button on the phone's left side (refer to Figure 1-3).
- ✓ The Nexus One's rear microphone wasn't added because Google expects you to use your phone backward. Nope, the rear microphone is used for special noise-cancelling powers so that the people you're speaking with can hear you better in loud, obnoxious places, like my kitchen.
- ✓ On the bottom of the Nexus One, you find a series of four dots or holes, two apiece on either side of the Power/USB connector. Three of the dots are gold-plated pads designed for use with the docking stand or car adapter. See the section "Using other phone accessories," later in this chapter. The fourth dot is a hole, behind which is the Nexus One microphone.



Discovering the earphones

The Nexus One comes with a set of “ear bud” earphones. You’re probably familiar with this type of earphone: The buds set into your ears. You insert the sharp, pointy end of the earphones (the end that you don’t want to stick into your ears) into the top of the phone.

Between the ear buds and the sharp pointy thing is a large, black noodle that helps you control the phone’s music-playing features. Figure 1-5 illustrates the functions found on the noodle’s three buttons.

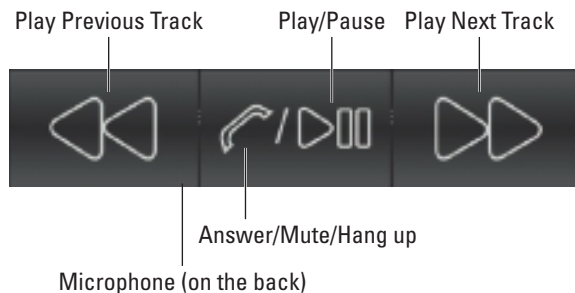


Figure 1-5: The earphone’s noodle controller.

The primary way to use the earphone’s noodle is to control the music you listen to: Press a button to hear the previous track (song) or the next track, or press the middle button to play and pause music. The button also works to control the phone:

When the phone rings, you can press the middle button to answer the phone. Doing so pauses music (if it’s playing) and lets you talk and listen to the caller.

While you’re on the phone, you can press the middle button to mute the microphone. Press the button again to unmute.

Finally, to hang up the phone, press and hold the middle button.

The teensy hole on the back side of the noodle serves as the phone’s microphone. You can use the earphones as a hands-free headset with the Nexus One.



- ✓ The ear buds are labeled R for right and L for left.
- ✓ A handy way to tell which ear bud goes into which ear is to note that the right ear bud is also labeled with the Android character, shown in the margin.
- ✓ You don’t use the earphone’s noodle buttons to set the phone’s volume, either in a call or while you’re listening to music. Instead, the phone’s



volume is set by using the volume control buttons found on the side of the phone, as illustrated in Figures 1-3 and 1-4.

- ✓ See Chapter 17 for more information on using your Nexus One as a portable music player.
- ✓ Be sure to fully insert the ear phone connector into the phone. The person you're talking with can't hear you well when the earphones are plugged in only partway.
- ✓ You can also use a Bluetooth headset with your phone, to listen to a call or to music. See Chapter 13 for more information on Bluetooth attachments for the Nexus One.
- ✓ It's possible to use another set of headphones with the Nexus One. Any standard earphones work, though if that headset features "noodle" buttons, they may not work the same as the original Nexus One headset.
- ✓ Fold your earphones when you don't need them rather than wrap them up in a loop: Put the ear buds and connector in one hand and then pull the wire straight out with your other hand. Fold the wire in half and then in half again. You can then put the earphones in your pocket or on a tabletop. By folding the wires, you avoid creating one of those wire balls made of tangled Christmas tree lights.



Exploring your phone's guts

Rarely do you need to examine the intricacies of your phone's innards. Still, unlike other cellphones, the Nexus One is designed to have easily replaceable items that you can access without having to sneak around behind the manufacturer's back, prying open the phone and alerting the warranty police.

Specifically, you could have three reasons to open your Nexus One:

- ✓ To replace the battery
- ✓ To access the MicroSD memory card
- ✓ To access the SIM card

When you need to access those items, you can obey these steps:

1. Turn off your phone.

See the section "Turning off the phone" in Chapter 2 for more information.

2. Flip the phone over.

3. Using your thumbs, press up on the upper back cover (refer to Figure 1-1).

4. Set aside the back cover.

Use Figure 1-6 to identify the phone's battery, MicroSD memory card, and SIM card.



Put your fingernail here to help lift the battery.

Figure 1-6: Stuff inside your phone.



At this point, you can access the battery, MicroSD card, or SIM card.

To remove the MicroSD card or SIM, you must first remove the battery.

Remove the battery by lifting its lower right corner. Use your fingernail to lift that wee little tab found on the bottom of the battery (refer to Figure 1-5).

To remove the MicroSD card or SIM, slide it up (toward the top of the phone). Pull the card all the way out until it's free.

When you're done replacing the battery, MicroSD card, or SIM or rummaging around inside your phone, you close things up:

5. **Set the back cover on the phone, just about $\frac{1}{8}$ -inch above where it sits when the cover is closed.**
6. **Slide the cover down where it locks into position.**

You can turn on the phone again after the cover is locked into place. See Chapter 2 for information on turning on your phone.



- ✓ See Chapter 22 for more information on the Nexus One battery.
- ✓ You cannot use the Nexus One as a phone unless a valid SIM card is properly inserted. You buy SIM cards from cellular service companies, or they can be transferred from other, compatible phones.
- ✓ When the Nexus One is lacking a SIM card, the status bar on the touch screen display shows a No SIM Card notification icon, as shown in the margin. See Chapter 3 for more information about notifications.
- ✓ See the nearby sidebar “What is a SIM?” for more information on what a SIM is and how it’s not an artificial person from a computer game.
- ✓ Do not remove the MicroSD card unless you have first unmounted it. Refer to Chapter 13 for information on how to unmount the MicroSD card.

Using other phone accessories

The Nexus One comes with two additional accessories: a desktop dock and a car dock. Not included is the what’s-up-dock or the hickory-dickory-dock, though rumor is that they will be available soon.

Desktop dock

The *desktop dock* is a fancy little wedge of a device, looking like a stubby shoehorn. It connects with a power adapter (just like the one that comes with the Nexus One) and an audio cable.

When your phone is connected to a power supply, you can set the phone into the docking stand. The phone then runs the Clock application, described in Chapter 18. The Clock application provides a useful interface for playing music or using the phone as a digital alarm clock.

Sadly, the docking stand doesn’t allow for USB communications with a computer. You can use a USB cable to power the docking stand, but its real purpose is to interface the Nexus One with audio equipment for listening to music and other media.

The docking stand can be ordered from Google the same way you originally ordered the Nexus One. Visit www.google.com/phone.

Car dock

The car dock features a cradle for the Nexus One on one end and, when properly assembled, a suction cup on the other end. You can probably stick the thing to any flat surface, but because it’s a car dock, I assume that it will be affixed or suctioned to a windshield.



What is a SIM?

The *SIM*, also known as a *SIM card*, sets your cellphone's identity. The SIM, which stands for Subscriber Identity Module, contains a special serial number used by your cellular provider to help identify your phone and keep track of the calls you make. Additionally, the SIM can be used to store information, such as electronic messages and names and addresses.

A typical way to use a SIM is to replace a broken phone with a new one: You plug the SIM from the old phone into the new phone, and

instantly the phone is recognized as your own. Of course, the two phones need to use similar cellular networks for the transplant operation to be successful.

On the Nexus One, the MicroSD card is the phone's primary storage device, where you keep your music and photos plus other information as described throughout this book. But you still need a SIM card to make phone calls on the cellular network.

When you put the Nexus One into the car dock, it automatically switches to the screen named the Car Home, covered in Chapter 3. This screen gives you quick access to various features you might find useful when driving.

- ✓ The car dock features speakers so that you can better hear the phone in your auto. The dock also comes with a charger.
- ✓ The car dock uses Bluetooth to communicate with the phone. Refer to Chapter 13 for more information on using Bluetooth with the Nexus One.

A Home for Your Phone

Back home, the phone was always in the kitchen, on the wall. We also had a phone out in the living room, one with a very long cord so that we could take it out onto the patio and talk outside! After you charge the battery on the Nexus One, it's untethered and can go anywhere. Still, it needs a home and you should find it one, even if that home is in your pocket.

Carrying the Nexus One

Your phone is designed to fit into your pocket or purse. It can stir around in there with little possibility that something random will turn it off or — worse — dial up Mongolia and use up all your monthly minutes.

The phone can even be returned to a pocket when you're making a call or while you listen to music. The Nexus One features a proximity sensor, which disables the touch screen while you keep the phone close to your face or inside a pocket. The proximity sensor ensures that the touch screen is disabled while the phone is kept snug somewhere.



- ✓ Though it's okay to put the phone somewhere when you're making a call, do not touch the phone's power button (refer to Figure 1-3). Doing so may temporarily enable the touch screen, which can hang up a call or mute the phone or do any of a number of undesirable things.
- ✓ You can always store the Nexus One in the handy little pouch that came in its box. Even so, I recommend keeping the phone out in the open so that you can see the trackball light, which reminds you of various alerts, such as new e-mail or voice mail messages.
- ✓ Belt hooks and pouches for cellphones are available that you can use to help tote around the Nexus One.
- ✓ Don't forget that the phone is in your pocket, especially in your coat or jacket. You might accidentally sit on the phone, or it can fly out when you take off your coat. The worst fate for the Nexus One, or any cellphone, is to take a trip through the wash. I'm sure the phone has nightmares about the possibility.

Storing the Nexus One

I recommend that you find a place for your phone when you're not taking it with you. Make it a consistent spot: on top of your desk or workstation, in the kitchen, on the night stand — you get the idea. Phones are as prone to loss as your car keys and glasses, so consistency is the key to keeping and finding your phone in one spot.

Then again, your phone does ring, so when you lose it, you can always have someone else call your cellphone to help you locate it.

- ✓ I keep the Nexus One on my desk, next to my computer. Conveniently, I have the charger plugged into the wall, so I keep the phone plugged in and charging when I'm not using it.
- ✓ Phones on coffee tables get buried under magazines and are often squished when rude people put their feet on the furniture.
- ✓ Avoid putting the Nexus One in direct sunlight; heat is a bad thing for any electronic gizmo.
- ✓ Do not put your phone through the laundry (see the preceding section). See Chapter 22 for information on properly cleaning the phone.

Setup and Configuration

In This Chapter

- ▶ Setting up the Nexus One
- ▶ Turning on the phone
- ▶ Working with your Google account
- ▶ Putting the phone to sleep
- ▶ Turning off the Nexus One

Traditionally, the telephone was an item that required no setup or configuration. Not until the telephone-answering machine combo made its debut did utter confusion reign with regard to using a phone. Most people simply ignored the optional features. You could easily ignore setup and configuration of early cellphones as well, mostly because all they did was make phone calls. The Nexus One is different.

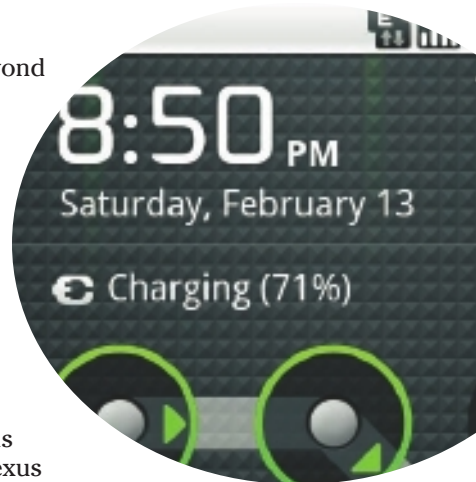
Your new cellphone is a communications device. Beyond making phone calls, it talks with the Internet, listens to satellites orbiting the earth, and takes pictures and video. To get the most from the Nexus One, you need to have and use a Google account. This chapter helps you set up some of these features and describes the basic steps for turning the phone off and on.

Hello, Phone

One basic operation you should know for any gizmo is how to turn it on. As the so-called *superphone*, the Nexus One features not one but three different and super ways for you to turn it on. Each of those ways is covered in this section.



Before you can turn on the phone, the battery must be installed. See Chapter 1.



Turning on the Nexus One for the first time

To turn on the Nexus One for the first time, press the power button. You see some fancy graphics and animation. After a moment, the Android character appears. If you don't see the Android character, the phone has already been set up. Otherwise, follow these steps to continue the initial setup procedure:

1. Obey the instructions on the touch screen display and touch the Android icon.

Instructions appear, describing your new phone and some things you can learn. Read them if you want to, or just pretend to read them. There will be no test.

2. Touch the Begin button to view the tutorial.

3. Read about using the keyboard.

I offer more detailed directions in Chapter 4.

4. Drag your finger up or down on the touch screen to scroll through the text.

Yes, it's okay to smear your fingerprints all over the touch screen; that's how the phone works.

5. Touch the Next button.

6. Choose Create to set up a new Google account or Sign In to sign in to your existing Google account.

Yes, it's a very good idea to have a Google account with the Google phone. And, it's easier to set up a Google account using your desktop computer than it is to use the phone. See the section "Account and Synchronization Setup" for more information on using a Google account with the Nexus One.

If you have multiple Google accounts, sign in to the phone using the primary account or the one that has the Calendar you use most often.

7. Touch the first text field, where you enter your Google account name.

A keyboard appears at the bottom of the touch screen.

8. Use the keyboard to type your Google account name.

The Google account name is also the first part of your Gmail e-mail account. For example, my Gmail account name is dan.gookin.

Touch the keyboard's Delete button to back up if you make a mistake.

9. Touch the password text box.

10. Type your Google account password.



Each character in the password appears briefly as you type it, and then the character turns into a black dot. Pay attention to the characters you type!



Touch the keyboard's Shift key to display capital letters.

A small icon of a keyboard key with a question mark and numbers, representing the Symbols key used to see numbers and other symbols.

?123

Touch the keyboard's Symbols key to see numbers and a smattering of other symbols that might dwell in your Google account password.

11. Touch the Sign In button.



If you can't see the Sign In button, touch the Done button on the keyboard, or, if the Done button isn't available, touch the Back soft button, found at the bottom of the touch screen (shown in the margin).

You may have to wait a while for things to sync up.

12. Choose whether you want to use Google locations.

You do, but you can always change this option later, after you use the phone and figure out what it means. (It has to do with map applications.)

13. Touch the Next button.

14. Choose whether you want to back up the phone's settings.

I recommend using this option, if it's available.

15. Touch the Next button.

When the phone isn't connected to a network, you're prompted to input the date and time. You can do it now or wait until you're in range of a network, in which case the date and time are set automatically.

16. Read the final screen.

Blah blah blah.

17. Click the Finish Setup button.

Initial setup of the Nexus One is complete.

After the initial setup, the Home screen appears. Chapter 3 offers more information about the Home screen, which you should probably read right away, before the temptation to play with the Nexus One becomes unbearable.

- ✓ If you have more than one Google account, you have to manually add that account after you initially configure the Nexus One. See the section "Setting up a Google account on your phone."
- ✓ The Nexus One works closely with your Google account, sharing information stored on the Internet for your e-mail, Gmail contacts, Google Calendar appointments, and other Google applications.

- ✔ A Google account is free. Google makes bazillions of dollars by selling advertising on the Web, so it doesn't charge for your Google account or any of the fine services it offers.
- ✔ You will find that your phone has automatically synced with your Google account after its initial setup. Your contacts, calendar appointments, and Google Talk pals will already be configured for you on the Nexus One.
- ✔ You can also configure your phone to work with other information-sharing services, such as those offered by your company or organization. See the section "Configuring the Nexus One for corporate use," later in this chapter.
- ✔ If your Nexus One phone lacks a SIM card, you're also prompted to connect to a wireless or Wi-Fi network to complete the setup. See Chapter 13 for more information about using your phone with a wireless computer network.

Turning on the phone

Unlike turning on the phone for the first time, turning it on after that isn't that involved. In fact, you probably won't normally turn off the phone much. After you turn it off, turn it on again by pressing and releasing the power button, found atop the phone.

After you press the power button, the phone turns itself on. It may make a sound or vibrate. Next, you see the Nexus One logo and animation. Eventually, one of two unlocking screens appears.

The first unlocking screen is more common (see Figure 2-1). To access your phone, use your finger to slide the green padlock icon to the right.

There are additional unlocking screens that may appear when you've added more security to your Nexus One. There is a pattern unlock, a PIN, and a password. For the pattern unlock, you have to trace your finger on the screen, as shown in Figure 2-2, to unlock the phone. For the PIN and password locks, you have to input a secret number or password before you can use the phone.

Eventually, you see the Nexus One Home screen, which is where you control the phone, run applications, and do all sorts of other interesting things. The Home screen is covered in Chapter 3.

- ✔ After unlocking the phone, you may hear some alerts or see notifications. These messages inform you of various events going on in the phone, such as new e-mail, scheduled appointments, updates, and more. See Chapter 3 for information on notifications.

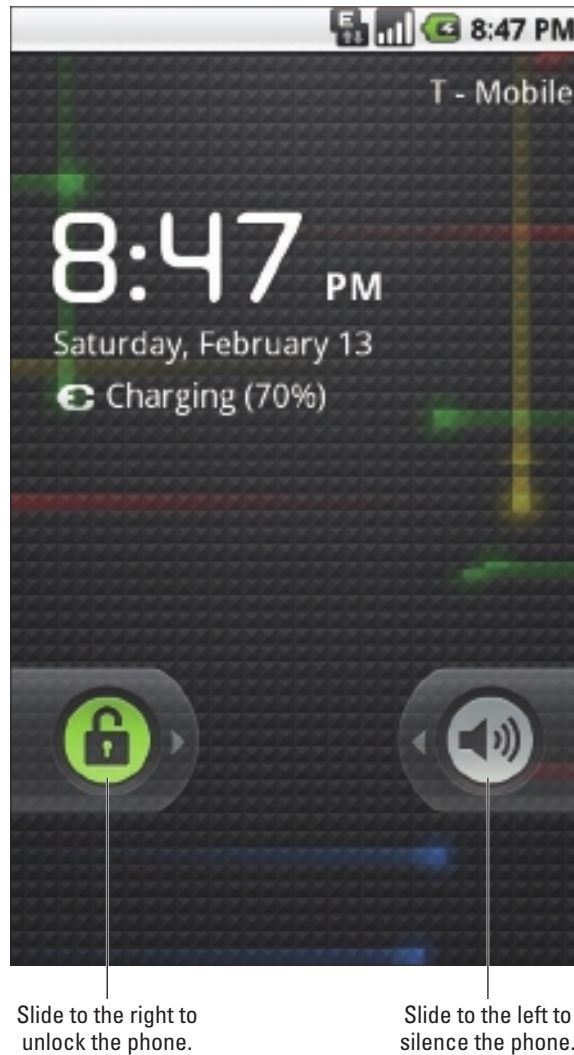
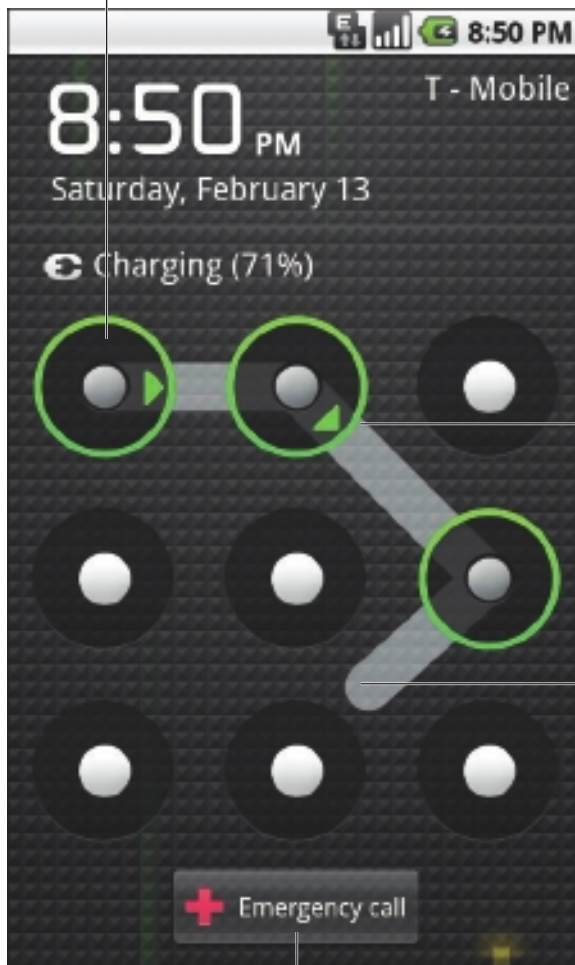


Figure 2-1: Unlocking the phone.

- ✓ The unlock pattern (refer to Figure 2-2), as well as PIN and Password options, add an extra level of protection in case your phone is ever lost or stolen. See Chapter 21 for additional information.

Drag your finger from one dot to another.



Follow the pattern you've already set.

Touch to make an emergency call.

Figure 2-2: Inputting the phone's security pattern.

- ✓ Even if the phone has extra unlocking screens, you can still make emergency calls: Touch the Emergency Call button (refer to Figure 2-2).
- ✓ For information on turning off the phone, see the section “Turning off the phone,” later in this chapter.



There's an Android in your phone

You might see or hear the term *Android* used in association with your phone. That's because your phone, like your computer, has an *operating system*. The operating system is the main program in charge of a computer's hardware. It controls everything. For the Nexus One, that operating system is called *Android*.

The Android operating system was developed by Google. Well, actually, it was developed by another company that Google gobbled. Anyway: Android is based on the popular Linux operating system, used to power desktop computers

and larger, more expensive computers all over the world. Android offers a version of Linux customized for mobile devices, such as the Nexus One but also the popular Droid phone as well as many other phones I can't think of right now.

Because the Nexus One uses the Android operating system, your phone has access to its thousands of software programs. If the program runs under Android, you can get that program for your phone. The entire process is covered in Chapter 19.

Waking up the phone

Most of the time, you don't turn off your phone. Instead, the phone does the electronic equivalent of falling asleep. Either the phone falls asleep on its own (after you've ignored it for a while) or you can put it to sleep by singing it a lullaby or following the information in the section "Snoozing the phone," later in this chapter.

In Sleep mode, the phone is still on and can still receive calls (as well as e-mails and other notifications), but the touch screen is turned off.

The phone wakes itself when it receives a call; you see the unlock screen, similar to the one shown earlier, in Figure 2-1, though information about the person calling appears on the touch screen: Slide the unlock tab to the right to unlock and answer the phone.

When the phone isn't ringing, you can wake it up at any time by pressing the power button. A simple, short press is all that's needed. The phone wakes up, yawns, and turns on the touch screen display, and you can then unlock the phone as described in the preceding section.

- ✓ Touching the touch screen when it's off doesn't wake the phone.
- ✓ Pressing the trackball button when the phone is off doesn't wake the phone.

- ✓ Loud noises don't wake the phone.
- ✓ The phone doesn't snore while it's sleeping.
- ✓ See the later section "Snoozing the phone" for information on manually putting the phone to sleep.

Account and Synchronization Setup

After initially turning on your phone and configuring everything, you're truly ready to go — unless you opted to skip the account synchronization step or you just didn't get a chance to synchronize the proper accounts. Don't fret! The Nexus One welcomes your ability to procrastinate by providing more account synchronization options, as described in this section.

Getting a Google account



It really, *really* helps to have a Google account to get the most from your Nexus One phone. If you don't have a Google account, run — don't walk or mince — to a desktop computer and follow these steps to create your own Google account:

1. Open the computer's Web browser program.

2. Visit the main Google page at www.google.com.

Type **www.google.com** into the Web browser's address bar.

3. Click the Sign In link.

Another page opens, where you can log in to your Google account, but you don't have a Google account, so:

4. Click the link to create a new account.

The link is typically found beneath the text boxes where you would log in to your Google account. As I write this chapter, the link is titled Create an Account Now.

5. Continue heeding the directions until you've created your own Google account.

Eventually, your account is set up and configured. I recommend that you log off and then log back in to Google, just to ensure that you did everything properly. Also create a bookmark for your account's Google page: Press Ctrl+D or Command+D to do that job in just about any Web browser.

Continue reading in the next section for information on synchronizing your new Google account with the Nexus One.

- ✓ The Google account gives you access to a wide array of free services and online programs. These include Gmail for electronic messaging, the Calendar for scheduling and appointments, the online picture-sharing program Picasa, an account on YouTube, Google Finance, blogs, Google Buzz, and other features that are instantly shared with your phone.
- ✓ Information on using the various Google programs on your phone is covered throughout this book, specifically in Part IV.

Setting up a Google account on your phone

You have to set up the Nexus One with your Google account only once. You never have to do this again (unless you buy another phone down the road). So, if you neglected to set up your Google account when you first turned on the Nexus One or you have a second Google account you want to add, first follow the steps in the preceding section and then add your new Google account by following these steps:

- 1. Go to the Nexus One Home screen.**

The *Home screen* is the main screen you see after unlocking the Nexus One.

- 2. Touch the Launcher button.**



The Launcher button is found at the bottom center of the Home screen. Touching the button displays the program launcher, which lists icons representing all applications installed on your phone.

- 3. Scroll through the list of program icons to locate the Settings icon.**



Scroll the list by using your finger; touch the screen and slide your finger up, toward the top of the phone. That action scrolls the list downward.

The application icons are arranged in alphabetical order, so the Settings icon might be a ways down in the list.

- 4. Touch the Settings icon to open the Nexus One Settings screen.**

On the Settings screen, you configure many Nexus One features and program options.

- 5. Choose Accounts & Sync.**

6. **Ensure that green check marks appear by the options Background Data and Auto-Sync.**
7. **Touch the button named Add Account.**
8. **Choose Google.**
9. **Read the screen and touch the Next button.**
10. **Because you've already read the preceding section, touch the Sign In button.**

Yes, it's possible to create a Google account using your phone and not a computer. It's just easier to use a computer. Trust me.

11. **Touch the Username text box.**

The onscreen keyboard appears.
12. **Input your Google account username.**
13. **Touch the Password text box.**
14. **Input your Google account username.**

Refer to the suggestions in Step 10 in the earlier section "Turning on the Nexus One for the first time," for help on inputting your Google password.

15. **Touch the Sign In button.**

Done

If you need to, click the Done button on the keyboard so that you can see and click the Sign In button.

Wait while Google contacts your account and synchronizes any information. It takes longer when you have more stuff for Google to synchronize, such as photos, contacts, and mail.

16. **Click the Finish button.**

You're done.

After you click Finish, you return to the main Accounts & Sync Settings window. Ensure that check marks appear next to both the Background Data and Auto-Sync options. If they don't, touch the grey boxes next to each option to place a green check mark in the box.



You can touch the Home soft button to return to the Nexus One Home screen.

- ✓ See Chapter 3 for more information about the Home screen as well as the Launcher.
- ✓ You can also add a Facebook account for synchronizing on the Nexus One. See Chapter 12.

Changing your Google password

Experts say that you should change your computer passwords often. How often? Well, I know some government agencies where the password changes every 90 seconds. You don't need to be that severe with your Google account password.

When you change your Google password, do so on your computer first. Then you have to inform the Nexus One of the new password. If you don't, your phone will complain that it cannot access Google to update and synchronize information. Follow these steps to reset your Google password:

- 1. On your desktop computer, direct the Web browser to the Google main page, www.google.com.**

- 2. From the top of the page, click the Settings link.**

As I write this chapter, the link is found in the upper right part of the page.

- 3. Choose Google Account Settings from the Settings link menu.**

- 4. By the Security heading, click the link Change Password.**

- 5. Obey the directions on the screen for setting a new password.**

Now that the password is reset, you need to update the Nexus One with that information. If you don't, the phone pesters you incessantly. Continue with these steps:

- 6. Wake up your Nexus One or turn it on.**



In a few moments, your phone generates a notification. You see an Alert icon appear on top of the phone's display, in the Notification area.

- 7. Slide the Notification area down by swiping it with your finger.**

The specifics for performing this action are covered in Chapter 3.

- 8. From the list of notifications, choose Sign Into Your Account.**

- 9. Type the new Google password into the box that appears on the touch screen display.**

Refer to information in the sections "Turning on the Nexus One for the first time" as well as "Setting up a Google account on your phone" for more information on typing your Google account password.

After you enter your new password, the phone instantly becomes happy and continues to sync the Google account information.



Touch the Home soft button to return to the Nexus One Home screen.

Configuring the Nexus One for corporate use

When you set up the Nexus One for synchronizing with your corporate Microsoft Exchange Server account, it puts the phone on speaking terms with your corporate e-mail, calendar, and other information. Obviously, this section is one that mere individuals need not bother with; only the suits need pay attention.

First of all, if your company is *really* big, you probably have a whole department of people do all the account setup for you. In fact, they might even apply special restrictions to the Nexus One, prohibiting you from doing innocent, diversionary things such as playing games or visiting online gambling sights. Regardless, those digital martinets will probably do the setup for you, or have instructions ready. Defy them at your own peril.

To set up the Nexus One on your own, follow these steps:



1. From the Nexus One Home screen, touch the **Launcher** button.
2. Touch the **Settings** icon to open the Nexus One Settings screen.
3. Touch **Accounts & Sync**.
4. Touch the **Add Account** button at the bottom of the screen.
5. Choose **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**.
6. Touch the **Email Address** box and use the keyboard to type your e-mail address.
7. Touch the **Password** box to type your password.
8. Touch the **Next** button.
9. **Input the Domain/User Name.**

The tech people at your organization will supply this information. If you don't know this information, the odds are good that you don't have an Exchange ActiveSync account to set up.

10. **Input the password.**
11. **Input the server name.**
12. **Touch the Next button.**

Done

You may have to touch the Done button on the keyboard so that you can see the Next button.

The Nexus One attempts to contact and chat with the Exchange ActiveSync server.

13. **Touch the Finish button.**

You're done. Of course, other problems may or may not happen at this point, depending on what is shared on your corporate network and how you use the Nexus One to access that information.



You can touch the Home soft button to return to the Nexus One Home screen, from whence you may do other interesting things with your phone.

Goodbye, Phone

To dismiss the Nexus One from existence, you can choose from three methods. The first way is to put the phone to sleep, to *snooze* the phone. The second is to turn off the phone. The third involves an industrial shredding machine and, because of space constraints, isn't covered in this edition of the book.

Snoozing the phone

To snooze the phone, press and release the power button. No matter what you're doing, the phone's display turns off. The phone itself isn't off, but the touch screen display turns off. The phone enters a low-power state to save battery life, but also to relax.



- ✓ You can snooze the phone while you're making a call. Simply press and release the power button. The phone stays connected, but the display is turned off.
- ✓ Your Nexus One will probably spend most of its time in Snooze mode.
- ✓ Snoozing doesn't turn off the phone; you can still receive calls while the phone is asleep.
- ✓ Snooze mode lets you keep talking on the phone while you put it in your pocket. In Snooze mode, there's no danger that your pocket will accidentally hang up or mute the phone in the middle of a call.
- ✓ The trackball may glow while the phone is sleeping. That's normal; the glowing trackball is alerting you to new e-mail, missed calls, or other events that have taken place while the phone was asleep. Waking the phone and reviewing the notifications tells you why the trackball is glowing. Refer to Chapter 3 to read about reviewing notifications.
- ✓ Even when the phone is snoozing, any timers or alarms you set wake up the phone to alert you. See Chapter 18 for information on setting timers and alarms.
- ✓ To wake the phone, press and release the power button. See the section "Waking up the phone," earlier in this chapter.

Controlling snooze options

Your Nexus One has a built-in snooze timeout: After a period of inactivity, or boredom, the phone snoozes itself automatically — just like Uncle Patrick does after Thanksgiving dinner.

You have control over the snooze timeout value, which can be set anywhere from 15 seconds to 30 minutes. Obey these steps:



1. **From the Nexus One Home screen, touch the Launcher.**
2. **Touch the Settings icon to open the Settings window.**
3. **Choose Display.**
4. **Choose Screen Timeout.**
5. **Choose a timeout value from the list.**
6. **Touch the Home soft button to return to the Nexus One Home screen.**

When you don't touch the screen or aren't using the phone, the sleep timer starts ticking. About ten seconds before the timeout value you set (refer to Step 5), the touch screen dims. Then it goes to sleep. If you touch the screen before then, the sleep timer is reset.

Turning off the phone

To turn off your phone, follow these steps:

1. **Press and hold the power button.**
2. **Choose the Power Off item.**
3. **Touch the OK button to confirm.**

Off goes the phone.

The phone doesn't receive calls when it's turned off. Those calls go instead to voice mail — either the voice mail you set up with the cellular service or to Google Voice. See Chapter 7 for more information on voice mail.



If you change your mind and don't want to shut down the phone (or put it into Airplane mode or Silent mode), press the Back soft button to return to the Home screen.

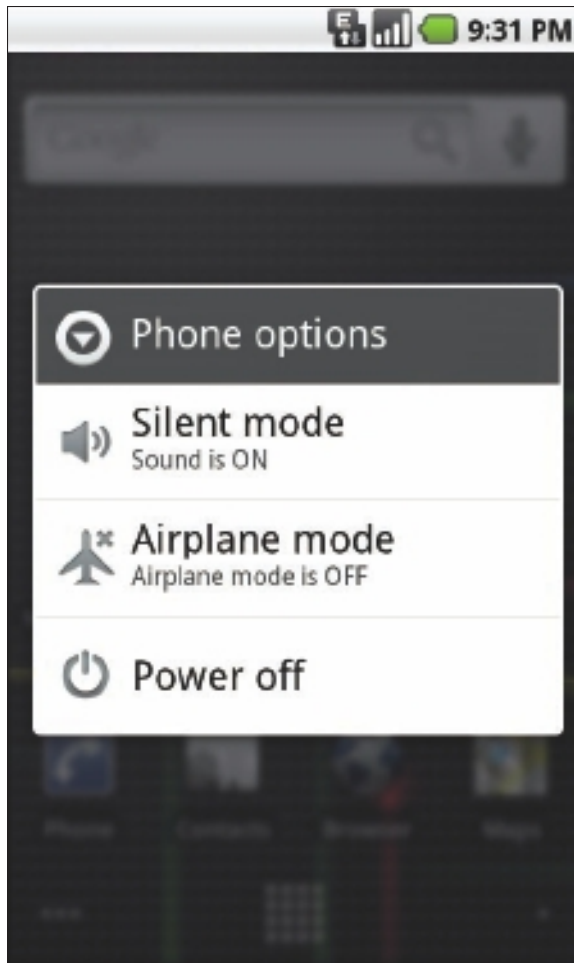


Figure 2-3: The Phone Options menu.

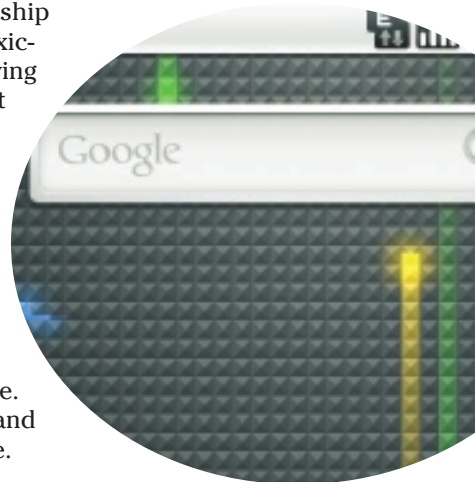
The Nexus One Basic Tour

In This Chapter

- ▶ Working the touch screen
- ▶ Changing the phone's volume
- ▶ Entering Vibration mode or Silence mode
- ▶ Using the phone horizontally
- ▶ Checking notifications
- ▶ Running applications and working widgets
- ▶ Finding applications
- ▶ Accessing recently used applications

Knowing things beforehand makes a new journey less perilous. How much better off would the crew of the starship *Enterprise* been had they already known about the toxic-dart-spewing flowers of Gamma Trianguli VI or the flying neural parasites of Deneva or the easily agitated giant ape creatures of Taurus II? Indeed, the more you know about your new adventure, the less likely you are to wind up frustrated, poisoned, possessed, or even mortally wounded by a giant rock spear.

Your cellphone isn't science fiction, and therefore it lacks the inherent dangers of an alien world. As something new, however, it can pose some frustrations. To help ease you on your way, I'm offering this chapter as your beginning Nexus One adventure guide. You'll read about the phone interface, how it works, and how to get the most from your new-phone experience.



Basic Nexus One Operations

The Nexus One is most likely different from any other phone you've owned. It has certain operations you should familiarize yourself with, basic tasks the phone does that you may not be aware of.

Using the soft buttons

Below the touch screen are four buttons labeled with icons. They're the *soft buttons*, and they perform specific functions no matter what you're doing with the phone. Table 3-1 lists the soft button functions.

Table 3-1 Nexus One Soft Buttons			
<i>Button</i>	<i>Name</i>	<i>Press Once to Do This</i>	<i>Long-Press (Press and Hold) to Display This</i>
	Back	Go back, close, dismiss keyboard	Nothing
	Menu	Display menu	Onscreen keyboard
	Home	Go to the Home screen	Recent applications
	Search	Open phone and Web search	Search-by-voice function

Not every button always performs the actions listed in Table 3-1. For example, if there's no menu to open, pressing the Menu button does nothing.

Various sections throughout this book give examples for using the soft buttons. Their images appear in this book's margins where relevant.

Manipulating the touch screen

The touch screen works in combination with one or two of your fingers. You can choose which fingers to use or whether to be adventurous and try using the tip of your nose, but touch the touch screen you must. You can choose from several techniques:

Touch: It's a simple operation; you touch the screen. Generally, you're touching an object, such as a program icon, or a control, such as a gizmo you use to slide something around.

Double-tap: Touch the screen in the same location twice. Double-tap can be used to zoom in on an image or a map, but it can also zoom out. Because of the double-tap's dual nature, I recommend using the pinch or spread operation instead.

The long press: In a long press, you touch and hold part of the screen. Some operations on the Nexus One, such as moving an icon on the Home screen, begin with a long press.

Swipe: When you swipe, you start with your finger in one spot and then drag it to another spot. Usually a swipe is up, down, left, or right, which moves material displayed in the direction you swipe your finger. A swipe can be a fast flick-like action, or it can be slow.

Pinch: A pinch involves two fingers, which start out separated and then are brought together. The effect is used to enlarge or reduce an image or map. The pinch is used to zoom out.

Spread: In a spread, the opposite of a pinch, you start out with your fingers together and then spread them. The spread is used to zoom in.



You cannot use the touch screen while wearing gloves, unless they're gloves specially designed for using electronic touch screens.

Setting the volume

The phone's volume controls are found on the left side of the phone as it's facing you. Press the top part of the button to set the volume higher. Press the bottom part of the button to lower the volume.

The volume controls work for whatever noise the phone is making at the time: When you're on the phone, the volume controls set the level of an incoming phone call. When you're listening to music or watching a video, the volume controls set the volume level of that type of media.

Volume can be preset for the phone, media, and notifications. See Chapter 21 for information.

Using the trackball

You've probably played with the trackball already. It's cinchy: Roll the trackball around with your finger or thumb. Press it. There. You've mastered the trackball.

You might think that a trackball on a phone with a touch screen is useless. That could be true, but I believe that you'll find the trackball more accurate at manipulating elements on the screen than using a stubby finger. You can use the trackball to

- ✓ Scroll through long lists of items, though I must admit that it's often easier to swipe the list using your finger.

- ✓ Help precisely select text. See Chapter 4.
- ✓ Hop between links on a Web page. Press the trackball to “click” on a link. See Chapter 11 for Web-browsing information.
- ✓ Alert you to notifications from applications or when the phone’s status changes, such as when it rings.

“Silence your phone!”

You can’t be a citizen of the 21st century and not have heard the admonition “Please silence your cellphones.” Here’s how to obey that command with your Nexus One:

1. Wake up the phone.

Obviously, if the phone is turned off, there’s no need to turn it on just to make it silent. So, assuming that your phone is snoozing, press the power button to see the main screen (refer to Figure 2-1, in Chapter 2).



2. Slide the Silencer button over to the left.

You’re good.

When you’re using the phone and someone demands that you silence it, press and hold the Power button until you see the Phone Options menu. From that menu, choose Silent Mode.

- ✓ Silencing the phone automatically activates Vibration mode.
- ✓ To make the phone noisy again, repeat the steps in this section, but slide the Silencer button (which is now orange), to the left.

Going horizontal

The Nexus One features an *accelerometer*. This gizmo is used by various programs in the phone to determine which direction the phone is pointed, or whether you’ve reoriented the phone from an upright to a horizontal position.

The easiest way to see how the vertical-horizontal orientation feature works is to view a Web page on the Nexus One. Obey these steps:



1. Touch the Browser application on the Home screen.

The Nexus One launches its Web browser program, venturing out to the Internet. Eventually, the browser’s first page, the *home page*, appears on the touch screen.

2. Tilt the Nexus One to the left.

As shown in Figure 3-1, the Web page reorients itself to the new, horizontal way of looking at the Web. For some applications, it's truly the best way to see things.

3. Tilt the Nexus One upright.

The Web page redisplay itself in its original, upright mode.



Portrait Orientation



Landscape Orientation

Figure 3-1: Vertical and horizontal orientations.

The Nexus One also enters landscape orientation when you tilt the phone to the right. (It only does so when you've updated to the latest release of the Android operating system.)

Oh, and don't bother turning the phone upside down and expect the image to flip that way, though some applications may delight you by supporting this feature.

- ✓ See Chapter 11 for more information on using your phone to browse the Web.
- ✓ In some applications, the view switches from portrait to landscape orientation when you tilt the phone. Most applications, however, are fixed to portrait orientation.

- ✓ Some applications present themselves only in landscape view, such as the YouTube application when playing a video.
- ✓ YouTube plays its videos with the Nexus One tilted to the left. The video doesn't reorient itself when you tilt the phone to the right.
- ✓ A great application for demonstrating the Nexus One accelerometer is the game *Labyrinth*. It can be purchased at the Android Market, or a free version, *Labyrinth Lite*, can be downloaded. See Chapter 19 for more information on the Android Market.

There's No Screen Like Home

The first thing you see after you unlock the Nexus One is the *Home* screen, illustrated in Figure 3-2. It's also the location you go to whenever you end a phone call or quit an application.

This list describes the key items to notice on the Home screen, illustrated in the figure:

Status bar: The top of the Home screen is a thin, informative strip that I call the *status bar*. It contains notification icons and status icons plus the current time.

Notification icon: An icon of this type comes and goes depending on what happens in your digital life. For example, new ones appear whenever you receive a new e-mail message or have a pending appointment. The section "Reviewing notifications," later in this chapter, describes how to deal with notifications.

Status icon: This type of icon represents the phone's current condition, such as the type of network it's connected to, its signal strength and battery status, and whether the speaker has been muted or a Wi-Fi network is connected, for example.

Widget: This type of teeny program can display information, let you control the phone, or access features. Touching a widget can manipulate a phone feature, access a program, or do something purely amusing. To see the Google search widget, refer to Figure 3-2.

Application icon: The meat of the meal on the Home screen plate is the application icon. Touching an icon runs the program.

Launcher: Touching the Launcher icon displays a scrolling list of all applications installed on your phone. The section "The Launcher," later in this chapter, describes how it works.



Figure 3-2: The Nexus One Home screen.

The double dots to the left and right of the Launcher help you navigate the Home screen's left and right wings. They're necessary because the Home screen is five times wider than the one shown on the touch screen display, shown in Figure 3-3.

To view the left and right sides of the Home screen, swipe your finger left or right across the touch screen display. The Home screen slides over one page in each direction each time you swipe.

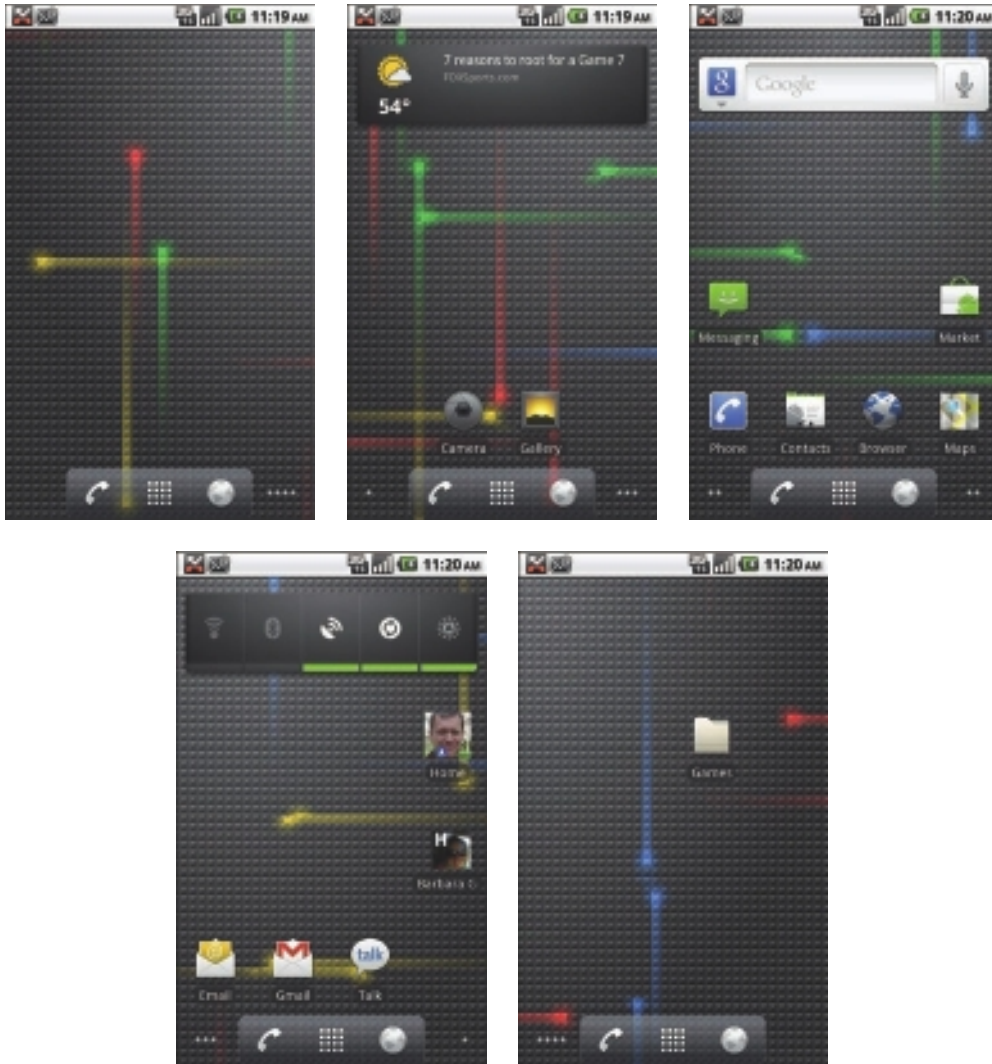


Figure 3-3: The full Home screen.

The wider Home screen gives you more opportunities to place applications and widgets. Also shown in Figure 3-3 are shortcut icons and folders, which provide quick access to more of the phone's features and help keep things organized.



To quickly browse and preview the various Home screens, press and hold your finger on the dots in the lower left or right corners of the touch screen. You see a pop-up preview of all Home screens, as shown in Figure 3-4. Touch a preview image to instantly open that part of the Home screen. Or, just touch anywhere else on the touch screen to make the preview images go away.

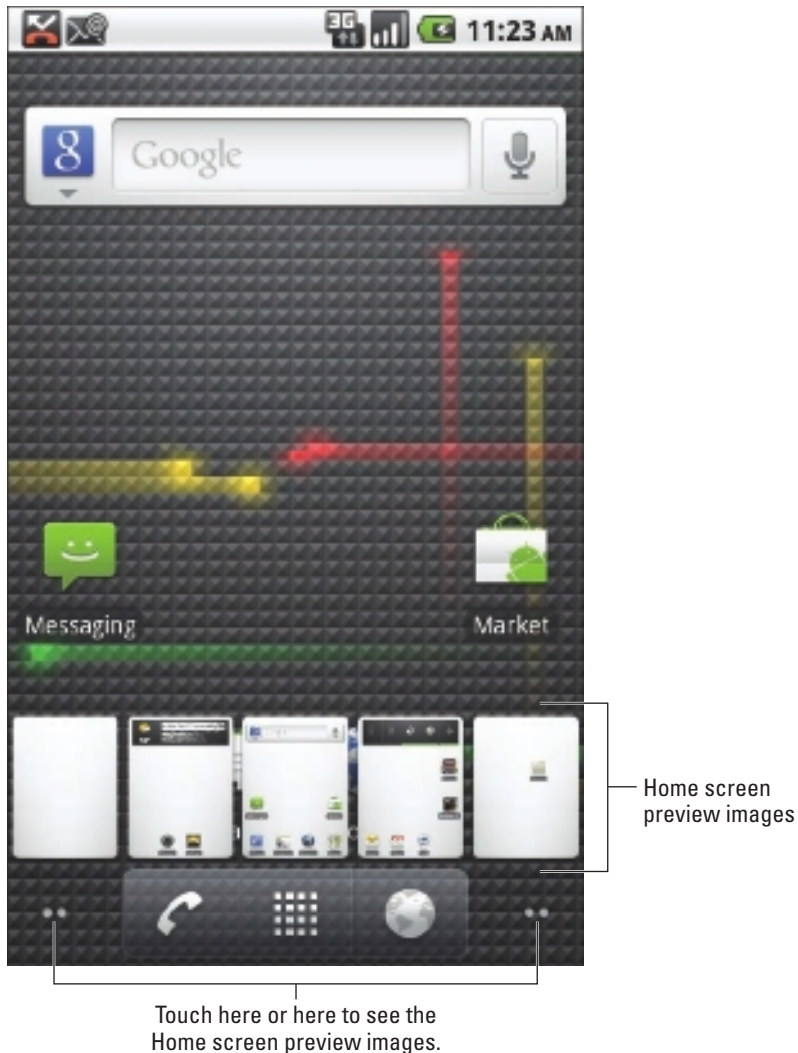


Figure 3-4: Home screen preview images.

Touching part of the Home screen that doesn't feature an icon or a control doesn't do anything — that is, unless you're using the live wallpaper feature. In that case, touching the screen changes the wallpaper in some way. For example, the live wallpaper named Nexus (refer to Figures 3-1, 3-2, and 3-3) lights up with colorful rays when you touch it.

- ✓ The Home screen is entirely customizable. You can add and remove icons from the Home screen, add widgets and shortcuts, and even change wallpaper images. See Chapter 21 for more information.

- ✓ The variety of notification and status icons is broad. You see the icons referenced in appropriate sections throughout this book.
- ✓ The tiny dots in the lower left and right parts of the Home screen help you determine which part of the home page you're viewing. The dots indicate how many pages are to the left and right of the current page (refer to Figure 3-3).
- ✓ No matter which part of the Home screen you're viewing, the top part of the touch screen stays the same — display notification and status icons as well as the time.
- ✓ To return to the Home screen at any time, press the Home soft button.



I've Been Working on the Home Screen

I recommend getting to know three basic Home screen operations: reviewing notifications, starting programs, and accessing widgets.

Reviewing notifications

Notifications appear as icons at the top of the Home screen, as illustrated earlier, in Figure 3-2. To see what the notifications say, you peel down the top part of the screen, shown in Figure 3-5.

The operation works like this:

- 1. Touch the notification icons at the top of the touch screen.**
- 2. Swipe your finger all the way down the front of the touch screen.**

This action works like controlling a roll-down blind: You grab the top part of the touch screen and drag it downward all the way. The notifications appear in a list, shown in Figure 3-6.

You may need to drag the notification list all the way to the bottom of the touch screen to prevent it from rolling back up again. Use the notification window control (refer to Figure 3-6).

- 3. Touch a notification to see what's up.**

Touching a notification takes you to the program that generated the icon. For example, touching a Gmail notification opens a new message or your inbox.





Figure 3-5: Accessing notifications.

If you choose not to touch a notification, you can “roll up” the notification list by sliding the window control back to the top of the touch screen.

- ✓ The notification icons don’t disappear until you’ve chosen each one — and sometimes those icons can stack up!
- ✓ To dismiss all notification icons, touch the Clear button (refer to Figure 3-6).
- ✓ When more notifications are present than can be shown on the status bar, you see the More Notifications icon, shown in the margin. The number on the icon indicates how many additional notifications are available.





- ✓ Dismissing notifications doesn't prevent them from appearing again in the future. For example, notifications to update your programs continue to appear, as do calendar reminders.
- ✓ Some programs, such as Facebook and the various Twitter applications, don't display notifications unless they're running. See Chapter 12.
- ✓ See Chapter 18 for information on dismissing calendar reminders.
- ✓ Notification icons appear on the screen when the phone is locked. Remember that you must unlock the phone before you can drag down the status bar to display notifications.

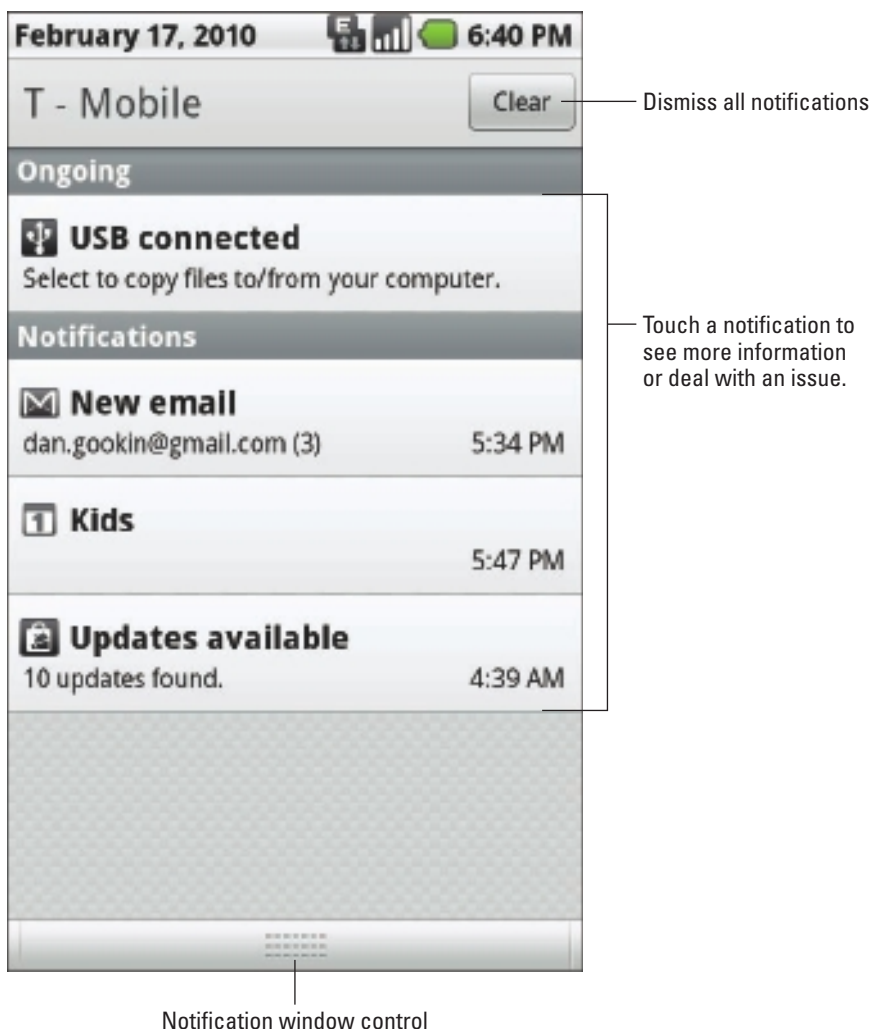


Figure 3-6: The notifications list.

Starting an application

It's cinchy to run an application on the Home screen: Touch its icon. The application starts.

- ✓ Not all applications appear on the Home screen, but all of them appear when you summon the Launcher. See the section “The Launcher,” later in this chapter.
- ✓ When an application closes or you quit that application, you return to the Home screen.
- ✓ The word *application* is often abbreviated as *app*.

Accessing a widget

A *widget* is a teensy program that floats over the Home screen (refer to Figure 3-3). To use a widget, simply touch it. What happens after that depends on the widget.

For example, touching the Weather and News widget displays the Weather and News program. Touching the Google widget displays the onscreen keyboard and lets you type, or speak, something to search for on the Internet. The Power Control widget turns various phone features off or on.

Information on these and other widgets appears elsewhere in this book. See Chapter 21 for information on working with widgets.

Using Car Home

The Nexus One features an alternative Home screen, provided for the scary proposition of using your phone while driving an automobile. The Car Home screen, shown in Figure 3-7, was designed to be easy to see at a glance and offers you access to the phone's more popular features without distracting you too much from the priority of piloting your car.



Car Home

To open the Car Home screen, simply insert the Nexus One into the car dock. Or you can manually access the Car Home screen by choosing its icon from the Launcher button on the Home screen.

- ✓ The Car Home screen features big, fat links to common items you'd need the phone for in a car, mostly maps and navigation plus some basic phone features.
- ✓ The Car Home works best when the Nexus One is nestled in the car dock. See Chapter 1 for additional information on the car dock.
- ✓ Touch the big Exit Car Mode button to leave the Car Home screen and return to the regular, Nexus One Home screen.

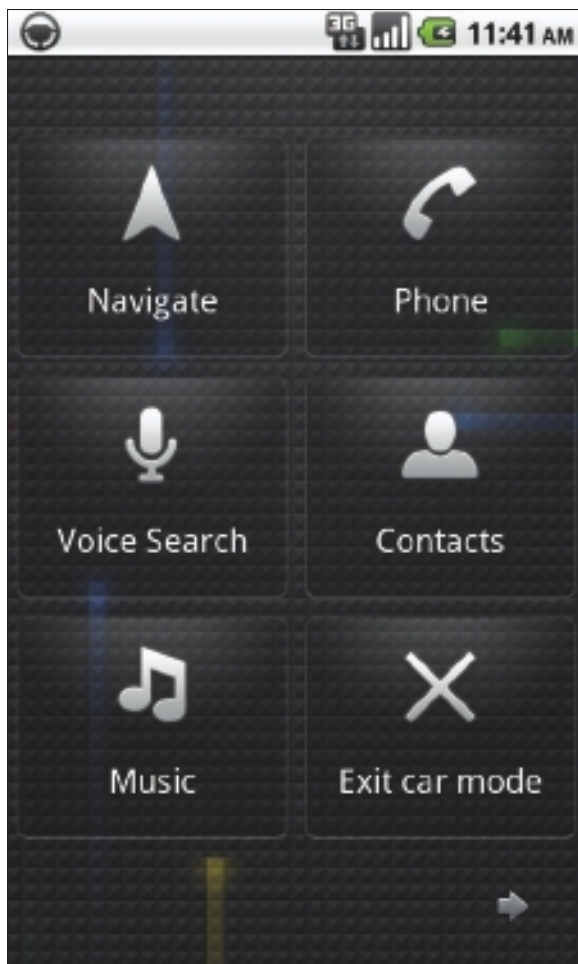


Figure 3-7: The Car Home.

The Launcher

The place where you find all applications installed on your Nexus One is the *Launcher*. Though you may find shortcuts to applications on the Home screen, the Launcher is where you go to find *everything*.

Discovering all apps on your phone

To start an application, or *app*, on the Nexus One, heed these steps:



1. Touch the Launcher button on the Home screen.

The Launcher appears, as shown in Figure 3-8. App icons are listed alphabetically (which still moves from *a* to *z*, as far as I can tell).

2. Scroll the list of app icons by swiping your finger up or down.

3. Touch an icon to start that app.

Or, you can touch the Home icon at the bottom of the screen to hide the Launcher.



Figure 3-8: The Launcher lists your phone's applications.



The app starts, taking over the screen and doing whatever good thing that program does.

The terms *application*, *app*, and *program* all mean the same thing.

Finding lost apps

You'll probably accumulate lots and lots of apps on your Nexus One. Eventually, the list that the Launcher displays might grow quite long. In fact, you may not even remember the name of the program you're looking for. Either way, it's no problem because you can easily search your phone for any app. Follow these steps:



- 1. Press the Search soft button.**

The search screen appears. A search text box appears atop the screen, and the phone's onscreen keyboard appears at the bottom.

- 2. Use your finger to type all or part of the app's name.**

See Chapter 4 for more information on using the onscreen keyboard.

As you type, items matching the characters you've typed appear in the list. The items include applications, music, contacts, and even locations on the Internet. When you're looking for a program, you see the text *Application* appear beneath the program name.

- 3. Scroll the list to explore the apps that have been found.**

Use your finger to swipe the list up and down.

- 4. Touch the name of the app you're looking for.**

The app starts.

Searching for apps is a small part of searching for all kinds of information on the Nexus One, such as contact information, appointments, and e-mail. Various chapters throughout this book describe other ways you can use the Nexus One search function.

See Chapter 19 for information on how to use the Android Market to find more apps for your Nexus One.

Reviewing your most recently used apps



If you're like me, you probably use the same apps over and over, on both your computer and your phone. You can easily access that list of recent programs on the Nexus One by pressing and holding the Home soft button. When you do, you see the six most recently accessed programs, similar to the ones shown in Figure 3-9.



For those programs you use *all* the time, consider creating shortcuts on the Home screen. Chapter 21 describes how to create shortcuts for programs as well as shortcuts to people and shortcuts for instant messaging and all sorts of fun stuff.

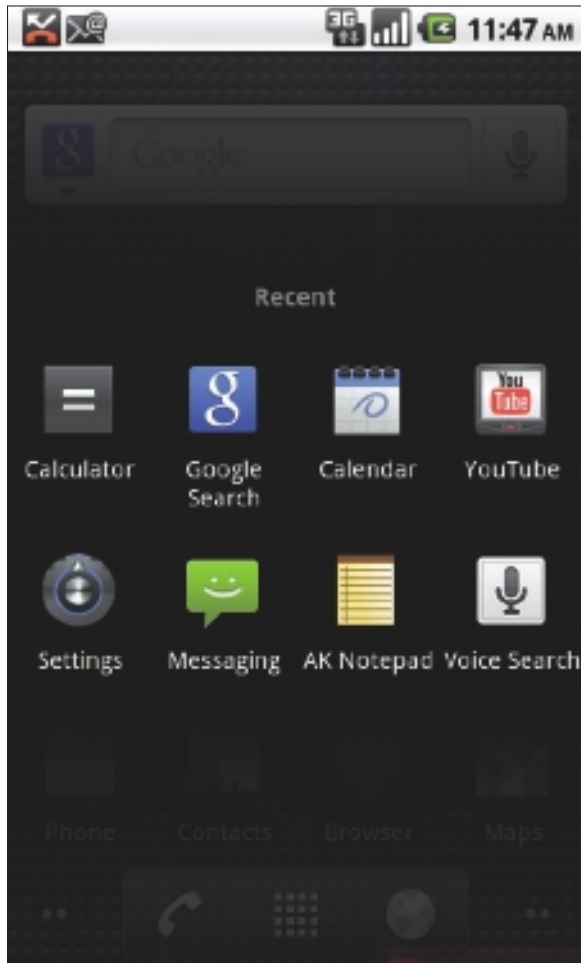


Figure 3-9: Recently used programs.

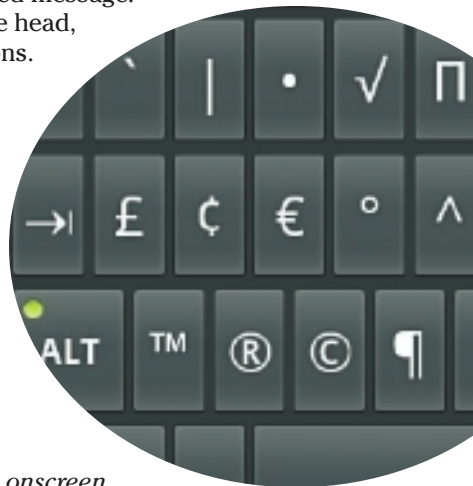
Human–Phone Interaction

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using the onscreen keyboard
- ▶ Getting at special characters
- ▶ Using word suggestion shortcuts
- ▶ Editing text on the screen
- ▶ Selecting, cutting, copying, and pasting text
- ▶ Dictating text with voice input

The first communications device was a stick. I'm certain of it. Though you might imagine that a stick was used to draw primitive scribbling in the wet sand of a seashore, I believe the stick was used by one caveman to hit another over the head. That sends an appropriate, meaning-filled message. Little did Og know that when he thumped Gronk on the head, his act would usher in the era of human communications.

The phone is the ultimate communications device, and the Nexus One, of course, takes that communications to a new level. Communications take place not only between you and others on the phone but also between you and the phone itself. This chapter covers that human–phone interaction — specifically, how you can input information to the phone by using the onscreen keyboard and voice input.



The Onscreen Keyboard

To input text information on your phone, you use the *onscreen keyboard*. It looks similar to the keyboard on your computer — or, if you're starting to show wrinkles, it looks like a typewriter keyboard. You operate the thing by touching the keys with your finger. That's simple enough, yet I wrote this section to go over the finer points of using the onscreen keyboard.

- ✓ The Nexus One also lets you dictate text into your phone. See the section “Voice Input,” later in this chapter.
- ✓ Alternative keyboards are available for use with your Nexus One, such as the popular AnySoftKeyboard. See Chapter 19 for information on looking for apps in the Android Market.
- ✓ See Chapter 21 for information on how to adjust the onscreen keyboard.

Displaying the keyboard

The onscreen keyboard shows up any time the phone demands text as input, such as when you’re composing e-mail, typing a text message, or using any application where text is required. Normally, the keyboard just pops up — for example, when you touch a text field or an input box on a Web page. Then you start typing with your finger or — if you’re *very* good — with your thumbs.

The alphabet version of the onscreen keyboard is shown in Figure 4-1. The keys A through Z (lowercase) are there, plus a Shift/Caps Lock key, Delete key, comma, space, and period.

The Search key changes its look depending on the application. The key’s variations are described in Table 4-1.

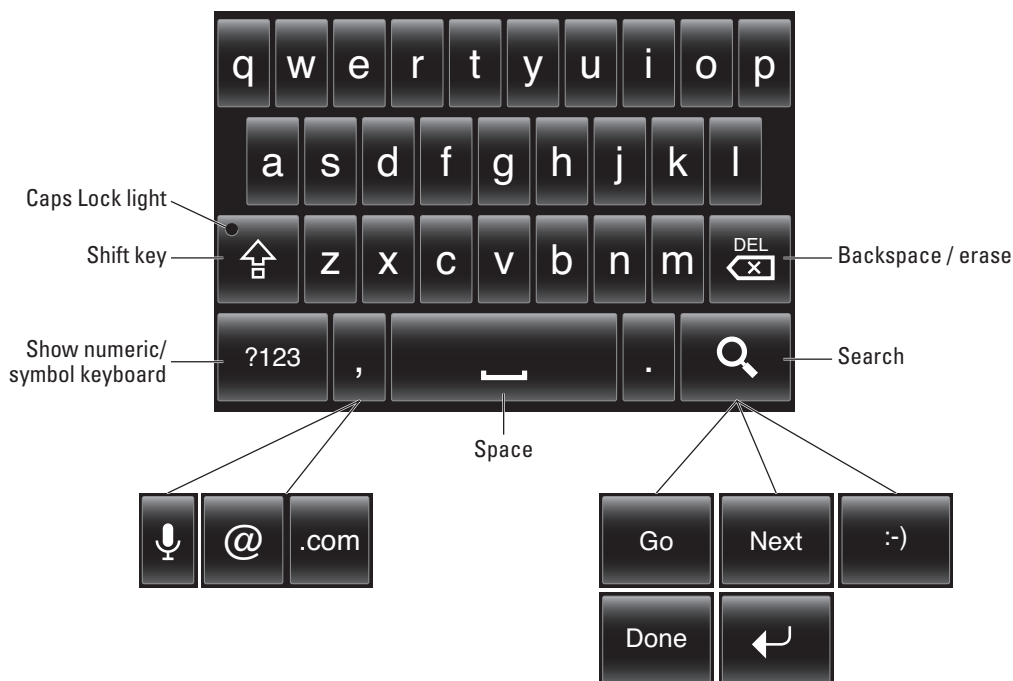


Figure 4-1: The onscreen keyboard.

Table 4-1 Special Keyboard Buttons

Button	Name	What It Does
	Search	Appears whenever you're typing text in a search box or directing the Nexus One to find something.
	Go	Appears whenever you're typing text into a single field or text box. This key tells the application that you're done typing and want to proceed as though you pressed the Enter key.
	Next	Helps you fill in multiple fields in a form. You can move to the next field, and the key comes in handy when you can't see the next field on the touch screen.
	Done	Tells the Nexus One that you're finished typing and want the keyboard to go away.
	Return	Serves the same function as the Return or Enter key on a computer keyboard.
	: -)	Inserts a smile or another <i>emoticon</i> into your missive when you're typing a text message.



The comma key is replaced by the Voice Input button when voice input is available as an alternative to typing text.



The comma key might also be replaced by two keys: the @ symbol key and a key that generates the text .com. Those keys usually show up when you're typing e-mail addresses.



Touch the ?123 key to see the number keys as well as the standard punctuation symbols that share those keys on a computer keyboard. That keyboard variation is shown in Figure 4-2.

Pressing the Alt key on the number-and-symbol keyboard displays special symbols, shown in Figure 4-3. When the Alt key has been pressed, its light goes on, as shown in the figure.



To return to the standard alpha keyboard (refer to Figure 4-1), touch the ABC key.

- ✓ Type with your finger first, and then eventually you get good enough to type with your thumbs. Or perhaps not; I still can't thumb-type well.
- ✓ Some applications show the keyboard when the phone is in landscape orientation. If so, the keyboard shows the same keys but offers more room for your stump-like fingers to type.

- ✓ Not every application features a horizontal keyboard, however, so you might be stuck using the narrower version of the keyboard.
- ✓ Summon the keyboard anytime: Press and hold the Menu button.



Figure 4-2: Number-and-symbol keyboard.

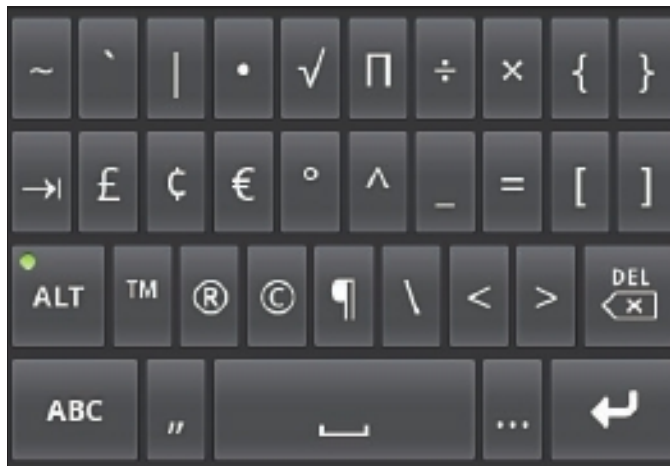


Figure 4-3: Special characters on the Alt keyboard.

Typing on your phone

Typing on the onscreen keyboard works just as you'd expect: Touch the key you want, and that character appears in the program you're using. A blinking cursor on the screen shows where new text appears, which is similar to how text input works on your computer.

As you type, the button you touch appears enlarged on the screen, as shown in Figure 4-4. That's how you can confirm that your finger is typing what you intend to type.

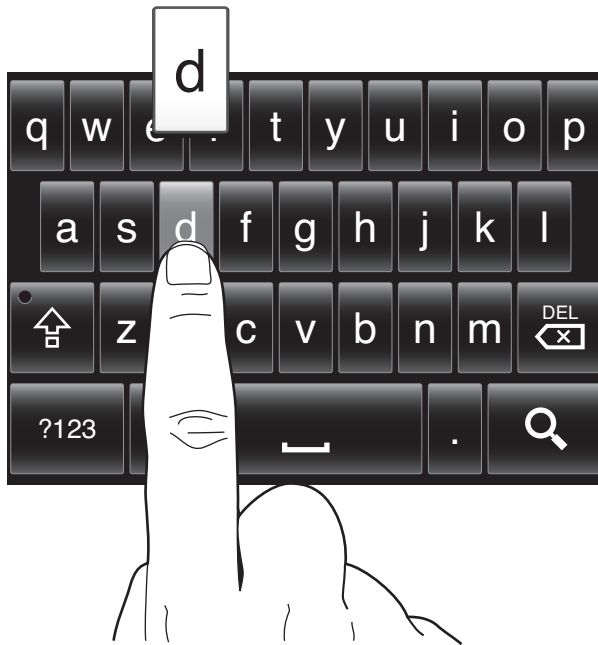


Figure 4-4: Pressing the d key.

The characters you type appear in whichever application accepts text input; you see what you type as you type it, just like on a computer. Also, similar to a computer, when you type a password on your phone, the character you type appears briefly on the screen and is then replaced by a black dot.



- ✓ When you make a mistake, press the Del key to back up and erase.
- ✓ Above all, *type slowly* until you get used to the keyboard.
- ✓ To set the Caps Lock, press the Shift key twice. The little light comes on (refer to Figure 4-1), indicating that Caps Lock is on.



- ✓ You can insert an automatic period at the end of a sentence by pressing the space key twice. In fact, pressing the space key twice at any time changes the first space you typed into a period. As a bonus, the next character you type automatically appears in uppercase to start a new sentence.
- ✓ People generally accept that typing on a phone isn't perfect. Don't sweat it if you make a few mistakes as you type instant messages or e-mail, though you should expect some curious replies from unintended typos.
- ✓ See the later section "Choosing a word as you type" on how to deal with automatic typo and spell correction.
- ✓ When you tire of typing, you can always touch the Microphone button on the keyboard and enter Dictation mode. See the section "Voice Input," later in this chapter.



Displaying special characters

You can type more characters on your phone than are shown in all three variations of the keyboard (refer to Figures 4-1 through 4-3). To access those characters, you press and hold a specific key to see a pop-up palette of options.



To determine which keys sport extra characters, note the ellipsis that appears when you press the key, as shown in the margin. When you press and hold that key (a *long press*), you see the pop-up palette of options, as shown in Figure 4-5. Choose the character you want from that palette or touch the X button to cancel.

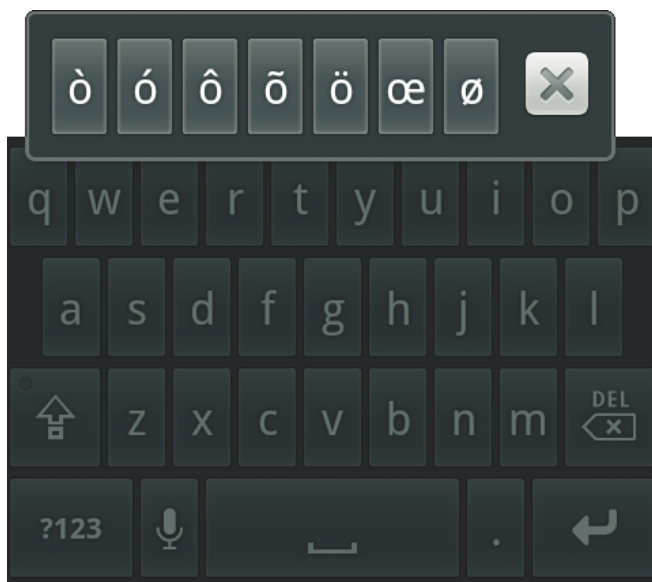


Figure 4-5: Optional characters on the O key.

Extra characters are available in uppercase as well; press the Shift key before you do a long press on the keyboard.

Certain symbol keys on the keyboard also sport extra characters. For example, various currency symbols are available when you long-press the \$ key. You find arrow symbols available for the ^ key. And, a host of emoticons are available on the smile key.

Choosing a word as you type

As a “smart” phone, the Nexus One takes a guess at the words you’re typing as you type them. A list of suggestions appears above the keyboard, as shown in Figure 4-6. You can choose a suggestion by touching it with your finger; the word instantly appears on the screen, saving you time (and potentially fixing your terrible spelling or typing, or both).

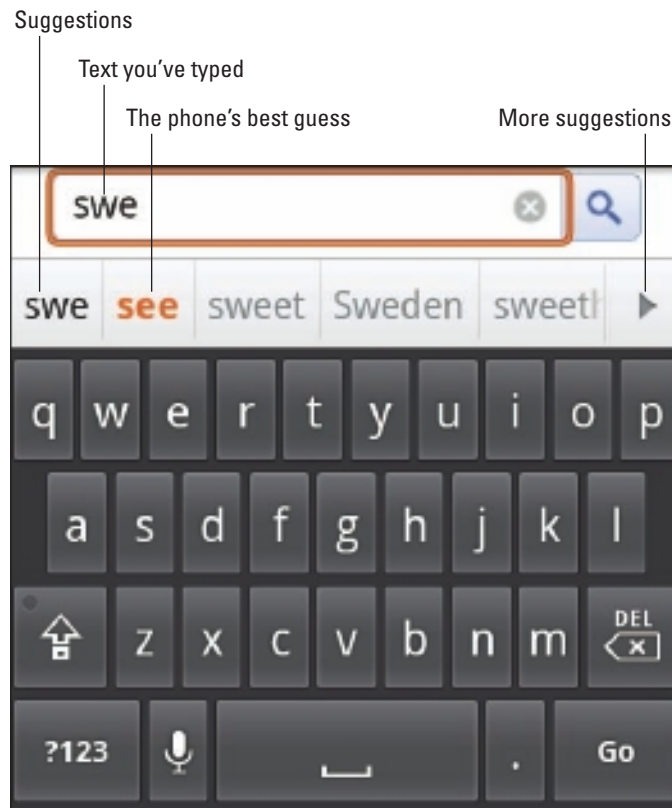


Figure 4-6: Suggestions for your lousy typing.



You can press the space key and the Nexus One automatically chooses the word suggestion highlighted in orange (refer to Figure 4-6). It's a good way to save on typing time but is also the source of miscommunication when the phone guesses the wrong word.

To fix an incorrectly chosen word, use the Del key to back up and erase. Type slower next time.

Text Editing

Editing is that part of the writing process where you admit that nothing <ahem> reads good the first time. Though you may not be editing on your cellphone for content reasons, you'll probably want to fix typos and ensure that the automatic word selection did its job properly. Happily, editing on the Nexus One works very well.

Moving the cursor

The first task in editing text is to move the *cursor*, that blinking, vertical line where text appears, to the right spot. You have two ways to move the cursor.

The first way to move the cursor is simply to touch that part of the text where you want the cursor to blink. This method works, but because your finger is probably fatter than the spot where you want the cursor, it's not effective.

The second, and better, way to move the cursor is to use the phone's trackball: Rolling the trackball around moves the cursor just like a mouse moves the cursor on a desktop computer.

After you move the cursor, you can continue to type, use the Del key to back up and erase, or paste in text copied from elsewhere. See the later section "Cutting, copying, and pasting" for more information.



Use a combination of finger and trackball to move the cursor: Touch the screen first with your finger. Then use the trackball to make fine adjustments.

Selecting text

If you're familiar with selecting text in a word processor, selecting text on the Nexus One works the same. Well, *theoretically*, it works the same: Selected text appears highlighted on the touch screen. You can then delete, cut, or copy that block of selected text. It's the method of selecting text on a phone that's different.

Start selecting text by pressing and holding — a long press — any part of a text screen or an input box. When you do, the Edit Text menu appears, as shown in Figure 4-7.

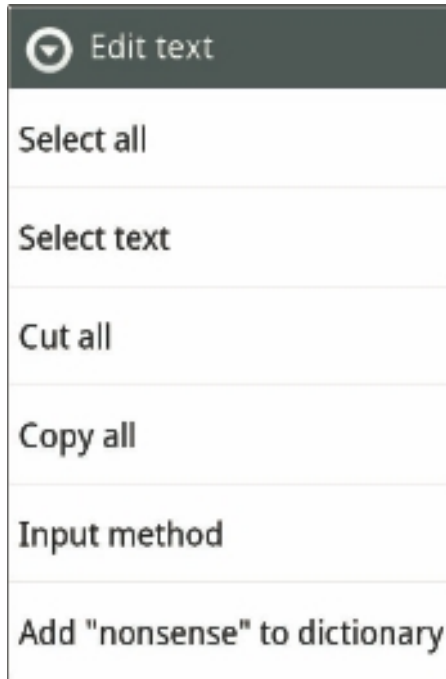


Figure 4-7: The Edit Text selection menu.

The first two options on the Edit Text menu (refer to the figure) deal with selecting text:

Select All: Choose this option to select all the text, either in an input box or whatever text you’ve been entering or editing in the current application.

Select Text: Choose this option to select a block of text starting at the cursor’s location. You use the trackball or touch part of the text to extend the selection. My advice is to use the trackball for more precise text selection.

After the text is selected, you can do four things with it: Delete it, replace it, copy it, or cut it. Delete the text by touching the Del key on the keyboard. Replace text by typing something new while the text is selected. The next section describes how to cut or copy the text.



- ✓ To back out of the Edit Text menu, press the Back soft button.
- ✓ You can cancel a text selection by making a long press on the selected block and then choosing the Stop Selecting Text command from the menu that appears. See the later section “Cutting, copying, and pasting text.”
- ✓ Quickly select a single word by touching it twice with your finger.

Selecting text on a Web page

When you're browsing the Web on your Nexus One, text is selected by summoning a special menu item. Obey these steps:



1. **Press the Menu soft button to summon the Web browser's menu.**
2. **Choose the More command.**
3. **Choose Select Text.**
4. **Drag your finger over the text on the Web page you want to copy.**

Or, you can use the trackball to move a pointer on the screen and then press the trackball to begin selecting text.

5. **Lift your finger to complete selecting the text.**

Or, you can press the trackball a second time.

When you're finished selecting, the text is instantly copied. You can then paste the text into any application on your phone that accepts text input. See the next section.



- ✓ Use the trackball when you need to select more text than appears on a single screen. Unlike using your finger, when you scroll to select text by using the trackball, the Web page scrolls as well.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 11 for more information on surfing the Web with your phone.

Cutting, copying, and pasting text

After selecting a chunk of text — or all the text — on the screen, you can then cut or copy that text and paste it elsewhere. Copying or cutting and then pasting text works just like it does on your computer.

Follow these steps to cut or copy text on your phone:

1. **Select the text you want to cut or copy.**

Selecting text is covered earlier in this chapter.

2. **Long-press on the selected text.**

Touch the text on the touch screen and keep your finger down. You see the Edit Text menu, similar to the one shown in Figure 4-8.

3. Touch Cut or Copy on the menu to cut or copy the text.

When you choose Cut, the text is removed; the cut-and-paste operation moves text.

4. If necessary, start the application you want to paste text into.

5. Choose the input box or text area where you want to paste the copied or cut text.

6. Move the cursor to the exact spot where the text is to be pasted.

You can use the trackball to precisely move the cursor.

7. Long-press the text box or area.

8. Choose the Paste command from the Edit Text menu (refer to Figure 4-8).

The text you cut or copied appears where the cursor was blinking.



Figure 4-8: The Edit Text cut-and-copy menu.

The text you paste can be pasted again and again. Until you cut or copy additional text, you can use the Paste command to your heart's content.



- ✓ You can paste text only into locations where text is allowed. Odds are good that if you can type, or whenever you see the onscreen keyboard, you can paste text.
- ✓ When you initially select text, the menu that opens (refer to Figure 4-7) contains two commands you can use to select *and* cut or copy text: Choose Cut All to cut all text in a box or text area. Choose Copy All to copy all text. You can then use the Paste command, described in this section, to paste that chunk of text.

Voice Input

One of the most amazing things about the Nexus One is its uncanny ability to interpret your dictation as text. Yes, it's almost as good as Mr. Spock talking to the computer on *Star Trek*. In fact, it should amaze you — which I admit is impressive for a cellphone.



Voice input is available any time you see the microphone icon, similar to the one shown in the margin. To begin voice input, touch the icon. A Voice Input screen appears, as shown in Figure 4-9.

When you see the text *Speak Now*, speak directly into the phone.

As you speak, the microphone icon (refer to Figure 4-9) flashes red. The red flashing doesn't mean that the phone is embarrassed by what you're saying. No, the red flashing merely indicates that the phone is listening.

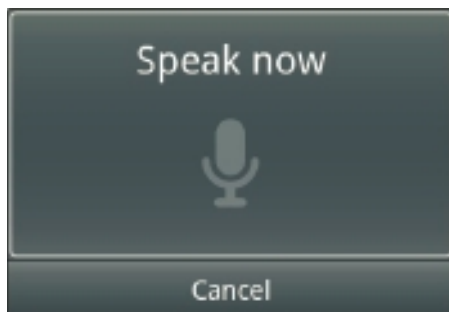


Figure 4-9: The Voice Input thing.

After you stop talking, the phone digests what you said. You see your voice input appear as a wave-like pattern on the screen. Eventually, the text you spoke — or a close approximation — appears on the screen. It's magical, and sometimes comical.



- ✓ Also see Chapter 5 for information on dialing the phone using your voice.
- ✓ A microphone icon shows up on some onscreen keyboard variations (refer to Figure 4-1). Touch the icon to dictate to, rather than type on, your phone.
- ✓ You can also summon the Voice Input gizmo by swiping your finger across the onscreen keyboard.
- ✓ The microphone icon appears only when voice input is allowed. Not every application features voice input as an option.
- ✓ The better your diction, the better the results. Try to speak only a sentence or less.
- ✓ You can edit your voice input just as you edit any text. See the section “Text Editing,” earlier in this chapter.
- ✓ You must speak any punctuation in your text. For example, you would need to say, “I’m sorry comma Belinda” to have the phone produce the text I’m sorry, Belinda (or similar wording.)
- ✓ Common punctuation you can dictate includes comma, period, exclamation point, question mark, and colon.
- ✓ Pause your speech before and after speaking punctuation.
- ✓ The Nexus One features a voice censor, which replaces any naughty words you might utter with a series of pound (#) symbols. The phone knows a lot of blue terms, including George Carlin’s infamous “Seven Words You Can’t Say On the Radio,” but apparently the terms *crap* and *damn* are fine. (Don’t ask me how much time I spent researching this topic.)

Part II

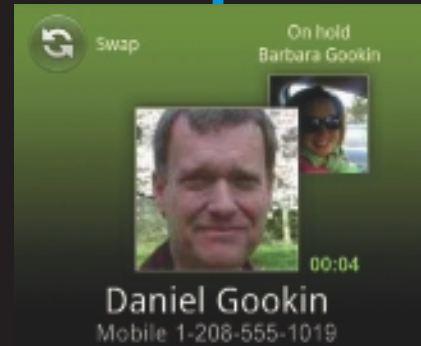
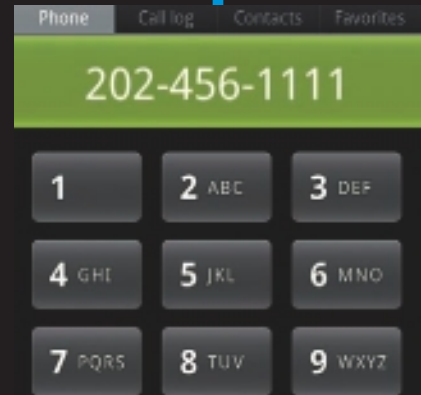
Your Basic Phone



In this part . . .

It was in early fall when Krom addressed his fellow cavemen around the campfire: “When Og near, Krom and Og can talk. When Og far, no more can talk.” Such a lamentable truth was met by a chorus of “Ugh” from the group. It would take centuries for human beings to perfect long-distance communications, and even more time after that for Krom to realize that he and Og had nothing to talk about, not since Krom bogarted Og’s game-winning kill in *Call of Duty: Modern Warfare 2*.

The telephone is a basic, accepted gizmo in our culture. Many humans, specifically teenagers, couldn’t survive without one. The cellphone is the natural extension of that technology. Though a cellphone such as the Nexus One takes communications beyond the verbal realm, the device remains, at its core, a phone. This part of the book explores the simple nature of the Nexus One.



The Telephone Thing

In This Chapter

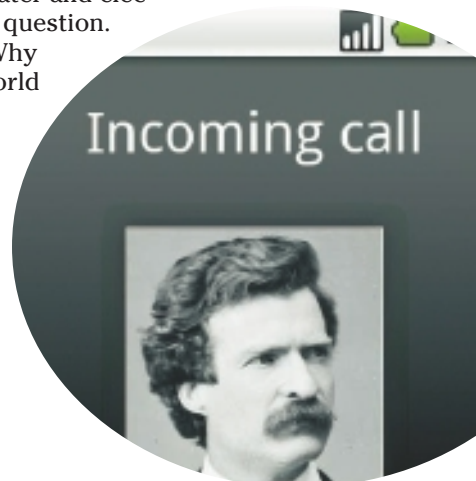
- ▶ Calling someone
- ▶ Connecting with a contact
- ▶ Trying out voice dialing
- ▶ Getting a call
- ▶ Checking into a missed call
- ▶ Perusing the call log

I remember an interview I read a long time ago. It was with a rugged mountain man, a fellow who lived in a cabin he built way, way out in the middle of nowhere. The interviewer was asking the old fellow how on earth he could do without modern conveniences, such as running water and electricity. The spry old man had a solid answer for each question. His reason for not owning a telephone was simple: “Why would I have a bell in my house that anyone in the world can ring?”

It’s rather old-fashioned these days to have a bell in your house that anyone can ring. Instead, folks opt to have an electronic gadget in their pocket or purse that anyone in the world can ring — or vibrate. This chapter covers that basic operating mode of the Nexus One — how your electronic communications device can be used to say Hello!

Reach Out and Touch Someone

Once upon a time, all a cellphone could do was place phone calls. No Internet. No music. No camera. Possibly even no list of contacts. It was dull, yet that’s really all a phone needs to do: Place phone calls. Welcome to the section that explains how the Nexus One does its most basic, boring task.



Making a phone call

To place a call from your phone, heed these steps:



1. Touch the Phone icon, found on the Home screen.

Or you can touch the Phone icon, found just to the left of the Launcher on any Home screen.

You see the Phone dialpad, similar to the one shown in Figure 5-1.

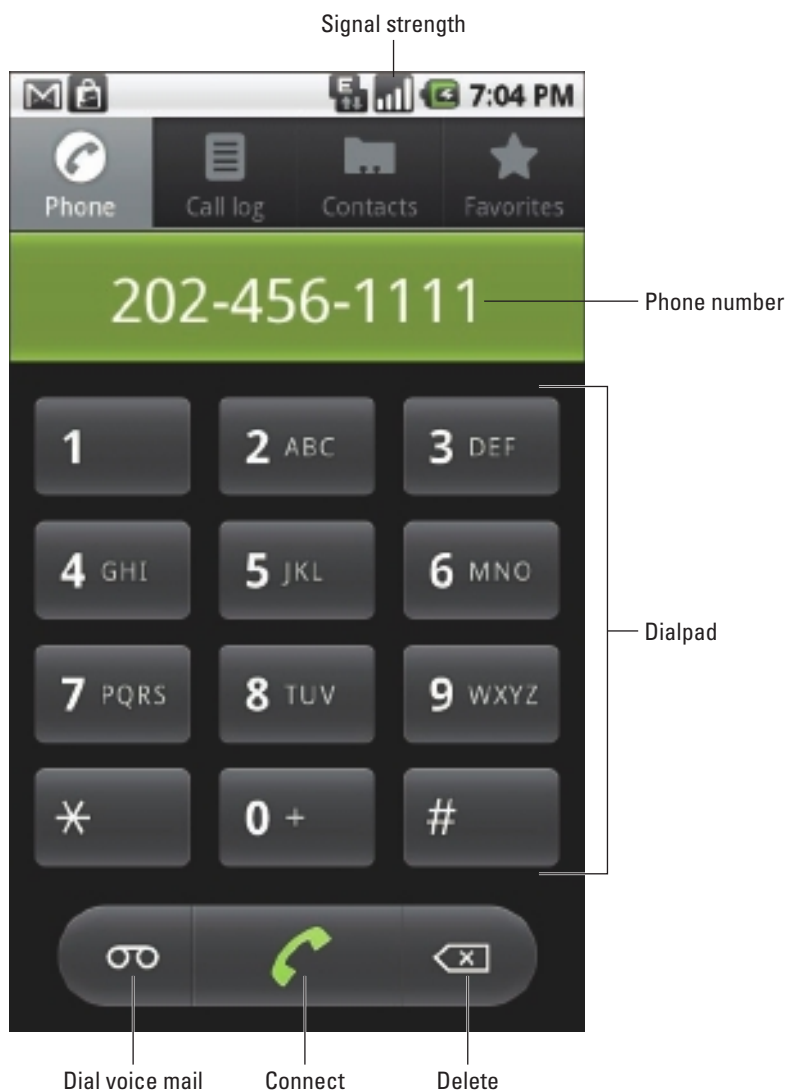


Figure 5-1: Dialing the Nexus One.

2. Input the number to call.

Touch the keys on the dialpad to input the number. If you make a mistake, use the Delete key (refer to Figure 5-1) to back up and erase.

As you dial, you hear the traditional touch-tone sound as you input the number. The phone may also vibrate as you touch the numbers. These sound and vibration settings can be changed; see Chapter 21.

3. Touch the green phone button to make the call.

The phone doesn't make the call until you touch the green button.

As the phone attempts to make the connection, two things happen:



- First, the Call In Progress notification icon appears on the status bar. The icon is a big clue that the phone is making a call or is actively connected.
- Second, the screen changes to show the number dialed, similar to the one shown in Figure 5-2. When the recipient's name is in your Contacts list, the name appears as shown in the figure. Further, if a picture is part of a person's contact information, the picture appears when the person answers the phone, as shown in Figure 5-2.

Even though the touch screen is pretty, at this point you need to listen to the phone: Put it up to your ear or listen through the earphones or a Bluetooth headset.

4. When someone answers the phone, talk.

What you say is up to you, though I can state from experience that it's a bad idea to coldly open a conversation with your neighbors by saying that you just accidentally killed their cat.

Use the volume button on the side of the Nexus One to adjust the speaker volume during the call.

5. To end the call, touch the red End button.

The phone disconnects. You hear a soft beep, which is the phone's signal that the call has ended. The phone call in-progress notification goes away.



You can do other things while you're making a call on the Nexus One. Just press the Home button to run an application, browse the Internet, check an appointment, or do whatever. These activities don't disconnect the call.

You can also listen to music while you're making a call, though I don't recommend it because the music volume and call volume are difficult to set separately.



Figure 5-2: Your call went through!

To return to the call after doing something else, swipe down the notifications at the top of the screen and touch the notification for the current call. You return to the call screen, similar to the one shown in Figure 5-2. Continue yapping. (See Chapter 3 for information on reviewing notifications.)

- ✔ You can connect or remove the earphones at any time during the call. The call is neither disconnected nor interrupted if you do so.
- ✔ If you're using earphones, you can press the phone's power button during the call to turn off the display. I recommend turning off the display so that you don't accidentally touch the Mute or End button during the call.
- ✔ You can't accidentally mute or end the call when the phone is placed against your face; a sensor in the phone detects when it's close to something and the touch screen is automatically disabled.
- ✔ Don't worry about the phone being too far away from your mouth; it picks up your voice just fine.
- ✔ To mute the call, touch the Mute button (refer to Figure 5-2). A mute icon, shown in the margin, appears as the phone's status.
- ✔ Touching the Speaker button allows you to hold the phone at a distance to listen and talk, which allows you to let others listen and share in the conversation. The Speaker icon appears as the phone's status when the speaker is active.
- ✔ Don't hold the phone to your ear when the speaker is active.
- ✔ If you're wading through one of those nasty voice-mail systems, touch the dialpad button (refer to Figure 5-2) so that you can "Press 1 for English" when necessary.
- ✔ Touch the Hold button to temporarily suspend the call. See Chapter 6 for more information on putting a call on hold.
- ✔ Also see Chapter 6 for information on using the Add Call button.
- ✔ When using a Bluetooth headset, connect the headset *before* you make the call.
- ✔ If you need to dial an international number, press and hold the zero (0) key until the plus-sign (+) character appears. Then input the rest of the international number. For more information on International calling, see Chapter 20.
- ✔ You hear a soft beep if the call is dropped or the other party hangs up. You can confirm the disconnection by looking at the phone, which shows that the call has ended.





✓ You cannot place a phone call when no service is available; check the signal strength (refer to Figure 5-1). Also see the nearby sidebar “Signal-strength and network information you don’t have to read.”



✓ You cannot place a phone call when the phone is in Airplane mode. See Chapter 20 for information.



✓ The phone call in-progress notification icon (refer to Figure 5-2) is a useful thing. When you see the notification, it means that the phone is connected to another party. To return to the phone screen, swipe down the status bar and touch the phone call’s notification. You can then press the End button to disconnect or just put the phone to your face to see who’s on the line.

✓ Though the Android operating system lets you browse the Internet, check an appointment, or use an application while you’re making a call, this feature might not be allowed by your cellular provider. Check with your provider to ensure that the Nexus One can perform these feats on its system.

Dialing a contact

Because your phone is also your digital Little Black Book, one of the easiest methods for placing a phone call is to simply dial one of the folks on your Contacts list. You have several ways to do that.

Choosing a contact from the Contacts list

To phone up someone on your phone’s Contacts list, follow these steps:



1. On the Home screen, touch the Contacts icon.

The list of contacts is displayed. It’s sorted alphabetically by first name.

2. If necessary, choose Contacts from the icons shown at the top of the list.

See Figure 5-3 for the location of the Contacts button.

3. Scroll the list of contacts to find the person you want to call.

To rapidly scroll, you can flick through the list with your finger or use the tab that appears on the right side of the list (refer to Figure 5-3): Drag the tab around by using your finger.

4. Touch the contact you want to call.

The contact’s detailed information appears.

5. Choose the contact’s phone number.

Touch the number to dial.

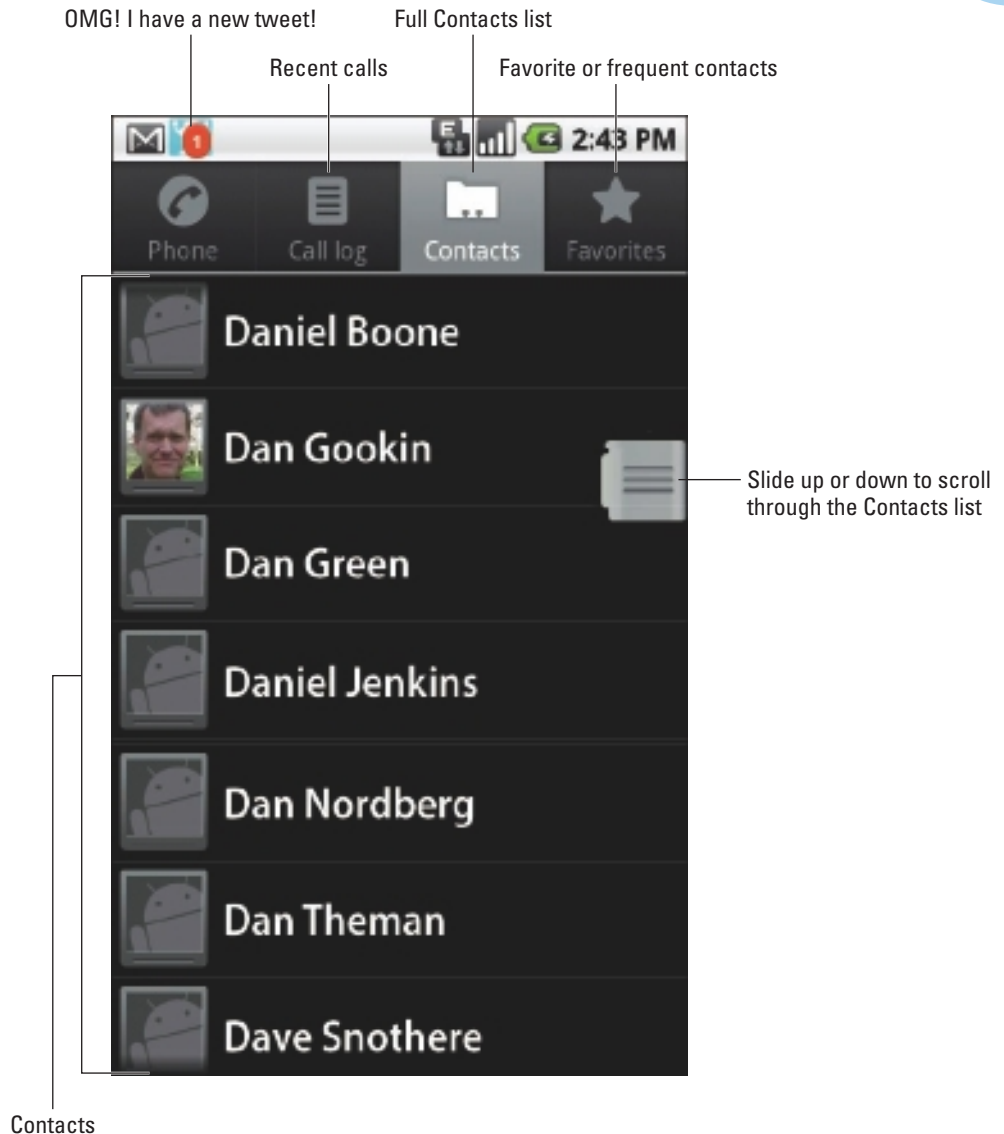


Figure 5-3: Choosing a contact to dial!

At this point, dialing proceeds as described earlier in this chapter.

See Chapter 8 for more information about the Contacts list.



Signal-strength and network information you don't have to read

Two technical-looking icons appear to the left of the current time on the Nexus One status bar. These icons represent the network the phone is connected to and the signal strength.

The signal strength icon has three basic variations:



The No Signal icon appears when the phone is out of cell signal range. You can't make calls.



The Signal icon appears and tells you the quality of the cellular reception at your location. The more bars you see, the better the signal.



The Roaming icon appears when the phone is using another cellular network. When you see this icon, it may indicate that you will be charged extra for any calls you make (or receive).

The network icon also has several variations. No icon means that no network is available, which happens when the network is down or your phone is out of range.



The GPRS (General Packet Radio Service) icon appears whenever the Nexus One is connected to a 2G network using the GPRS protocol.



The GPRS icon lights up when it's accessing information over the network.



The EDGE icon shows up when the Nexus One is connected to an EDGE 2G digital network. EDGE stands for Enhanced Data Rates for GSM Evolution, just in case you do cross-word puzzles.



When the Nexus One is using an EDGE network, the icon changes to show the teensy arrows in white.



The 3G icon appears when the Nexus One is connected to a 3G network.



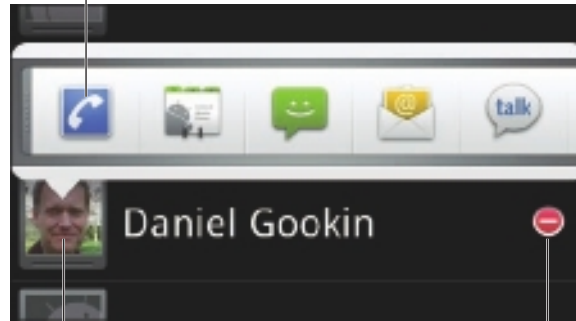
The 3G icon lights up when the Nexus One is using a 3G network.

Also see Chapter 13 for more information on the network connection and how it plays a role in your phone's Internet access.

Dialing a quick contact

Quick contact information appears when you touch and hold a contact's photo, or the Android logo placeholder, in the Contacts list, shown in Figure 5-4. After long-pressing the photo, you see the quick contact pop-up, shown in the figure. Touch the phone icon to dial the contact's primary number.

Touch to dial the main number.



Long-press here

Google Talk status
(Unavailable)

Figure 5-4: Quick contact information.

Using a contact's direct-dial shortcut on the Home screen



When a contact's direct-dial shortcut icon is on the Home screen, you simply touch it to dial the contact. There's nothing else you need to do: The contact is dialed as soon as you touch the shortcut.

- ✓ The letter on the shortcut icon tells you which number you're dialing, if the contact has multiple numbers: M for mobile, H for home, W for work, and so on.
- ✓ Only direct-dial shortcut icons dial immediately. Touching a standard contact shortcut icon merely displays quick contact information, similar to the one shown earlier, in Figure 5-4.
- ✓ See Chapter 21 for information on placing shortcut icons on the Home screen.

Phoning someone you call often

Because it's a sort-of computer, the Nexus One keeps track of your phone calls. Also, you can flag certain people whose numbers you want to keep handy as your favorites. You can take advantage of those two features to quickly call those you phone most often or to redial a number.

To use the call log to return a call, or to call someone right back, follow these steps:



1. **Touch the Contacts icon on the Home screen.**
2. **Touch the Call Log button found at the top of the Contacts list.**

Refer to Figure 5-3.

You see a list of recent calls you've made or received. You can choose an item to see more information, but to call someone back, it's just quicker to complete Step 3.



3. **Touch the Phone button by the entry.**

The Nexus One dials the contact.

People you call frequently, or contacts you've added to the favorites list, can be accessed by heeding these directions:



1. **Open the list of contacts by touching the Contacts icon on the Home screen.**
2. **Touch the Favorites button.**

Refer to Figure 5-3 for its location, to the upper right of the Contacts list.

The top part of the list contains favorites, contacts you've marked with a star. Below that, you see a list of frequently called names and numbers.

3. **Scroll the list to find a contact.**
4. **Touch the contact's name to see the information.**
5. **Choose the contact's phone number you want to call.**

Refer to Chapter 8 for information on how to make one of your contacts a favorite.

Using the Voice Dialer

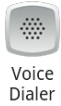
The Nexus One understands your speech, which means that you can not only dictate to the phone but also dial the phone using your voice and not your finger.

The quick-and-dirty way to dial the phone with your voice is to follow these steps:



1. **Press and hold the Search soft button.**
2. **Say "call" followed by the contact's name, or you can speak the phone number.**

When the contact is recognized, the number is dialed immediately. Otherwise, you see a list of names to choose from — though it isn't truly in the spirit of voice dialing.



The Nexus One also has a Voice Dialer application, which does the same thing as pressing and holding the Search soft button. An advantage, though, is that a screen full of helpful voice-dialing suggestions appears, as shown in Figure 5-5.



Figure 5-5: Helpful hints from the Voice Dialer app.



The Voice Dialer program can also be used to run applications on the Nexus One. For example, say “open contacts” to open the Contacts list. You’re asked to confirm your choice (which kinda goes against the whole voice-control theme); touch the OK button to confirm.



✓ You have to be pretty dang fast to touch that Cancel button if the phone chooses the wrong contact to dial. I recommend that you not try this trick unless you can see the phone to confirm that it’s dialing the proper number.

✓ Be precise! If the contact is named William Johnson, the Nexus One may not dial it when you say “Bill Johnson.”

✓ The number dialed is the default, or main, number set up when you added the contact. See Chapter 8 for information on how to set the main number for a contact.

✓ See Chapter 4 for additional information on using the Nexus One dictation commands.

✓ Consider placing a copy of the Voice Dialer application on the Home screen, if you use it a lot. See Chapter 21.



It's the Phone!

A while back, when phones known as “landlines” were all the rage, it was quite an exciting event to get a phone call. Heck, you didn’t even know who was calling you until you picked the thing up and eagerly said Hello! You may not be as excited to receive a phone call these days, what with the popularity of cellphones, but it’s still exciting to know that someone out there cares enough to call — even when it’s a bill collector.

Well, maybe not when it’s a bill collector, but you get the idea.

Receiving a call

Several things can happen when you receive a phone call on your Nexus One:

- ✓ The phone rings or makes a noise signaling you to an incoming call.
- ✓ The phone vibrates.
- ✓ The trackball flashes.
- ✓ The car in front of you explodes and your crazy passenger starts screaming in an incoherent yet comic manner.

Only the last item happens in a Bruce Willis movie. The other three possibilities, or a combination thereof, are your signals that you have an incoming call. A simple look at the touch screen tells you more information, as illustrated in Figure 5-6.



To answer the call, slide the green Answer button to the right. Then place the phone to your ear or use the headset, if one is attached.

To ignore the call, slide the red Ignore button to the left. The phone stops ringing and the call is immediately sent to voice mail.

You can also touch the volume button (up or down) to silence the ringer.

If you’re already on the phone when you receive an incoming call, you hear a tone. At that point, the touch screen displays information about the incoming call, similar to the one shown in Figure 5-6, and you can answer or ignore the call. When you choose to answer, the current call is placed on hold; see Chapter 6 for more information on handling multiple calls.

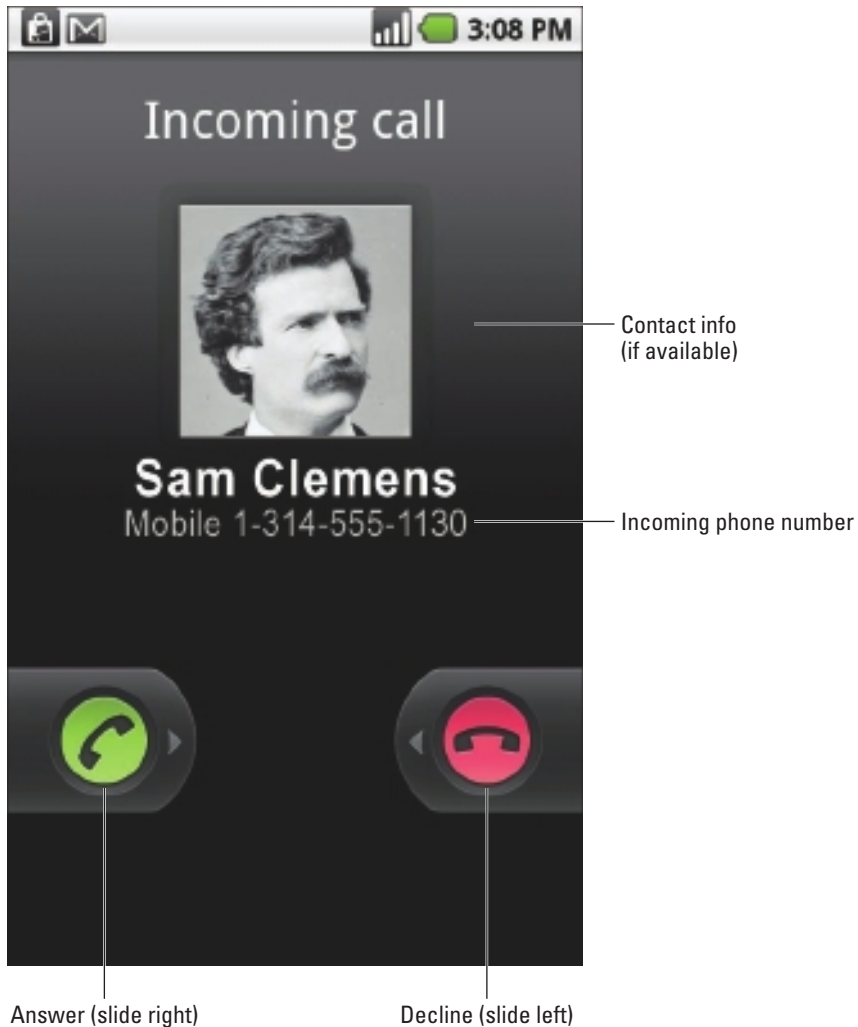


Figure 5-6: You have an incoming call.

- ✓ The contact picture, such as Mr. Clemens in Figure 5-6, appears only when you've assigned a picture to that contact. Otherwise, the generic Android icon shows up.
- ✓ If you're using a Bluetooth headset, you touch the control on the headset to answer your phone. See Chapter 13 for more information on using Bluetooth gizmos.

- ✓ See Chapter 7 for information on automatically directing certain calls to voice mail when using Google Voice.
- ✓ The sound you hear when the phone rings is known as the *ringtone*. You can configure the Nexus One to play a number of ringtones depending on who is calling, or you can set a universal ringtone. The topic is covered in Chapter 6.

Setting incoming call signals

Whether the phone rings, vibrates, or flashes the trackball depends on how you've configured the Nexus One to signal you for an incoming call. Abide by these steps to set various options for your phone:



1. **On the Home screen, touch the Launcher to view all programs on the phone.**
2. **Choose the Settings icon to open the phone's Settings screen.**
3. **Choose Sound.**
4. **Set the phone's ringer volume by touching Volume.**
5. **Manipulate the Ringtone slider left or right to specify the volume for an incoming call.**

After you release the slider, you hear an example of how loudly the phone rings.

6. **Touch OK.**

If you'd rather just mute the phone, touch the Silent Mode option on the main Sound Settings screen.

7. **To activate vibration when the phone rings, choose Vibrate from the Sound Settings screen.**

Choose how you want the phone to vibrate from the options presented in the Vibrate menu.

8. **To direct the Nexus One to flash the trackball light on an incoming call (or any notification), ensure that a green check mark appears to the right of the Pulse Notification Light option.**

You might have to scroll down to find it; touch the Pulse Notification Light box to activate the feature.

9. **Touch the Home button when you're done.**

When the next call comes in, the phone alerts you by using the volume, vibration, or flashing options you've just set.

- ✓ The vibration option is a good one to choose for those times when you need to silence the phone. See Chapter 3 for information on temporarily silencing the phone.



✓ When the phone is silenced, the Ringer Is Silenced icon appears on the status bar.



✓ When the phone is in Vibration mode, the Vibrate Mode icon appears on the Status icon.

✓ Turning on vibration puts an extra drain on the battery. See Chapter 22 for more information on power management for your phone.

Who's Calling Who When?

I don't know what type of brain they put in the Nexus One, but it's not my teenage son's brain. That particular brain was terrible at remembering who phoned, and when, and what was said. He has since moved out of the house, and I now have a Nexus One that does a far, far better job of remembering who called and when.

Dealing with a missed call



The notification icon for a missed call looming on the status bar means that someone called and you didn't pick up. Fortunately, the Nexus One remembers all the details for you.

To deal with a missed call, follow these steps:

- 1. Pull down the status bar to display the notifications.**

See Chapter 3 for details on how to pull down the status bar and deal with notifications.

- 2. Touch the Missed Call notification.**

The phone's call log is displayed.

- 3. Touch the entry in the call log for the missed call.**

A screen is displayed that shows more information about the call.

- 4. To return the call, touch the number that's displayed.**

See the next section for more information on the call log.

Reviewing the call log

The key to knowing who called and when is to use the Nexus One call log. Here's how it works:

- 1. From the Home Screen, touch the Phone icon.**

Or, on any Home screen, you can touch the Phone icon just to the left of the Launcher.

2. At the top of the Phone screen, choose Call Log.

The call log is displayed in Figure 5-7. You see the list of people who have phoned you, starting with the most recent call, in chronological order. Icons next to each entry describe whether the call was incoming, outgoing, or missed, as illustrated in the figure.

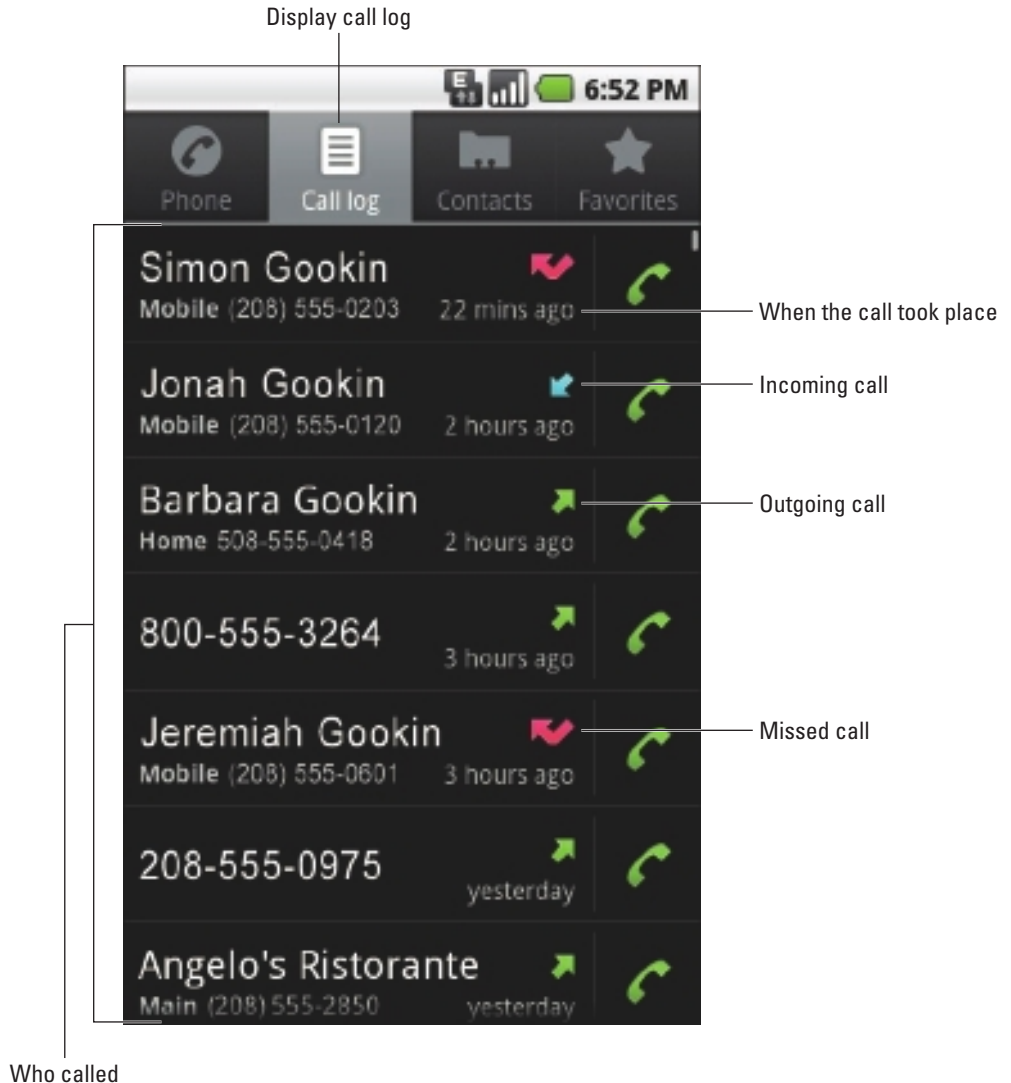


Figure 5-7: The call log.

3. Touch an entry to glean more information.

You see information about the type of call (outgoing, incoming, missed), the time and day of the call, plus the call's duration. You also have options for calling the number back and sending an e-mail or a text message, depending on whether the number matches one of your contacts.

4. Press the Back soft button to return to the call log.

The call log can be quite long. Use your finger to scroll the list.



Using the call log is a quick way to add a recent call as a contact. Simply touch the Add to Contacts option when you examine details from a recent call (refer to Step 3). See Chapter 8 for more information about contacts.



To clear the call log, press the Menu soft button. The only item on the menu is Clear Call Log. Choose that item to empty the list.

More Phone Stuff

In This Chapter

- ▶ Handling multiple incoming calls
- ▶ Setting up a conference call
- ▶ Configuring call forwarding options
- ▶ Banishing a contact forever to voice mail
- ▶ Finding a better ringtone
- ▶ Assigning ringtones to your contacts
- ▶ Using your favorite song or sound as a ringtone
- ▶ Showing or hiding your phone's caller ID

It's complete gossip, so I'll dispel it for you now: After Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone, the second thing on his mind was definitely not creating the call waiting feature. Neither is it true that Mr. Watson desired to have the phone honk like a goose instead of ringing like a bell when a call was received. Such stories are Internet fables.

Rumors aside, your cellphone comes brimming with interesting and useful features to supplement the mundane phone call. For example, the Nexus One is readily adept at dealing with more than one call at a time. You can also easily and freely choose which sound you want the phone to make upon receiving an incoming call. This chapter uncovers those details and more.



Multiple Call Mania

Human beings can hold only one conversation at a time. I remember hearing that theory in a lecture, but then the guy next to me started talking and I couldn't focus on what the speaker was saying. So I'll never really know for certain. I do, however, know that the Nexus One is capable of handling more than one call at a time. This section explains how it works.

Putting someone on hold

Whether you're dealing with one call or two calls, it's possible — and rather easy — to place someone on hold. For example, you want to set down the phone and scream at a wall for a second. Here's how to do it:

1. **Face the wall.**
2. **Scream.**



To place the call on hold before you scream, touch the Hold button that appears in the upper left corner of the touch screen display.



To unhold a call, touch the Unhold button.

- ✓ There's no reason to place a single call on hold. Often, you can just mute the phone so that the caller doesn't hear you sneeze, say something they wouldn't like to hear, or fire up the blender and make a margarita.
- ✓ The Hold button appears on the screen when you're on the phone. You may have to wake up the phone or unlock it to see that screen.



- ✓ When a call is on hold, a Call On Hold icon appears on the status bar. If you're viewing the phone screen, the words *On hold* appear next to the contact or Android icon, and the screen glows with a tan background.

Receiving a new call when you're on the phone

You're on the phone, chatting it up. Suddenly, someone else calls you. What happens next?

The Nexus One alerts you to a new call. The phone may vibrate or make a sound. Look at the front of the phone to see what's up with the incoming call, as shown in Figure 6-1.

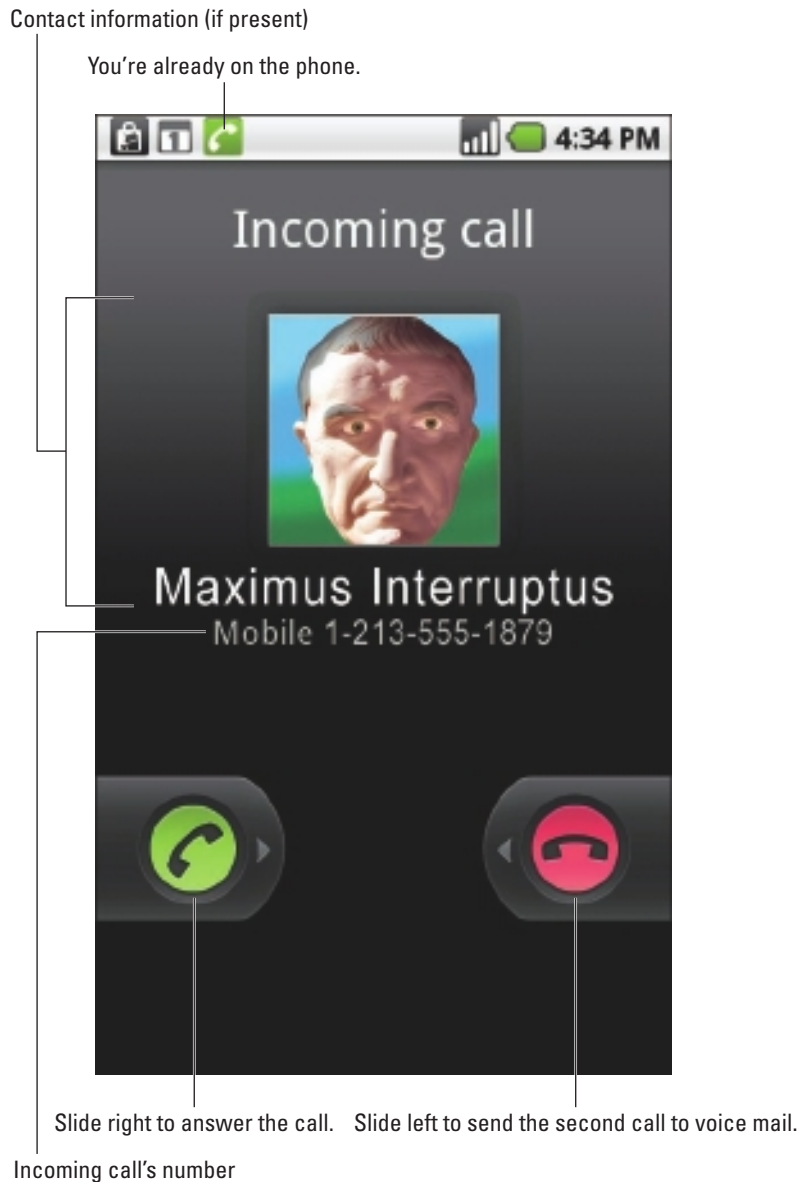


Figure 6-1: Suddenly, there's an incoming call!

You have these three options:

Answer the call. Slide the green Answer button to the right to answer the incoming call just as you answer any call on your phone.

Send the call directly to voice mail. Slide the red Ignore button to the left. The incoming call is sent directly to voice mail.

Ignore the call. Do nothing. The call eventually goes into voice mail, if you have set the option Forward When Unanswered, as described in the section “Forwarding phone calls,” later in this chapter.

When you choose to answer the call, the call you’re on is placed on hold. You might even consider saying, “Let me put you on hold for a second, I have another call.” Do that before you answer the second call.

- ✓ Contact information about the incoming call (refer to Figure 6-1) appears only when that caller is in your phone’s Contacts list.
- ✓ Ensure that call waiting is activated on your phone so that you’re notified of a new call while you’re on the line. See the section “Activating call waiting,” later in this chapter.

Juggling two calls

After you answer a second call, as described in the preceding section, your Nexus One is now working with two calls at a time. Figure 6-2 shows what the phone looks like when that happens. The person you’re talking with appears in the foreground. The person on hold appears lonely, back and to the right, as illustrated in the figure.

Here’s what you can do when you manage to talk on your Nexus One with two people on two other phones:

Swap: To switch between the calls, touch the Swap button. The person you were talking to is placed on hold and you’re now speaking with the person who was previously on hold.

Merge Calls: To combine all calls so that everyone is talking with each other (three people), touch the Merge Calls button. (See the later section “Making a conference call.”)

End: To end a call, first switch to the call you want to end. Touch the End button (refer to Figure 6-2).



Figure 6-2: Juggling two calls at a time.

After letting one person go, the call proceeds as normal: Touch the End button to end that call, or — who knows? — someone else will call and you'll have to deal with the whole thing all over again.



- ✓ The number of different calls your phone can handle depends on your carrier. For most of us, that's only two calls at a time. In that case, when a third person calls you, they either hear a busy signal or are sent right into voice mail.
- ✓ When you press the End button, it's the person you see on the screen whose call gets dropped.
- ✓ If the person on hold hangs up, their image disappears from the touch screen. You may hear a sound or feel the phone vibrate when the call is dropped.
- ✓ Hold the phone out where you can see the touch screen when you work with multiple calls. That way, you can see who's on the line, who's waiting, and how long they've waited.

Making a conference call

A *conference call* happens when you need to speak with two separate people at one time. I'm not talking about holding two conversations, but rather about holding one conversation with two people on two other phones. To do that, you follow these steps:

1. Phone the first person.

Refer to Chapter 5 if you need to hone your Nexus One phone-calling skills.

2. After your phone connects, and you complete a few pleasantries, touch the Add Call button.

The first person is put on hold and you see the dialpad.

3. Dial the second person.

Say your pleasantries and inform the party that the call is about to be merged.

If the call fails, touch the Unhold button to speak again with the first person you called.

4. Touch the Merge Calls button.

The two calls are now joined. Everyone you've dialed can talk to and hear each other. The phone's touch screen display appears, as shown in Figure 6-3, indicating that you're making a conference call.

5. Add calls, if possible.

Your cellular provider may allow for more than two calls to be active at a time. If so, you can repeat Steps 2 through 4 to add more people to the call.



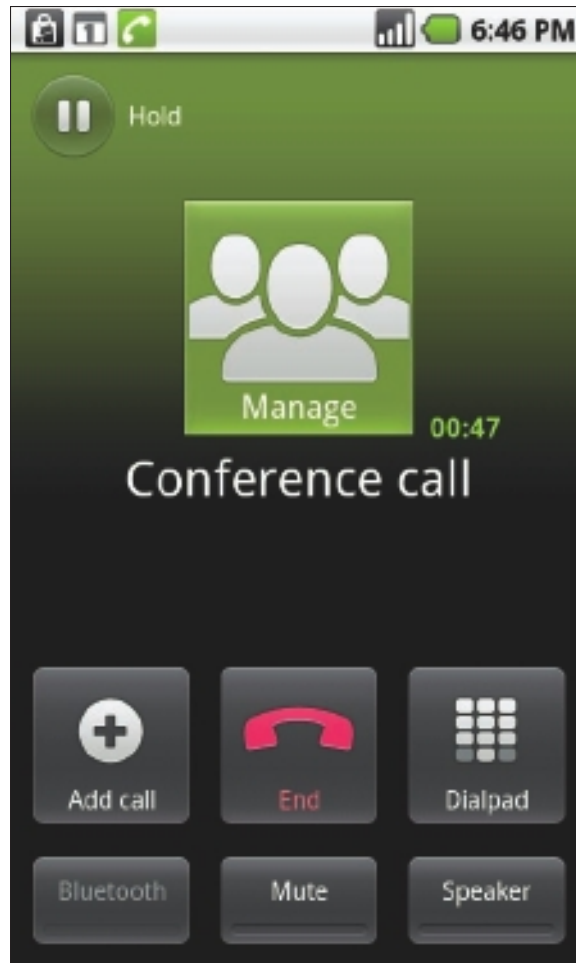


Figure 6-3: A conference call is in progress.

6. Touch the End button to finish your conference call.

All calls are disconnected when you touch the End button on the conference call screen (refer to Figure 6-3).

You can touch the big Manage button (refer to Figure 6-3) during a conference call to selectively hang up a call or listen to just one person. After touching the Manage button, you see a screen similar to the one shown in Figure 6-4. Use that screen to individually control each caller.

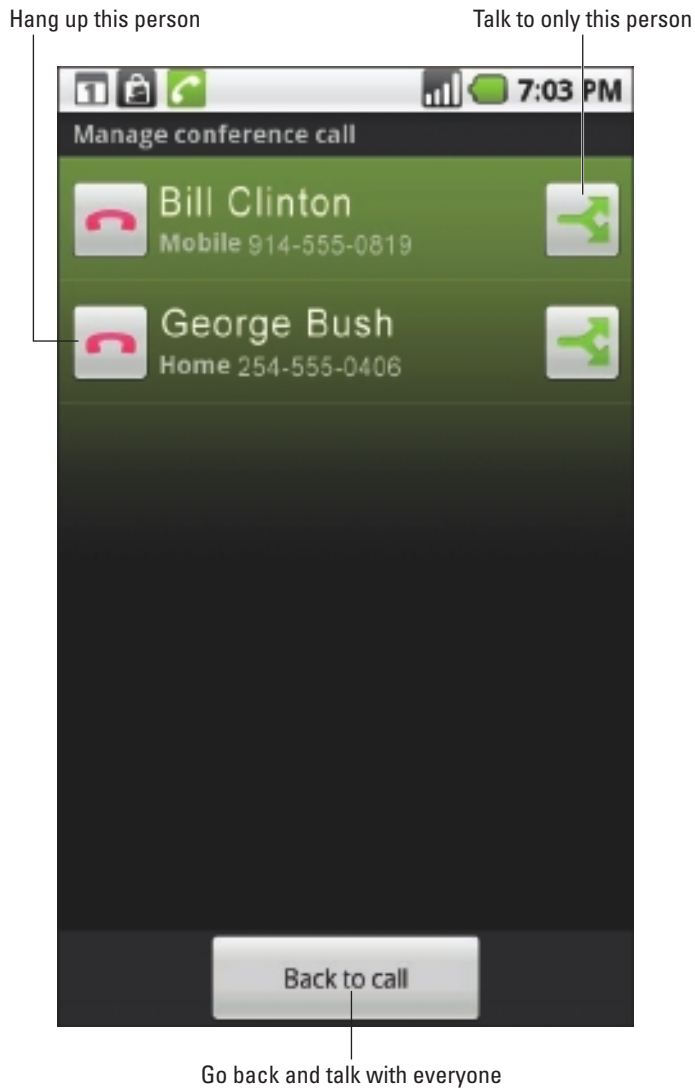


Figure 6-4: Managing a conference call.

Touch the green Unmerge button to listen to only one caller.

Touch the red End button to hang up an individual caller.



Touch the Back to Call button to return to the conference call.

When several people are in a room and want to participate in a call, you can always put the phone in Speaker mode: Touch the Speaker button.

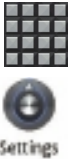
Send a Call Elsewhere

It's relatively easy to banish an unwanted call on the Nexus One. You can dismiss the phone from ringing by touching the Volume button. Or, you can send the call scurrying off into voice mail by sliding the red Ignore button to the left, as described in the section in Chapter 5 about receiving a call.

Other options exist for special handling of incoming calls. They are the forwarding options, described in this section.

Forwarding phone calls

The Nexus One features a host of options for sending an incoming call to another number, the act known as *call forwarding*. Here's how to set things up:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Launcher.**
2. **Choose Settings to enter the phone's Settings screen.**
3. **Choose Call Settings.**
4. **Choose Call Forwarding.**

The phone may think for a moment, and then you see the four call forwarding options:

Always Forward: All calls dialed to your Nexus One cellphone are sent instead to the number you specify. Your phone never rings when this option is set. Setting this option disables all other forwarding options.

Forward When Busy: Calls are forwarded when you're on the phone and choose not to answer an incoming call. Normally, the call is forwarded to your voice mail, though you can use any phone number.

Forward When Unanswered: Calls are forwarded when you choose not to answer the phone. Normally, the call is forwarded to your voice mail.

Forward When Unreached: Calls are forwarded when the phone is turned off, out of range, or in Airplane mode. Again, the voice mail number is the forwarding option of choice.

5. **Choose an option to change.**

6. Input the forwarding phone number.

Or, you can edit the existing number.

For example, type your home number for the Forward When Unreached option so that your cell calls are redirected to your home or office when your cellphone is out of range.

7. Touch OK.**8. Change other call forwarding settings as necessary.**

When the call forwarding feature has been activated, a call forwarding status icon appears at the top of the touch screen.

To disable a call forwarding option, touch the Disable button when you're given the opportunity to type a forward phone number (refer to Step 6).

Sending a contact directly to voice mail

You can configure the Nexus One to forward any of your cellphone contacts directly to voice mail. This is a great way to deal with a pest! Follow these steps:

**1. Touch the Contacts icon on the Home screen.**

The Contacts list opens.

2. Choose a contact.

Use your finger to scroll the list of contacts until you find the annoying person you want to eternally banish to voice mail.

**3. Touch the Menu soft button.****4. Choose Options.****5. Touch the square by Incoming Calls to place a green check mark there.**

Now all incoming calls from that contact are instantly sent to voice mail.

To unbanish the contact, repeat these steps but in Step 5 touch the square to remove the green check mark.

- ✓ This feature is one reason you might want to keep contact information for someone with whom you never want to have contact.
- ✓ See Chapter 8 for more information on the Contacts list.

Fun with Ringtones

I confess: Ringtones can be *fun*. They uniquely identify your phone's ring, especially when you forget to mute your phone and you're hustling to turn the thing off because everyone in the room is annoyed by your ringtone choice — *Soul Bossa Nova*.

On the Nexus One, you can choose which ringtone you want for your phone. You can create your own ringtones or use snippets from favorite tunes. You can also assign ringtones for individual contacts. This section explains how it's done.

Choosing the phone's ringtone

To select a new ringtone for your Nexus One, or to simply confirm which ringtone you're using already, follow these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Launcher button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Sound**
4. **Choose Phone Ringtone.**

If you have a ringtone application, you may see a menu that asks which source to use for the phone's ringtone. Choose Android System.

5. **Choose a ringtone from the list that's displayed.**

Scroll the list. Tap a ringtone to hear a preview.

6. **Touch OK to accept the new ringtone or touch Cancel to keep the phone's ringtone as is.**

You can also set the ringtone used for notifications: In Step 4, choose Notification Ringtone instead of Phone Ringtone.

Setting a contact's ringtone

Ringtones can be assigned by contact so that when your annoying friend Larry calls, you can have your phone yelp like a whiny puppy. Here's how to set a ringtone for a contact:



1. **Touch the Contacts icon on the Home screen.**
2. **From the list, choose the contact to which you want to assign a ringtone.**

3. Touch the Menu soft button.

4. Choose Options.

5. Choose Ringtone.

If you see a Complete Action Using menu, choose the option Android System to select one of the phone's ringtones. Otherwise, you can use another listed application to choose a ringtone.

6. Choose a ringtone from the list.

It's the same list displayed for the phone's ringtones.

7. Touch OK to assign the ringtone to that contact.

Whenever that contact calls, the Nexus One rings using the ringtone you've specified.

Using music as a ringtone

You can use any tune from the Nexus One music library as the phone's ringtone. The first part of the process is finding a good tune to use. Follow along with these steps:



Music

1. Touch the Launcher on the Home screen to display all apps on the phone.

2. Touch Music to open the music player.

3. Choose a tune to play.

See Chapter 17 for specific information on how to use the Music application and use your Nexus One as a portable music player.

The song you want must appear on the screen, or it can be playing, for you to select it as a ringtone.

4. Press the Menu soft button.

5. Choose Use As Ringtone.

The song — the entire thing — is set as the phone's ringtone. Whenever you receive a call, that song plays.

The song you've chosen is added to the list of ringtones. When you choose that ringtone, the song plays — from the start of the song — when you receive an incoming call and until you answer the phone, send the call to voice mail, or choose to ignore the call and eventually the call goes away and the music stops.

You can add as many songs as you like by repeating the steps in this section. Follow the steps in the earlier section “Choosing the phone’s ringtone” for information on switching between different song ringtones. Refer to the steps in the earlier section “Setting a contact’s ringtone” for assigning a specific song to a contact.



A free app at the Android Market, Zedge, has oodles of free ringtones available for preview and download, all shared by Android users around the world. See Chapter 19 for information about the Android Market and how to download and install the Zedge app.

Creating your own ringtones



You can use any MP3 or WAV audio file as a ringtone for the Nexus One, such as a personalized message, a sound you record on your computer, or an audio file you stole from the Internet. If the sound is in either the MP3 or WAV format, it can work as a ringtone on your phone.

The secret to creating your own ringtone is to transfer that audio file from your computer to the Nexus One. That topic is covered in Chapter 17, on synchronizing music between your computer and phone. After the audio file is in the phone’s music library, you can choose the file as a ringtone just as you can assign any music on the Nexus One as a ringtone, as described in the preceding section.

Other Phone Features

The Nexus One has two fun phone features for your fiddling pleasure: Caller ID and call waiting. You can turn either one on or off, as described in this section.

Setting Caller ID

I think Caller ID is a boon to communications. Face it: A ringing telephone is a mystery (or an annoyance). What convenience it is to see who’s calling you before you pick up the line? It’s such a boon feature that I used to pay eight extra dollars for my old landline service, just to take a peek at who was calling.

The Nexus One comes configured with Caller ID activated. You automatically see the number of whoever is phoning you. When that number matches one of your contacts, you see the contact name as well. But what about the calls you make?

Yes, when you phone someone, your phone's ID shows up on their cellphone, or on their landline if they pay the exorbitant fee for Caller ID. You can, however, suppress the Caller ID feature for your phone number on the Nexus One. Here's how:



1. Touch the Launcher button on the Home screen.

Witness the hoard of applications installed on your phone.



2. Choose Settings.

3. Choose Call Settings.

4. Choose Additional Settings.

5. Choose Caller ID.

6. Choose Hide Number to suppress your phone number from being broadcast when you make a call.

When you make a call, the recipient now sees the text *Blocked* or *Unknown*, not your phone number. Of course, you run the risk that the other person may not pick up; many telemarketers also suppress their numbers. But for calling your loan shark or screaming at your former spouse, suppressing the phone number might actually work.

To reactivate the automatic display of your number, repeat the steps in this section but choose either *Network Default* or *Show Number*.

Activating call waiting

Your phone alerts you to an incoming call when you're already on the line, but only when the call waiting feature has been turned on. To ensure that it's on, follow steps 1 through 4 from the preceding section. Ensure that a green check mark appears by the option *Call Waiting*. If not, touch the gray square to turn on call waiting.

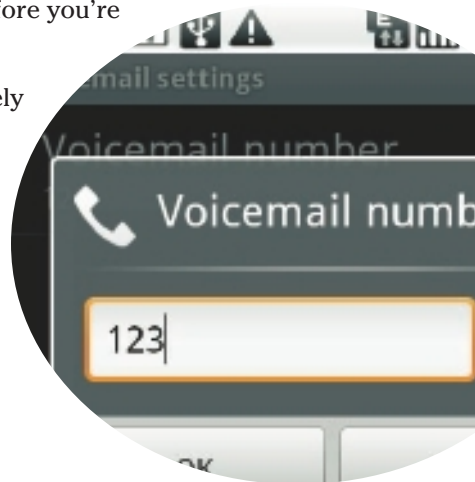
Message for You!

In This Chapter

- ▶ Configuring basic voice mail
- ▶ Retrieving messages
- ▶ Setting up Google Voice
- ▶ Reviewing Google Voice messages
- ▶ Accessing Google Voice on the Web

It all started with the answering machine, which was mechanical and awkward to set up. Eventually, the answering machine gave way to voice mail, which sounds so much more professional and modern. Yet even voice mail has its drawbacks, such as your friend Doris whose phone called you from her purse and you have to listen to a “message” of her driving her car and trying to sing along to the radio for 5 minutes before you’re given a chance to delete the message.

Voice mail has now given way to something completely revolutionary: Your Nexus One can be set up to use Google Voice. It combines the best of voice mail with e-mail and the power of the computer. Though it’s amazing, it’s not exactly the easiest thing to figure out, which is why I wrote this chapter. Oh, and I also briefly cover traditional cellphone voice mail, though you want to use Google Voice on your Nexus One.



Carrier Voice Mail

Your cellphone provider most likely offers a voice mail feature. It’s standard: Missed calls are picked up by the voice mail system. Your phone alerts you to the missed call, and then you phone the voice mail system, listen to your calls, and use the phone’s dialpad to delete messages, repeat messages, and use other features you probably don’t know about because no one ever pays attention.

The real meat of voice mail on the Nexus One is Google Voice. Even so, this section covers the basics of generic carrier voice mail, if you opt to use it. I'll be quick.

Setting up carrier voice mail

If you haven't yet done it, you need to set up your phone's voice mail system. Even if you believe it to be set up and configured, consider mincing through these steps, just to be sure:



- 1. From the Home screen, touch the Launcher.**
- 2. Choose Settings.**
- 3. Choose Call Settings.**
- 4. Choose Voicemail Service.**
- 5. Choose My Carrier, if it isn't chosen already.**

When My Carrier is already chosen, the phone is configured to use your cell service provider's voice mail. And, if it says Google Voice there, definitely don't change it!

After choosing your carrier's voice mail service, the next step is to set things up. Follow Steps 1 through 3 again, but in Step 4 choose Voicemail Settings. The number shown should be the one for your carrier's voice mail service. For example, with my carrier (T-Mobile), the number is 123.

When you need to change the voice mail number, choose Voicemail Number and use the dialpad that opens to type a new number, as shown in Figure 7-1.

Type a new cell number, if necessary, as shown in the figure. Touch OK to set that number for your phone's voice mail.

Getting your messages



When you have voice mail, you see a New Voicemail icon on the status bar. That's your clue to voice mail looming in your carrier's voice mail system.

To access your messages, pull down the status bar to view the notifications. Touch the New Voicemail notification. The Nexus One dials carrier voice mail.

What happens after the voice mail system is dialed depends on your carrier. I'm using T-Mobile in the U.S., so I have to input my PIN number and press the pound (#) key. Then I listen to new messages, or I can use the dial pad to control voice mail, review older messages, and do other stuff.

Honestly, I have no idea how it works because I use Google Voice instead and it's just *soooo* much better.

- ✓ You don't have to venture into carrier voice mail just to see who's called you. Instead, check the call log to review recent calls. Refer to Chapter 5 for information on reviewing the call log.
- ✓ Calls sent into voice mail are not flagged as "missed" in the call log. Chapter 5 discusses reviewing the call log.
- ✓ See Chapter 3 for more information on reviewing notifications.

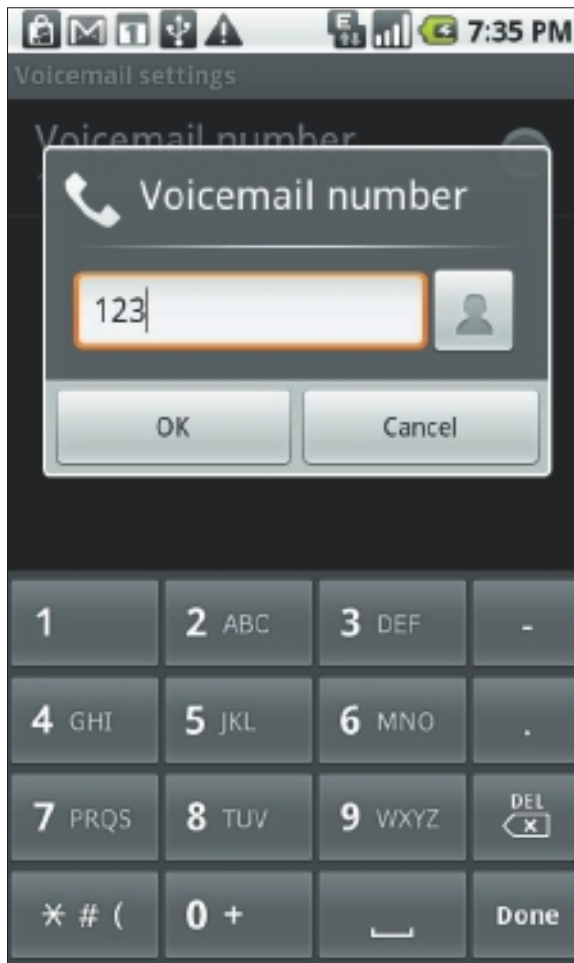


Figure 7-1: Setting the carrier voice-mail number.

Voice Mail with Google Voice

The future of telephone communications exists in the service named Google Voice. It's more than just voice mail. In fact, Google Voice is a lot of things, which makes understanding how it works and appreciating how useful it can be more difficult. Assuage your anxieties, gentle reader: This section tells you what you need to know about Google Voice and your Nexus One.

Understanding Google Voice

The best way to describe Google Voice is as a telephone communications tool on the Internet. It combines the power of the computer and the ubiquity of the Internet with a standard telephone number.

When you set up your Google Voice account, you're given a new phone number. This number doesn't replace the Nexus One number. No, it's your Google Voice phone number and it's unique to your account. You can also configure it to be used with any phone, not just with your Nexus One cellphone.

Here are a few nifty things you can do with Google Voice:

- ✓ Use it with a telephone to make free calls in the United States.
- ✓ Use it to place inexpensive international calls.
- ✓ Use it as a voice mail system.

Perhaps the most immediate and interesting thing you can do with Google Voice is to employ it as your Nexus One voice mail system. It's interesting because Google Voice does more than just record messages; it *transcribes* the messages into text. The text can then be forwarded to your Gmail account or sent to your phone as a text message. Not only that, you can review the voice mail message text on your Nexus One or on a computer.

The best news is that Google Voice is provided for you as a free service. All you need to do is set things up on the Nexus One, which is covered in the next section.

- ✓ You receive no phone calls at your Google Voice phone number. The number is simply used as a gateway into the services offered by Google Voice.
- ✓ When you call your Google Voice number, you can place outbound calls for free in the United States, check your voice mail, or adjust various settings. This trick works only when the phone you're using has its number registered with Google Voice.

- ✓ In addition to registering your Nexus One, you can register any of your phone numbers with Google Voice.
- ✓ To ensure that Google Voice works for your phone, have the option that shows your Caller ID set. Refer to Chapter 6 for information on showing Caller ID on the Nexus One.
- ✓ According to the Google Voice documentation, free calls are available to all 50 states and Canada.
- ✓ As this book goes to press, the Google Voice service is available only in the United States.
- ✓ This book doesn't cover all Google Voice features, such as conference calling or redirecting calls based on the incoming number or contact information. The services documented here cover only using Google Voice as a voice mail message system.

Setting up Google Voice

To configure the Nexus One to use Google Voice as your voice mail system, take a good long swig o' gin and follow these steps:



- 1. Touch the Launcher on the Home screen.**
- 2. Choose Settings to open the phone's settings information.**
- 3. Choose Call Settings.**
- 4. Choose Voicemail Service.**
- 5. Choose Google Voice.**

When you've set up Google Voice for the first time, you have some specific steps to follow. You can read along in this book or just follow the directions on the phone's touch screen and turn back here for additional information and advice.

If Google Voice has already been configured for your Nexus One, you're pretty much done.

- 6. Read about Google Voice (or not) and touch Next.**
- 7. Choose your Gmail (Google) account.**

You must have a Google account to use Google Voice. See Chapter 2 if you don't yet have a Google account.

- 8. Touch the Sign In button.**
- 9. Read what you have to do to complete the setup.**

You have four tasks:

- a. Verify your Nexus One phone number.
- b. Assign yourself a personal identification number (PIN) to access your voice mail. (If you already have a PIN, disregard the message you see.)
- c. Let Google Voice know whether you need to use it to make international calls.
- d. Configure your voice mail.

10. Touch the Next button.

11. Input your 4-digit voice mail PIN.

12. Configure your PIN, just to make sure you can remember it.

13. Touch the Next button.

Your Nexus One phone number is verified.

14. Touch the Next button.

Review the three options for using Google Voice to make international calls. I don't know anyone outside of the country, so I chose the third option, Ask every time.

15. Make a selection for international calling.

16. Touch Next so that the phone can access your current settings.

When your carrier doesn't support automatic voice mail, touch the Configure button to help set things up.

17. Touch the OK button, if necessary.

At this point, the Nexus One updates itself to use Google Voice for voice mail.

18. Continue working any additional steps.

And, you see some information about making international calls "cheaply" with Google Voice. Oh, there's always something to sell . . .

When you're done, the Voicemail Settings for the phone should show the text *Settings for Google Voice*. When you choose Voicemail Settings, you see a screen that displays the Google voice mail access number as the voice mail number. If you already have your own Google Voice number, that number is displayed. Then you also see a Sign Out item, below which you find your Google Gmail account listed, which means that Google Voice is set up on your phone for voice mail.

You're not done yet.

If you want to get your own Google Voice number, visit the Google Voice Web site to sign up for one.

The Google Voice Web page is <http://voice.google.com>.

Log in to Google Voice using your Google (Gmail) account. To get your own Google number, go to Settings, click the Get a Google Number link on the Phones tab, and follow the instructions.

That pretty much wraps it up for configuring the Nexus One to work with Google Voice. If you've done everything correctly, I urge you to consider picking up a copy of *Home Surgery For Dummies* and giving Chapter 4, "Emergency Appendectomy" a try. It's a lot easier.

Getting a Google Voice message



When Google Voice captures a missed call and takes a voice mail message for you, you see a Google Voice notification appear, as shown in the margin. To review voice mail, follow these steps:

- 1. Pull down the phone's notifications from the status bar.**

See Chapter 3 if you need help pulling down notifications on the Nexus One.

- 2. Choose Google Voice from the list.**

Beneath the Google Voice heading, you see the number of messages lurking in your voice mail inbox.

The Google Voice inbox, shown in Figure 7-2, looks similar to an e-mail inbox.

Your voice mail messages appear as text because Google Voice transcribes what was said and shows you the text. It also shows contact information, if the missed call has an entry in your Nexus One Contacts list.

- 3. Choose a message.**

You see the full message text displayed, which I confess is an amazing feat. Better than that, you can touch the Play button at the bottom of the screen to hear the voice mail message.



To call the person back, touch the Menu soft button and choose the Call option. Or, if the option is available, you can choose SMS to send the person a text message.

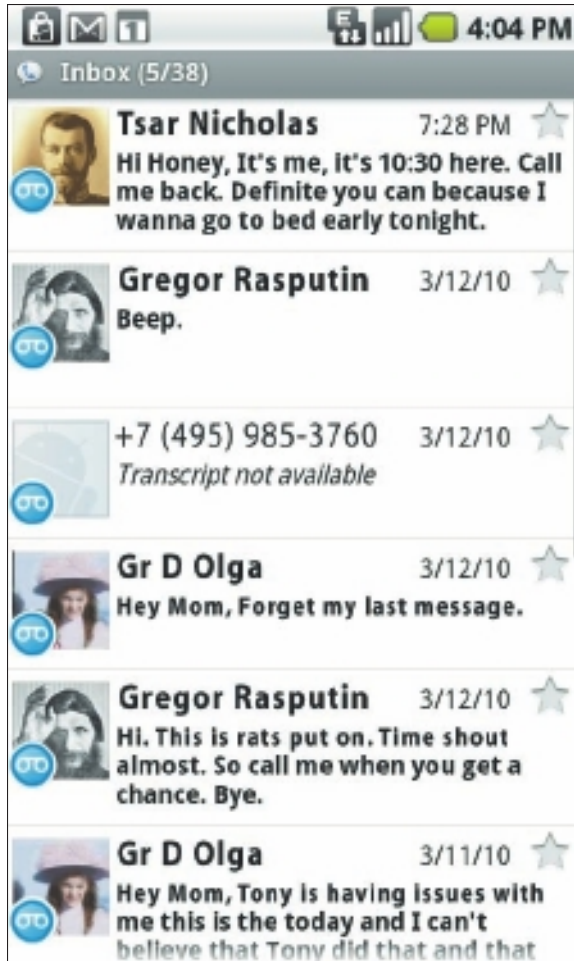


Figure 7-2: The Google Voice inbox.



Return to the main Google Voice inbox by touching the Back soft button.



- ✓ The text *Transcript Not Available* (refer to Figure 7-2) appears when either no message was left or the message was garbled or too brief.
- ✓ You can view your voice mail at any time using the Google Voice app. From the Launcher, choose the Voice app icon to open your Google Voice inbox.
- ✓ See Chapter 9 for more information on sending and receiving text messages (SMS).

Using Google Voice on the Internet

One of many good things about Google Voice as a voice mail system is that you don't need to use your phone to review messages. You can use any computer with Internet access. Simply visit <http://voice.google.com> and log in using your Google account ID. The Google Voice Web page looks like an e-mail inbox, as shown in Figure 7-3.

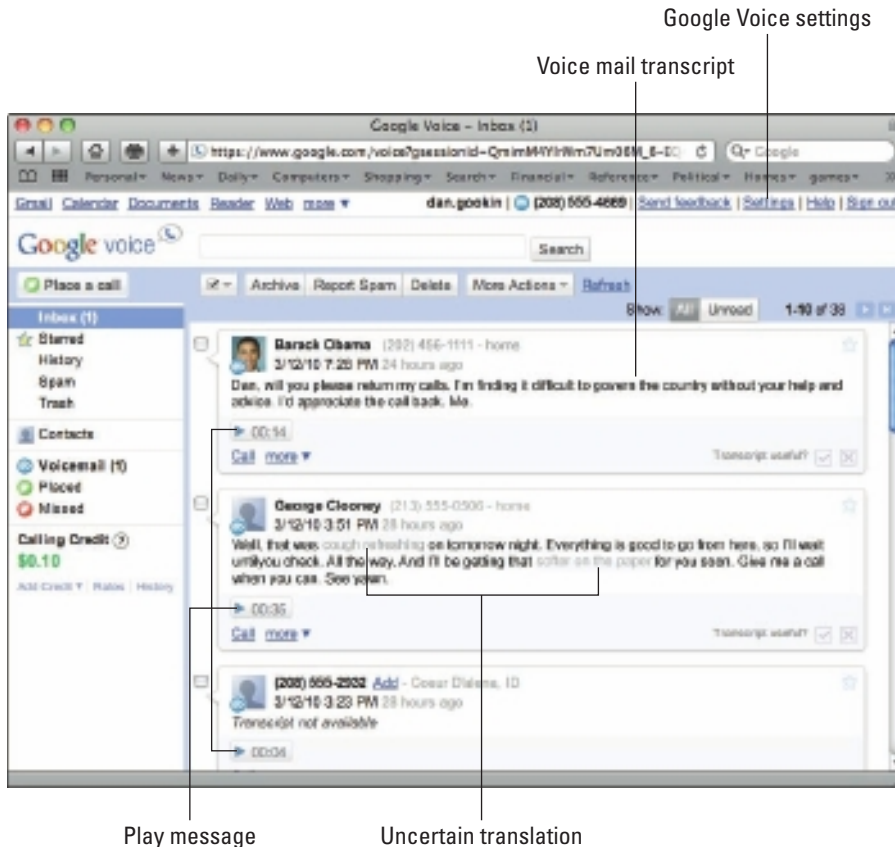


Figure 7-3: Google Voice on the Web.

On the Google Voice Web page, you can peruse your messages and listen to them by clicking the Play button (refer to Figure 7-3). You can even call someone back — though the computer directs the call to your Nexus One; you don't make the call using the computer.



- ✓ Though you can use the Nexus One Web browser to visit the Google Voice Web site, I don't recommend it. The Google Voice app on your phone is a better option for reviewing your messages. See the preceding section.
- ✓ Yes, you can use Google Voice on your computer to make phone calls, even to reply to people who have left you messages. Your computer doesn't make the call. Instead, Google Voice prompts you for a registered phone number (such as your Nexus One), which rings when the call is connected.
- ✓ You can register additional phones with Google Voice: Choose Settings and, on the Phones tab, choose the link Add Another Phone. You can then use that phone number with Google Voice and, if it's a cellphone, configure it to use Google Voice as its voice mail service. By setting up multiple phones that way, you receive all your voice mail in one place.

Friends, Enemies, Contacts

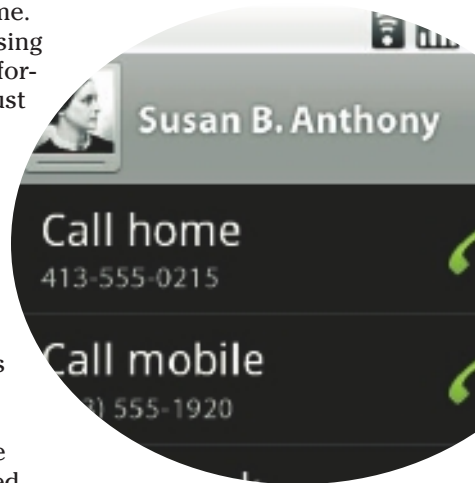
In This Chapter

- ▶ Using the Contacts list
- ▶ Finding contacts
- ▶ Creating new contacts
- ▶ Getting a contact from a map search
- ▶ Adding a bunch of contacts at one time
- ▶ Putting a picture on a contact
- ▶ Working with favorites
- ▶ Deleting contacts

Friends come and go, but enemies tend to accumulate. I forget which politician first explained that concept to me. Whether the people you know are dear to you or passing acquaintances, your Nexus One can dutifully store information about them in a contacts list. It's more than just an address book.

First of all, the contacts list contains phone numbers because — duh — the Nexus One is a phone. It's also an Internet device, so, second, the contacts list contains e-mail information. Third, the Nexus One is a heck of a navigator, so that home or office location can be used with the phone to help you locate people or businesses. All that usefulness starts with the contacts list.

Some applications may affect the contacts list. You're alerted to any such applications when they're installed on the phone. See Chapter 19 for more information on Android Marketplace.



The People You Know

The name of the program on your phone that stores information about people you know is *Contacts*. I would normally write a contact lens joke here, but nothing seems pithy enough, so I'll leave it at that.

Presenting the Contacts list



To peruse your phone's address book, touch the Contacts icon, found on the Home screen. You see a list of all contacts on your phone, organized alphabetically by first name, similar to the list shown in Figure 8-1. (If necessary, choose Contacts from the top of the screen, as shown in the figure.)

Scroll through the list by swiping with your finger. You see a thumb tab (refer to Figure 8-1), which you can use to quickly navigate up and down through your contacts. A large letter appears, telling you where you are in relation to the first names in the list.

To do anything with a contact, you first have to choose it: Touch a contact name and you see more information, as shown in Figure 8-2.

You can do a multitude of things with the contact after it's displayed, as shown in the figure:

Make a phone call. To call a contact, touch that person's Call entry, such as Call Home or Call Mobile. See Chapter 5.

Send a text message. Touch the Text Message icon (refer to Figure 8-2) to open the Messaging program and begin sending the contact a message. See Chapter 9 for information on text messaging with your Nexus One.

Compose an e-mail message. Touch the Email link to begin creating an e-mail message to the contact. When the contact has more than one e-mail address, you can choose to which one you want to send the message. Chapter 10 covers using e-mail on your phone.

Chat it up on Google Talk. If the contact has Google Talk set up, you know by the status icon at the top of the contact (refer to Figure 8-2). You can initiate a chat by choosing the Chat item in the contact's information. See Chapter 10 for more information on Google Talk.

Locate your contact on a map. When the contact has a home or business address, you can touch the little doohickey next to the address (refer to Figure 8-2) to summon the Maps application. Refer to Chapter 14 for all the fun stuff you can do with Maps.

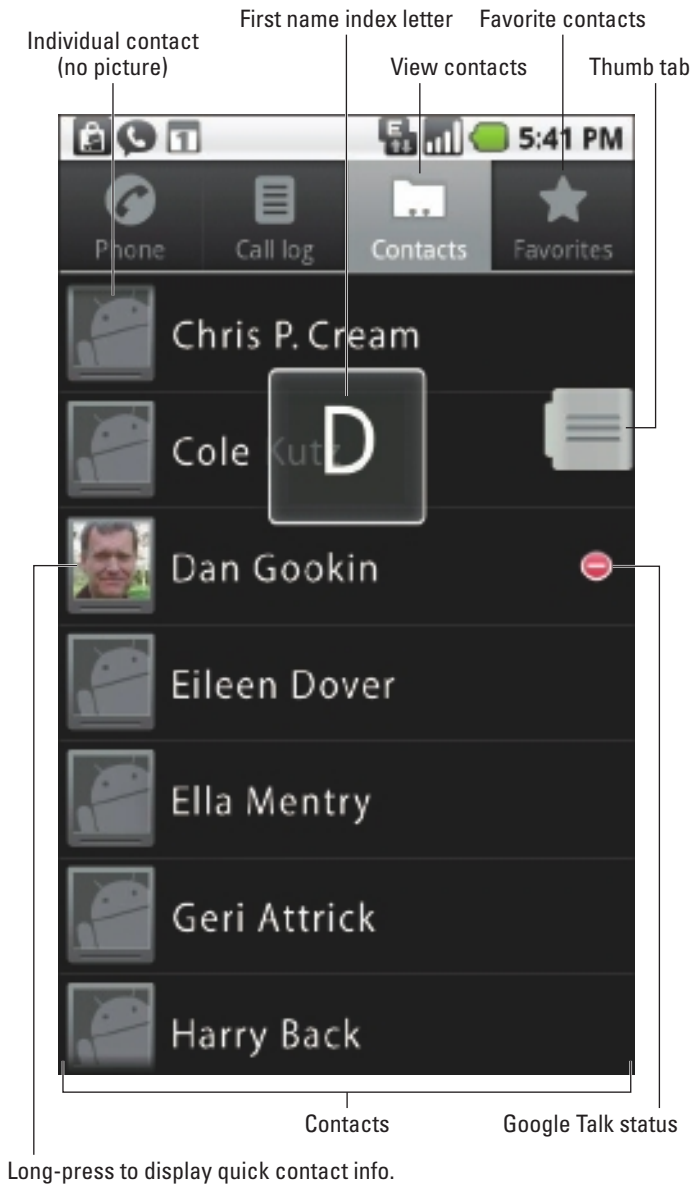


Figure 8-1: The Contacts list.

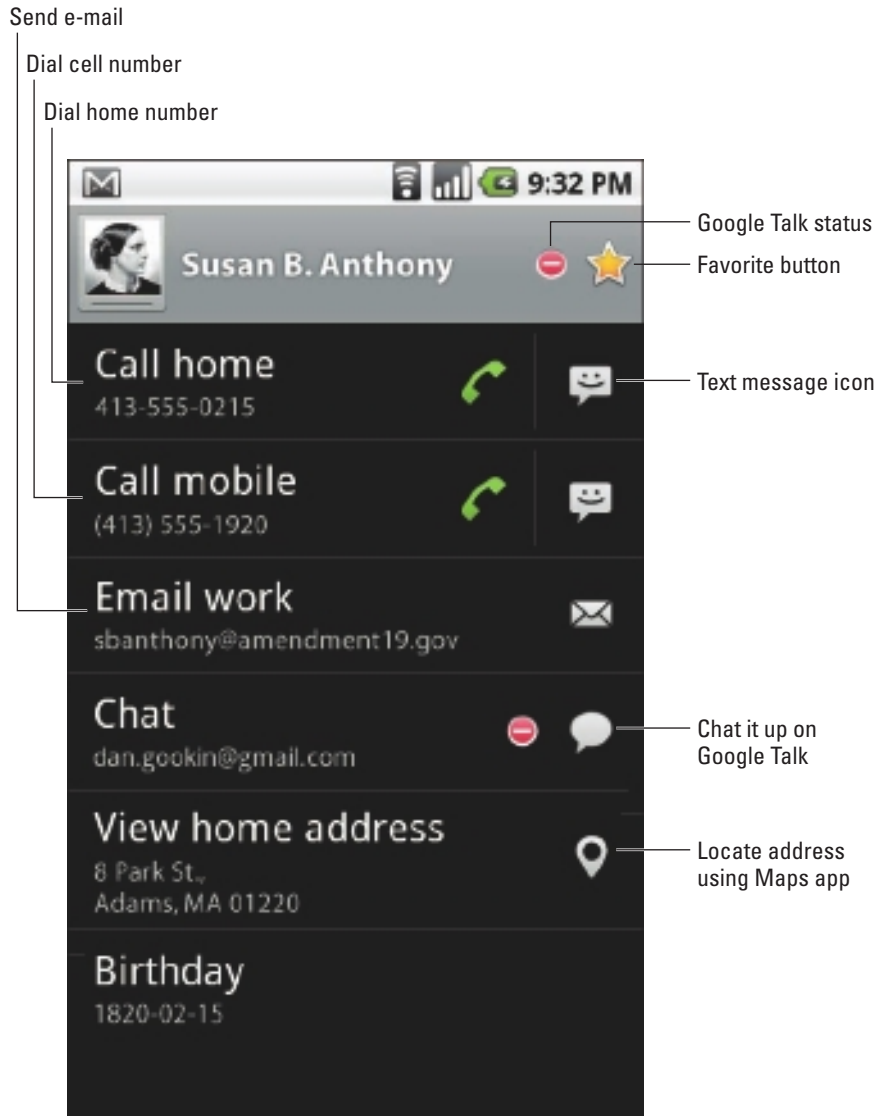


Figure 8-2: More detail for a contact.

Oh, and if birthday information is listed there, you can view it as well. Singing *Happy Birthday* is something you have to do on your own.

Searching contacts

You can have a massive number of contacts on your phone. For example, I have 414 on mine. I started out with just 80 contacts imported from Gmail; I added the rest as I phoned them or as I met people. The problem: It can take a while to wade through the list.



Rather than scroll through the contact list with angst-riddled desperation, you can press the Search soft button. A Search Contacts text box appears. Type a few letters from the contact's name and quickly you see the list of contacts narrowed to those few who match the letters you type. Touch a name from the search list to view that contact's information.



You can also voice-search for a contact. Touch the Microphone icon on the keyboard and then speak the contact's name when prompted to "speak now." The sounds you utter appear in the Search text box, which you can then use to search the list.

- ✓ See Chapter 5 for information on voice dial.
- ✓ The section "A New Contact Is Born" deals with adding new contacts. It's next.
- ✓ No, there's no correlation between the number of contacts you have and the number of bestest friends you have. None at all.

A New Contact Is Born

You have many ways to get contact information into your phone. You can build them all from scratch, but that's tedious. More likely, you collect contacts as you use your phone. Or, you can borrow contacts from your Gmail contacts. In no time, you'll have a phone full of contact information.

Making a new contact

You can make a new contact for your Google phone in many ways.

Add a contact from the call log

One of the quickest ways to build your contact list is to add people as they phone you — assuming that you've told them about your new phone number. After someone calls, you can use the call log to add the person to the Contacts list. Obey these steps:



1. From the Home screen, touch **Contacts**.

2. **Choose Call Log from the top of the Contacts list.**
3. **Choose the phone number you want to create a contact for.**
4. **Choose Add to Contacts.**
5. **Choose Create New Contact to make a new contact for that number.**

You can also choose to add that phone number to an existing contact; for example, when Janice finally discloses that second cellphone number she never told you about. In that case, locate Janice's (or whoever's) contact in the list and then skip to Step 7.

6. **Fill in the contact's information.**

Use the onscreen keyboard to fill in the blanks — as many blanks as you know about the caller: given name and family name, and if you know other information, fill it in as well. If you don't know any additional information, fine; just filling in the name helps clue you in to who's calling the next time that person calls (using that number).

The Next button on the onscreen keyboard is used to hop between the various text fields for the contact.



7. **Touch the Done button.**

You're done.

Create a new contact from scratch

Sometimes it's necessary to create a contact when you meet another human being in the real world. In that case, you have more information to input, and it starts like this:



1. **Touch Contacts on the Home screen to access the Contacts list.**
2. **If necessary, choose Contacts from the top of the Contacts list screen.**
3. **Press the Menu soft button.**
4. **Choose New Contact.**
5. **Fill in the information on the Google Contact screen as best you can.**

Touch each text field you plan to fill in — probably the Given Name, Family Name, and Phone Number fields, plus perhaps the Email field. That's all good, basic information for a contact.

Use the green plus-sign (+) button to add another item, such as a second phone number or e-mail address.

Touch the gray button to the left of the phone number or e-mail address to choose the location for that item, such as Home, Work, or Mobile.

Touch the More button at the bottom of the list to add *even more* information!

6. Touch the Done button to complete editing and add the new contact.

The new contact is automatically synced with your Google account on the Internet. That's one beauty of the Nexus One: You don't need to duplicate your efforts; the phone automatically updates all your Google account information on both the Nexus One and the Internet.

Make a contact in Gmail on the Internet

One of the easiest ways to build up new contacts is to use your Gmail Contacts list on the Internet. It's easy because you're using a computer with a real keyboard and mouse to help you input the information. That method generally works better than typing with your thumbs on the Nexus One.

To add a new Gmail contact, follow these steps:

1. **On a computer, browse to your Google Gmail account, at <http://gmail.google.com>.**
2. **Log in, if necessary.**
3. **Choose Contacts from the links listed on the left side of the page.**
4. **Click the New Contact button, shown in the margin.**
5. **Fill in the contact information on the screen.**



Use the Add links to add more than one e-mail address, phone number, address, or other information — for example, when a contact has both home and work addresses.

6. **Click the Save button to save the contact information.**

You can repeat Steps 4 through 6 to create additional contacts.

Because the Nexus One stays in sync with your Google account, any new contacts you create on the Internet are automatically updated on the Nexus One.

Find a new contact by using a Maps location

When you use the Maps application to locate a restaurant, an apothecary, or a dirty book store, you can quickly create a contact for that location. Here's how:

1. **After searching for your location, touch the cartoon bubble that appears on the map.**

For example, in Figure 8-3, the Syringa Japanese & Sushi Bar has been found.



Figure 8-3: A business has been located.

See Chapter 14 for detailed information on how to search for a location using the Maps application.

- 2. Scroll to the bottom of the information summary for the business and choose the item Add As a Contact.**

The information from the Maps application is copied into the proper fields for the contact, including the address and phone number and other information (if available).

3. Touch the Done button.

The new contact is created.

Importing a boatload of contacts

Odds are probably good that you have a bunch of contacts already created, on a different phone, from your computer's e-mail program, or perhaps even on Gmail. If so, you can quickly import all that work into your Nexus One.



Your phone has already imported all your Gmail contacts, which happened when you first configured your Google account on the Nexus One. Any additional accounts you create on a computer for Gmail are automatically synced with your phone. There's nothing else you need to do.

Import addresses from a SIM card

Because the *SIM card*, which holds the phone's digital identity, can also be used to store a smattering of names and contact information, you can import that information into the Nexus One by installing the SIM card and following these steps:



1. Summon the Contacts list.

Touch the Contacts icon on the Home screen and ensure that Contacts is chosen from the top of the Contact List screen.



2. Press the Menu soft button.

3. Choose Import/Export.

4. Choose Import from SIM Card.

5. Optionally, choose an account to import the contacts to.

A list of various types of contacts available on the SIM card appears.



6. Press the Menu soft button.

7. Choose Import All.

All the contacts are imported and added to your contact list.

See Chapter 1 for information on adding or removing the SIM card.

Grab contacts from the MicroSD card

You can use the MicroSD card to import contacts created on your computer, such as from your e-mail program, an address book program, or any software that lets you collect and use names and addresses and other information.

The key to importing contacts from a computer is to save the contact information in the *vCard* format. The software you're using should have an option that lets you export the contacts as vCards. If so, you can follow these steps to get that information into your Nexus One:

1. Copy the vCard information from your computer to the Nexus One.

See Chapter 13 for information on how to make the transfer between your computer and the MicroSD card in your phone.

2. Open the Contacts list.

Choose Contacts on the Home page and ensure that the list of contacts is shown, as described in the preceding section.



3. Press the Menu soft button.

4. Choose Import/Export.

5. Choose Import from SD card.

The Nexus One tells you that its searching for vCard info and the contacts are imported.

The Nexus doesn't presently recognize the Windows-contact file format; only vCard files, which have the filename extension `.vcf`, can be imported using the steps in this section. Windows contact files are kept in the Contacts folder, used by Windows 7 and Windows Vista.



If you can't export your e-mail program's contacts into vCard format, try to export them into whatever format they export to. You might be able to import that non-vCard file into your Gmail Contacts list instead. After contacts are imported into Gmail, they're synced automatically with the Nexus One.



The vCard file format is used to store contact information, like a digital business card. The format is most commonly attached to e-mail messages, and most e-mail programs can import or export contact information in the vCard format.

Editing a contact

When the situation changes for a contact, or perhaps your thumbs were a bit too big when you created the contact while riding a bus during an earthquake, you can edit the contact information. Aside from just editing existing information or adding new items, you can also do a smattering of interesting things, as covered in this section.

- ✓ See Chapter 6 for information on configuring a contact so that all their incoming calls go to voice mail.
- ✓ Also refer to Chapter 6 to see how to set a contact's ringtone.
- ✓ Contact information can come from multiple sources, so editing information for a contact on your phone doesn't change the original source. That is, unless the source is your Gmail Contacts list, in which case the Nexus One synchronizes your edits on the phone with the Contacts list on the Internet and vice versa.

Make basic changes

To make minor touch-ups on any contact, start by locating and displaying the contact's information. Press the Menu soft button and choose Edit Contact. You can then add any new information by touching a field and typing on the onscreen keyboard. You can edit information as well: Touch the field to edit and change whatever you want.

Chapter 4 contains information on how to edit text on the Nexus One.

When you're done editing, touch the Done button.

Add a picture to a contact

It's so much nicer to have a contact with a pretty picture instead of that Android icon. Well, unless your contact is the Android himself.

To add a picture to a contact, you should already have the picture stored on the phone. You can transfer the picture from a computer (covered in Chapter 13) or snap a shot with the phone anytime you see the contact or a person or an object that resembles the contact.

After the contact's photo, or any other suitable image, is stored on the phone, follow these steps to update the contact's information:

- 
- 1. Locate and display the contact's information.**
 - 2. Press the Menu soft button.**
 - 3. Choose Edit Contact.**
 - 4. Touch the blank picture icon.**

The Nexus One photo gallery is displayed. It lists all photos and videos stored on your phone.

5. Choose Select Photo From Gallery.

Or, if the contact is right there in front of you, choose the Take Picture item and snap a picture of them. See Chapter 15 for information on using the Nexus One as a camera.

6. Browse the Gallery for a suitable image.**7. Touch the image you want to use for the contact.****8. Select the size and portion of the image you want to use for the contact.**

Use Figure 8-4 as your guide. You can choose which portion of the image to use by moving the cropping box, and you can resize the cropping box to select more or less of the image.

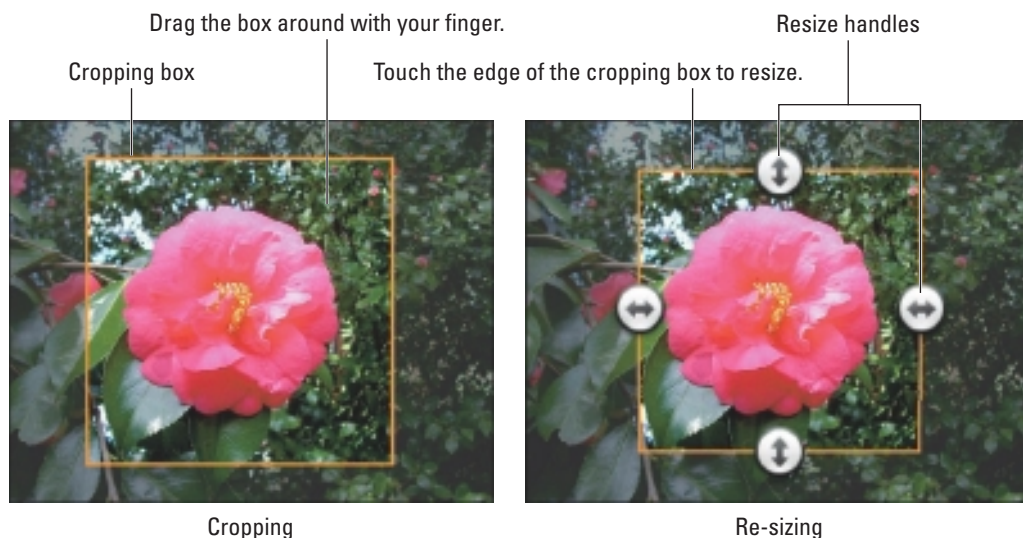


Figure 8-4: Choosing a contact's image.

9. Touch Save to assign the image to the contact.**10. Touch Done to complete editing the contact.**

The image is now assigned, and it appears whenever you phone the contact or the contact phones you (also in Google Talk).



You can add pictures to contacts on your Google account using any computer. Just visit your Gmail Contacts list to edit a contact. You can then add to that contact any picture stored on your computer. The picture eventually gets synced with the same contact on your Nexus One.

To change an existing photograph, follow Steps 1 through 4 in this section but choose Change Icon when you see the Contact Icon menu.

Set the default phone number and e-mail address

When a contact has multiple phone numbers or e-mail addresses, you can choose which one becomes the *default*, the number or address that's used by the Quick Contact feature to let you easily phone the contact or send a message. Here's how to set a contact's default phone number or e-mail address:

- 1. Display the contact's information.**
- 2. Long-press the phone number you want to use as the main number.**
Touch and hold the phone number until the Options menu pops up.
- 3. Choose Make Default Number.**
The phone number is appended with a tiny white check mark.
- 4. Long-press the e-mail address you want to use as the contact's primary e-mail contact.**
- 5. Choose Make Default Email.**

As with the phone number, the e-mail address entry grows a tiny white check mark.

See Chapter 5 for details about Quick Contact information.

Make a favorite

A favorite contact is someone you stay in touch with most often. It doesn't have to be someone you like — just someone that you (perhaps unfortunately) phone often.

When you touch the Favorites button in the contact list (refer to Figure 8-1), you see a list of favorites. The top part of the list shows contacts you've flagged as favorites. The bottom part of the list displays the number you frequently call.

To add a contact to the Favorites list, display the contact's information and touch the Favorite button (the star) in the contact's upper right corner (refer to Figure 8-2). When the star is gold, as shown in the figure, the contact is one of your favorites.

To remove a favorite, touch the contact's star until it loses its color. Removing a favorite doesn't delete the contact, but removes it from the Favorites list.



Occasionally peruse the names in the bottom part of the Favorites list (the frequent callers), and consider promoting some of them to favorites.

Sharing a contact

You know Bill? I know Bill, too! But you don't have his contact information? Allow me to share that with you. Here's what I do:



1. **Summon the contact you want to share from your Nexus One Contacts list.**

2. **Press the Menu soft button.**

3. **Choose Share.**

4. **If presented with the Share Contact With menu, choose a method to share the contact, such as Gmail.**

The Nexus One e-mail program starts. The message you create contains the contact's information.

5. **Fill in the recipient's address.**

As you type the address, matches from your Contacts list are displayed. Choose a contact from the list so that you don't have to type the entire e-mail address.

6. **Optionally, type a subject.**

7. **Touch the Send button.**

In a few Internet moments, the e-mail message is received. The message contains an attachment, which is the contact's vCard info. The recipient can then import that card or do whatever with it.

Removing a contact

Every so often, consider reviewing your phone's contacts. Purge those folks whom you no longer recognize or you've forgotten. It's simple:



1. **Locate the contact in your Contacts list and display the contact's information.**

2. **Press the Menu soft button.**

3. **Choose Delete Contact.**

4. **Touch OK to remove the contact from your phone.**



Because the contact list is synchronized with your Gmail contacts for your Google account, the contact is also removed there.

Part III

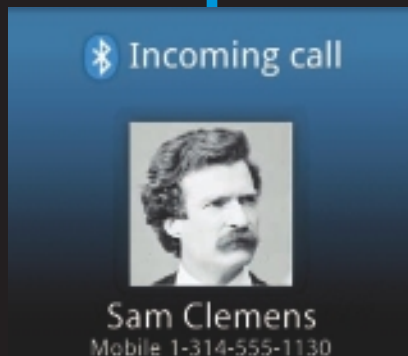
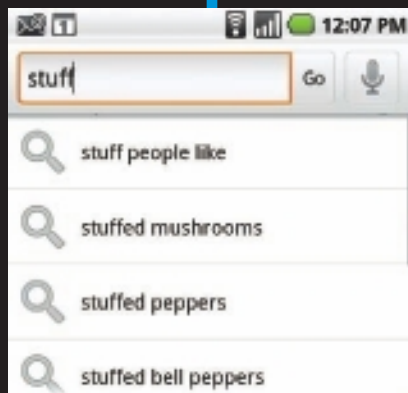
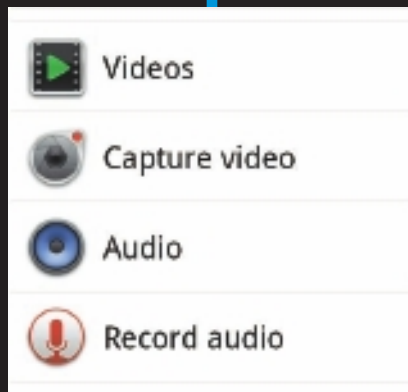
Other Forms of Communication



In this part . . .

In 1844, this official message was sent to open the first telegraph line: “What hath God wrought.” In 1876, Alexander Graham Bell said, “Mr. Watson, come here, I want to see you” over his telephone invention. And in 1973, the first e-mail message was sent between two computer scientists, the first asking the second whether he was interested in purchasing some low-cost Viagra. Communications has come a long way.

You can employ your Nexus One in a variety of ways to send messages using multiple methods. The most obvious way is the phone. And though the Nexus One lacks a telegraph feature, you can use it to send e-mail as well as other forms of communications far and wide, obvious or not, as covered in this part of the book.



When Your Thumbs Do the Talking

In This Chapter

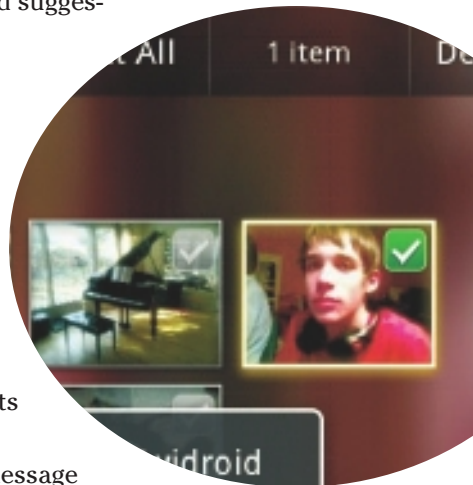
- ▶ Creating a text message
- ▶ Getting a text message
- ▶ Texting pictures, videos, and media items
- ▶ Managing your text messages

Texting is an activity that doesn't have to be explained to anyone under the age of 25. So I'll start off by assuming that you're not some teenager who spends most of your time looking at a cellphone and typing with your thumbs. The thing the teenager knows is that sending someone a short text message is kind of fun and easy — and unobtrusive. Then again, you don't have to let texting consume your entire life. When you need to, or if you're new to the idea, consider mulling through the tips and suggestions offered in this chapter.

Message for You!

The common term for using a cellphone to send a text message to another cellphone is *texting*. I prefer to say it as “sending a text message.” The program that handles this job on the Nexus One is Messaging.

- ✓ Some Android applications can affect messaging. You're alerted to whether the program affects messaging before it's installed. See Chapter 19.
- ✓ Your cellular service plan may charge you per message for each text message you send. Some plans feature a given number of free messages per month. Other plans, favored by teenagers (or their parents) feature unlimited texting.
- ✓ The nerdy term for texting is *SMS*, which stands for Short Message Service.



Composing a new text message to a contact

Because most cellphones sport a text messaging feature, you can send a text message to just about any mobile number. It works like this:



Contacts



1. **Open the Contacts icon on the Home screen.**
2. **Choose a contact, someone to whom you want to send a text message.**

You can choose a contact from the Contacts list or your Favorites.

3. **Touch the Message icon next to the contact's mobile number.**

A message composition window appears, which also tracks your text conversation, similar to the one shown in Figure 9-1.

Touch the text field to summon the onscreen keyboard.

4. **Type the message text.**

Be brief. A text message has a 160-character limit. See the later sidebar “Common Text Message Shortcuts” for some common and useful text message shortcuts and acronyms.

5. **Touch the Send button.**

The message is sent instantly. Whether the contact replies instantly depends. If the person replies, you see the message displayed (refer to Figure 9-1).

6. **Read the reply.**

7. **Repeat Steps 4 through 6 as needed — or eternally, whichever comes first.**

There's no need to continually look at the phone, waiting for a text message. Whenever your contact chooses to reply, you see the message recorded as part of an ongoing conversation. See the later section “Receiving a text message.”



- ✓ You can send text messages only to cellphones. Grandma doesn't receive text messages on her landline that she's had since the 1960s.
- ✓ See Chapter 4 for information on using the onscreen keyboard.
- ✓ You can press and hold the :-) button on the onscreen keyboard to see a whole range of smiles and other *emoticons* (symbols) you can instantly insert into your messages.
- ✓ When a problem occurs while sending a message, you see a Problem icon appear as a notification. Pull down the notifications to see more information; see Chapter 3 for details on reviewing notifications.



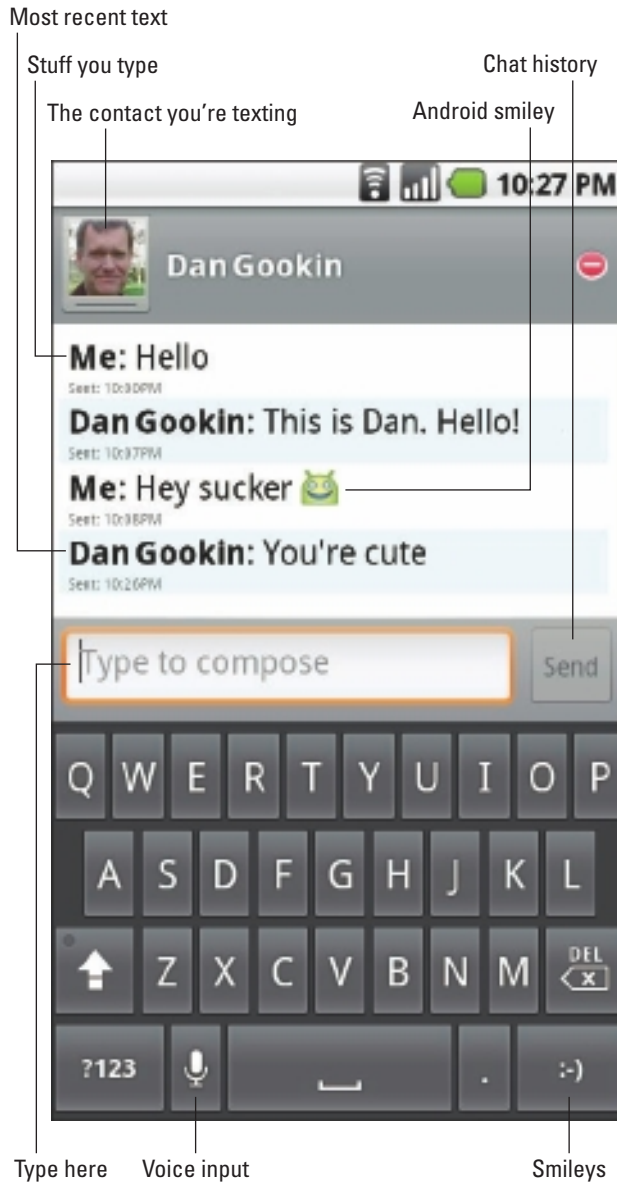


Figure 9-1: Typing a text message.



- ✓ The Android character (refer to Figure 9-1) appears in your message to represent an emoticon. The character also appears on other Android phones, but non-Android cellphones see the plain characters, not the Android character.
- ✓ Review the available Android emoticons by pressing the Menu soft button and choosing Insert Smiley.
- ✓ You can also dictate text messages by clicking the Microphone button on the keyboard. See Chapter 4 for more information on voice input.
- ✓ Add a subject to your message by touching the Menu soft button and choosing Add Subject.
- ✓ Phone numbers and e-mail addresses sent in text messages become links. You can touch a link to call that number or visit the Web page.
- ✓ You cannot put the Enter key (which creates a new line) in the middle of a text message. In other words, a text message cannot appear with a break between two lines. To create a break between two messages, send two messages.
- ✓ Press the Back soft button to dismiss the onscreen keyboard, which can be useful when the keyboard obscures all or part of a message.
- ✓ You can edit a contact's information to show whether a phone number is a mobile, home, or work number or another type of number. By flagging a number as a mobile number, you can more easily find which numbers you can text to when perusing your contacts. See Chapter 8 for more information on editing a contact.
- ✓ Continue a conversation at any time: Open the Messaging application on the Home screen. Peruse the list of existing conversations, and touch one to review what's been said or to pick up the conversation.
- ✓ Text messaging isn't a substitution for having an online, real time chat with several people. Instead, I recommend that you look into using Google Talk. See the later sidebar "Chat It Up With Google Talk."
- ✓ Do not text and drive. Do not text and drive. Do not text and drive.

Sending a text message when you know only the phone number

I recommend that you create a contact for anyone you plan to message. It just saves time to have the contact there, with (at minimum) a name and phone number. When you don't want to first create a contact, send any cell-phone a text message by following these steps:

Common text-message abbreviations

Texting isn't about proper English. Indeed, many abbreviations and shortcuts used in texting are slowly becoming part of the English language, such as BRB and LOL.

The weird news is that these acronyms weren't invented by teenagers. Sure, the kids use them,

but the acronyms find their roots in the Internet chat rooms of yesteryear. Regardless of the source, you might find acronyms handy for typing things quickly. Or, maybe you can use the following list for deciphering the meaning of an acronym, which can be typed in either upper- or lowercase.

2	To, also	K	Okay	TC	Take care
411	Information	L8R	Later	THX	Thanks
BRB	Be right back	LMAO	Laughing my [rear] off	TIA	Thanks in advance
BTW	By the way	LMK	Let me know	TMI	Too much information
CYA	See you (or see ya)	LOL	Laugh out loud	TTFN	Ta-ta for now (goodbye)
FWIW	For what it's worth	NC	No comment	TTYL	Talk to you later
FYI	For your information	NP	No problem	U2	You, too
GB	Goodbye	OMG	Oh my goodness!	UR	Your, you are
GJ	Good job	PIR	People in room (watching)	VM	Voice mail
GR8	Great	POS	Person over shoulder (watching)	W8	Wait
GTG	Got to go	QT	Cutie	XOXO	Hugs and kisses
HOAS	Hold on a second	ROFL	Rolling on the floor laughing	Y	Why?
IC	I see	SOS	Someone over shoulder (watching)	YW	You're welcome
IDK	I don't know			ZZZ	Sleeping
IMO	In my opinion				
JK	Just kidding				



1. Open the Messaging icon on the Home screen.

You see a list of current conversations (if any), organized by contact name or phone number.

2. Choose New Message, found at the top of the touch screen.

3. Input a cellphone number in the To field.

The onscreen keyboard automatically appears, though you have to touch the ?123 key to see the number keys.

When the number you type matches one or more existing contacts, you see those contacts displayed. Choose one to send a message to that person; otherwise, continue typing the phone number.

4. Touch the Next button.

It's found in the lower right corner of the onscreen keyboard.

5. Type your text message.**6. Touch the Send button to send the message.**

The message is sent instantly. You can wait for a reply, snooze the phone, or choose to talk with a real person face to face. Or, you can always get back to work.

Receiving a text message



When a new text message comes in, you see a notification appear on top of the Nexus One touch screen. The notification has some detail, which you might be able to catch if you're quick enough. Otherwise, you see the New Text Message icon appear, as shown in the margin.

To view the message, pull down the notifications, as described in Chapter 3. Touch the messaging notification and immediately that conversation appears.

Whether to send a text message or an e-mail?

The concept of sending a text message is similar to sending an e-mail message. Each communication method has advantages and disadvantages.

Text messages are short and quick. They're informal, more like a quick chat. Indeed, it's often the speed of reply that makes text messaging so useful. But, like e-mail, sending a text message doesn't guarantee a reply.

An e-mail message can be longer than a text message. You can receive e-mail on any computer or device that accesses the Internet. E-mail message attachments are handled better, and more consistently, than text message (MMS) media. Though e-mail isn't considered formal communication, not like a real letter or phone call, it ranks a bit higher in importance than text messaging.

Multimedia Messages

When a text message contains a bit of audio or video or a picture, it ceases becoming a mere text message and transforms into — *ta-da!* — a multimedia message. This type of message even has its own acronym, MMS, which supposedly stands for Multimedia Messaging Service.

- ✓ You can send pictures, video, and audio by using multimedia messaging.
- ✓ You don't need to run a separate program or do anything fancy to send media in a text message; the same Messaging program is used on the Nexus One for sending both text and media messages. Just follow the advice in this section.
- ✓ Not every mobile phone can receive MMS messages. Rather than receive the media, the recipient is directed to a Web page where it can be viewed online.

Composing a multimedia message

One of the easiest ways to send a multimedia message is to start with the source, such as a picture or video stored on your phone. You can then choose to share that media by using MMS. Heed these directions:

- 1. Locate the image or video you want to share in the Gallery.**

See Chapter 17 for more information on how the Nexus One Gallery works.

- 2. Long-press the image or video to select it.**

A green check mark appears on the image.

- 3. Choose Share.**

It's found at the bottom of the screen, as shown in Figure 9-2.

- 4. Choose Messaging from the pop-up menu.**

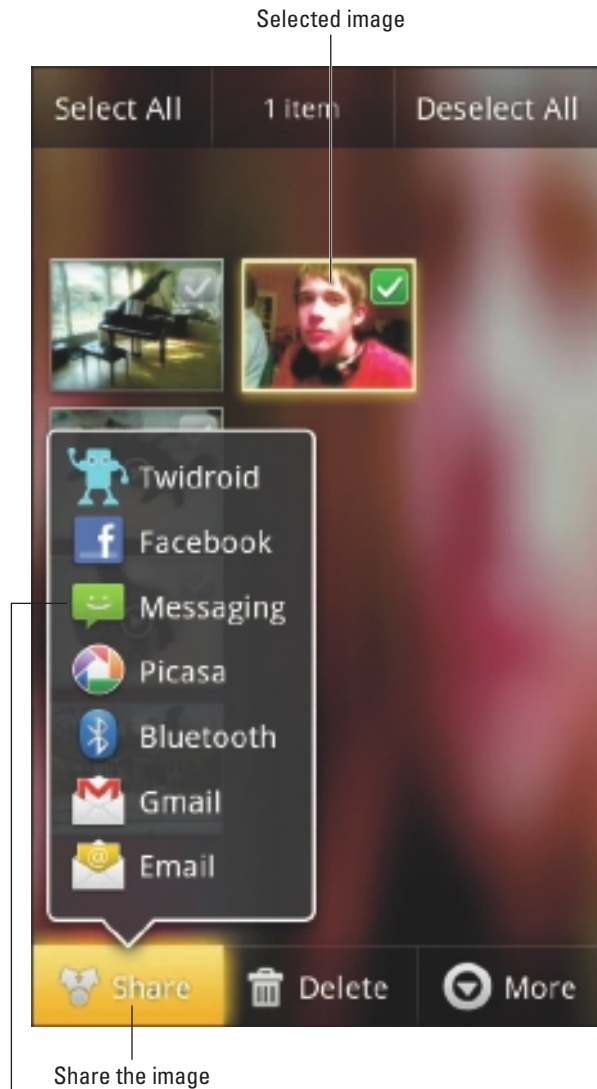
When the image or video is too large to send as a text message, you see a warning message. Dismiss the warning and try again with a smaller video.

- 5. Type a contact name or phone number in the To text field.**

You need to type only the first part of a contact name and then choose the proper contact from the list that appears.

- 6. Type a message in the Type to Compose box.**

- 7. Touch the Send button to send the multimedia message.**



Attach the image to a text message

Figure 9-2: Choosing an image from the Gallery.



Unlike sending a text message, the multimedia message takes some time to send. A little envelope icon with a timer on it appears while the message is being piped through cyberspace.

After the message is sent, you see a copy of the image or video in the message history.

- 
- ✓ You cannot share recorded audio or ringtones using this method. Instead, follow the directions in the next section.
 - ✓ As an alternative to long-pressing an image or a video, you can view the video and then press the Menu button. The Share command can then be chosen, just like in Step 3 in the preceding list.

Attaching multimedia to a message

You don't need to go hunting for multimedia to send in a message; you can attach media directly to any message or ongoing conversation. It works like this:

- 1. Compose a text message as you normally do.**

Refer to the directions earlier in this chapter, in the section “Composing a new text message to a contact.”

- 2. Press the Menu soft button.**

- 3. Choose Attach.**

A pop-up menu appears, shown in Figure 9-3 and listing various types of media items you can attach to a text message.

Here's a summary:

Pictures: Choose an image stored in the phone's Gallery.

Capture Picture: Take a picture right now and send it in a text message.

Videos: Choose a video you've taken with the phone and stored in the Gallery.

Capture Video: Record a video and then send it as media in a text message.

Audio: Attach one of the phone's standard ringtones.

Record Audio: Record an audio clip, such as your voice, and then send it.

Slideshow: Create a collection of photos to send together.

- 4. Choose a media attachment from the pop-up menu.**

What happens next depends on the attachment you've selected.

For the attachments Pictures, Video, and Audio, you choose from among media stored on your phone.

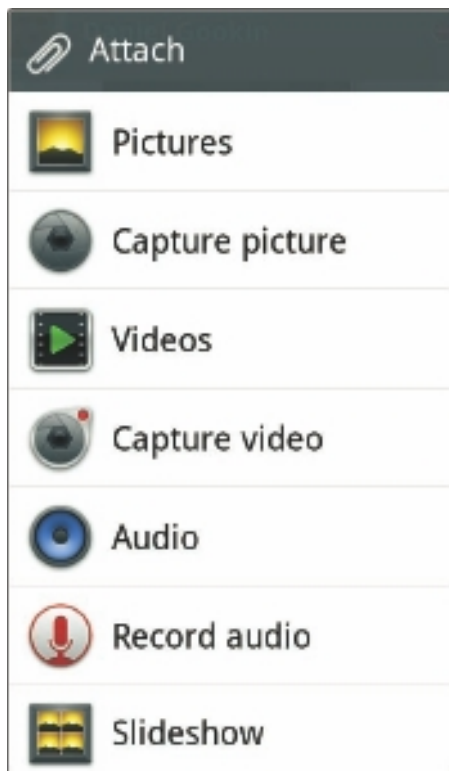


Figure 9-3: Various things to stick into a text message.

For Capture Picture, Capture Video, and Record Audio, you create the media and then send it.

The Slideshow option presents a second screen, where you collect pictures from the Gallery. Follow these substeps:

- A. Touch Slide 1 to create the first image in the slide show.
- B. Choose Add Picture to create the first image.
- C. Browse the Gallery to choose the slide show image.
- D. Add an optional comment to the image.
- E. Touch the Back soft button to return to the slide show creation screen.

F. Choose Add Slide to create a slot for Slide 2, and repeat these sub-steps to add additional images to the slide show.

G. Touch the Back soft button when you finish creating the slide show.

You can, optionally, compose a message to accompany the media attachment.

5. Touch the Send button to send your media text message.

In just a few, short, cellular moments, the receiving party will start enjoying your multimedia text message.



- ✓ The Audio clips you can attach are limited to the selection of ringtones that come with the Nexus One. The clips include none of your own ringtones or music.
- ✓ Not every phone is capable of receiving multimedia messages.
- ✓ The amount of media you can send is limited; try to keep your video and audio attachments brief.

Receiving a multimedia message

A multimedia attachment is sent to your Nexus One just like a text message, but you see a thumbnail preview of whatever media item was sent. You can touch the item to preview it or long-press to see a pop-up menu of options for dealing with the attachment.

Message Management

Managing text messages might be a topic of interest to people who do a lot of text messaging. Teenagers probably do the most text messaging, so managing their messages would be important to them. Or not. My guess is that teenagers probably won't read this book (a triumph of bravery over experience). Even so, this section covers a few things you can do to manage your text messages.

Deleting a conversation

It's weird, but I'm a stickler for deleting e-mail after I read it. Yet when it comes to text messages, I don't delete them. That might be because I get far more e-mail than I get text messages. Anyway, were I to delete a text message conversation, I would follow these exact steps:

1. Open the conversation you want to remove.

Choose the conversation from the main Messaging window.

2. Touch the Menu soft button.**3. Choose Delete Thread.**

You might have to touch the More button to see the Delete Thread item.

4. Touch the Delete button to confirm.

The conversation is gone.

If I wanted to delete every dang doodle conversation in the Messaging window, I'd follow these steps:

1. Touch the Menu soft button.**2. Choose Delete Threads.****3. Touch the Delete button to confirm.**

They're all gone.

If you just want to try out this trick, consider deleting an old text message sent to you by your cellular provider.

Controlling message settings

Many SMS and MMS options are on your Nexus One, worthy of perusing. Start by visiting the main text messaging screen and pressing the Menu soft button. Choose Settings and you see a screen where you can control all sorts of trivial text messaging tidbits. Here are my suggestions:

- ✓ Definitely keep a check mark by the option Delete Old Messages. That way, you don't have to futz with deleting message threads, as described in the preceding section.
- ✓ You can specify how many times you chat back and forth in a thread by choosing the option Text Message Limit. The value is set to 200 unless you touch the + or – buttons to change it. Set a higher value if you enjoy perusing older comments you've made or you need to keep them on the advice of your divorce attorney.
- ✓ Ensure that a check mark is by the item Notifications (low in the list). That way, the phone alerts you to pending text messages.
- ✓ You can use the Select Ringtone option to choose which noise the Nexus One blurs out when you get a new text message.
- ✓ The Vibrate option can also be set to have the phone jiggle itself when a new text message comes in. This option is recommended for the back row of Ms. Hanson's English class.

Chat it up with Google Talk

A way to chat with your friends by using the Nexus One is to use the Talk app. Running it connects you with Google Talk, another free Internet service that comes with your Google account.

Google Talk is tied closely with Gmail. It uses the same contacts, which means that all your phone contacts are also Google Talk contacts. Only people who have signed up for Google Talk are available for chatting; you see the Google Talk status icon appear by the contact name, which is shown in Figure 8-1 (refer to Chapter 8) and elsewhere throughout this book. When you see the status, you can choose the contact and touch the Chat option to chat — if the status is Available.

Chatting on Google Talk works just like sending a text message. The difference is that the person you're chatting with need not be on a phone. As long as they're near a computer and have their Gmail or iGoogle account open in a browser window, you can chat.

To set your Google Talk status, start the Talk app and, from the Friends list, touch the Status button in the top right part of the screen. Choose your status from the list that appears, or type a custom status.

New Google Talk messages appear using a notification icon. To view the message, pull down the notifications and choose Google Talk. You instantly see the conversation.

The Electronic Missive

In This Chapter

- ▶ Understanding e-mail on the Nexus One
- ▶ Receiving a new message
- ▶ Finding messages and e-mail text
- ▶ Creating and sending e-mail
- ▶ Working with e-mail attachments
- ▶ Configuring a new e-mail account
- ▶ Making an e-mail signature
- ▶ Using various e-mail options and settings

Handwritten letters were once beautiful things. I remember seeing letters my grandmother had saved from long ago. The writing was gorgeous, the content emotional. It was something done with care, filled with meaning. The stamp on the envelope made it official. Those were the days when mail was important, when it meant something.

In our digital age, haphazard, drunken e-mail has replaced the carefully crafted epistle. The message is brief and sloppy, but people tolerate the slop because e-mail is instantaneous, worldwide, and there are no more stamps! There's no more computer either, because your phone does e-mail.

As a Google phone, the Nexus One ties directly into your Google account and swiftly obtains your Gmail messages. You can read your mail, create new mail, and screw up your e-mail on your phone just as you can on your computer. Now letter-writing is not only instantaneous but convenient as well.



Mail Call!

Electronic mail is handled on your Nexus One by two apps: Gmail and Email.



The Gmail app hooks directly into the Gmail account connected with your Google account. In fact, they're exact echoes of each other: The Gmail you receive on your computer is also received on your phone.



You can also use the Email app on your phone to connect to non-Gmail electronic mail, such as the standard mail service provided by your ISP.

Regardless of the app, electronic mail on your phone works just like it does on your computer: You can receive mail, create new messages, forward e-mail, send a message to a group of contacts, and work with attachments, for example. As long as your phone has a data connection, e-mail works just peachy.



- ✓ You can run the Gmail or Email app by choosing the Launcher from the Home screen and then locating the app.
- ✓ You can easily add the Gmail or Email icon to the Home screen. See Chapter 21.
- ✓ Your Nexus One might already be set up to show the Gmail and Email apps on the first Home screen to the right of the main Home screen. See Chapter 3 for more information on viewing the various parts of the Home screen.
- ✓ A Gmail account was created for you when you signed up for a Google account. See Chapter 2 for more information about setting up a Google account.
- ✓ The Email program can be configured to handle multiple e-mail accounts, as discussed later in this chapter.
- ✓ Though you can use your phone's Web browser to visit the Gmail Web site, you should use the Gmail app to pick up your Gmail.
- ✓ If you forget your Gmail password, visit this Web address:
www.google.com/accounts/ForgotPasswd
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 13 for information on the Nexus One data connection.



You've Got Mail

The Nexus One works flawlessly with Gmail. In fact, if you already set up Gmail to be your main e-mail address, you'll enjoy having access to your messages all the time by using your phone.

Regular e-mail, handled by the Email program, must be set up before it can be used. See the later section "Configure E-Mail" for details. But after that quick and relatively painless setup process, you can receive e-mail on your phone just as you can on a desktop computer.

Getting a new message

You're alerted to the arrival of a new e-mail message in your phone by a notification icon. The icon differs between a new Gmail message and a new Email message.



For a new Gmail message, you see the New Gmail notification, shown in the margin, appear at the top of the touch screen.



For a new e-mail message, you see the New Email notification.

To deal with the new-message notification, drag down the notifications list and choose New Email. You're taken directly to your inbox to read the new message.

- ✓ See the later section "Configure E-Mail" to set up the phone's behavior when you get a new e-mail message.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 3 for information on Nexus One notifications and how to peruse them.

Checking the inbox

To peruse the mail you've received, start your e-mail program — Gmail for your Google mail or Email for other mail you have configured to work with the Nexus One — and access your electronic inbox.



To check your Gmail inbox, start the Gmail app. It can be found in the Launcher, or it might dwell on the Home screen, just to the right of the main screen. The first screen that opens in Gmail should be the inbox, similar to the one shown in Figure 10-1.

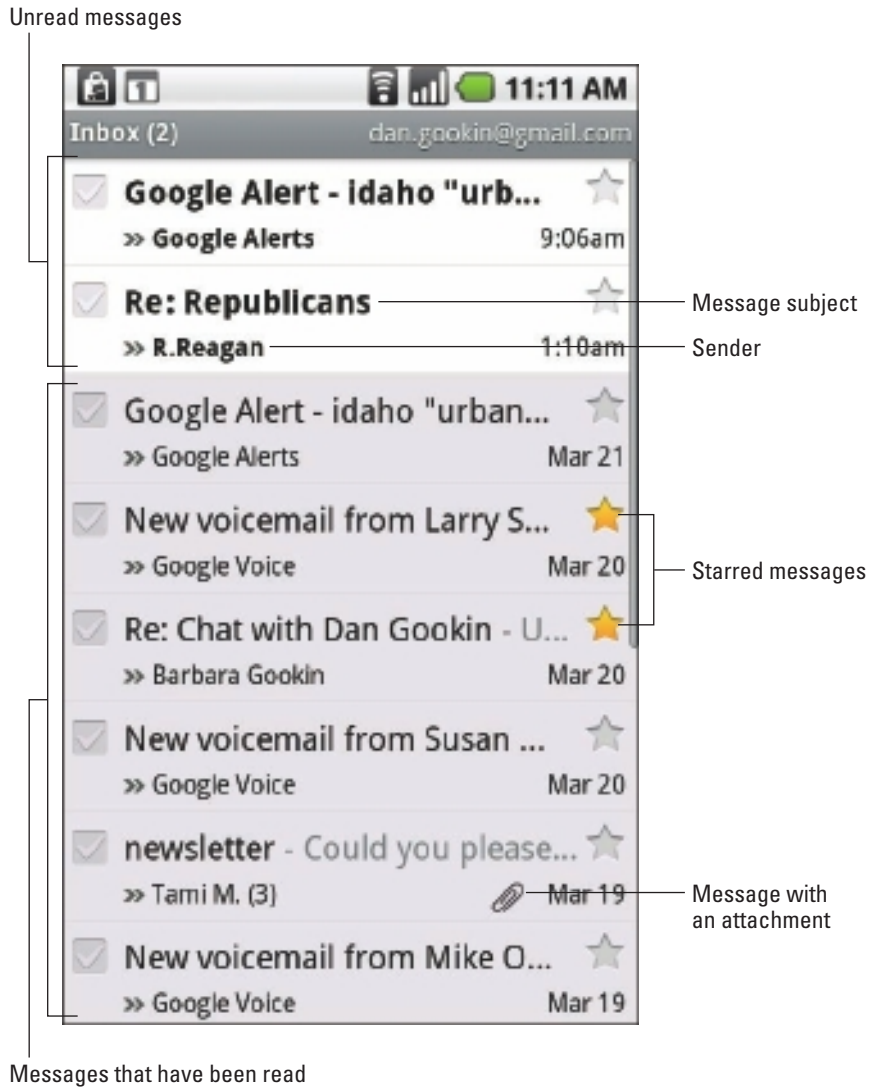


Figure 10-1: The Gmail inbox.



To see the inbox screen when you're reading a message, touch the Menu soft button and choose the command Back to Inbox.

To check your Email inbox, open the Email app on the Home screen or dig it up in the Launcher. You're taken to the inbox, lovingly depicted in Figure 10-2. Any pending messages appear in the window, as shown in the figure.

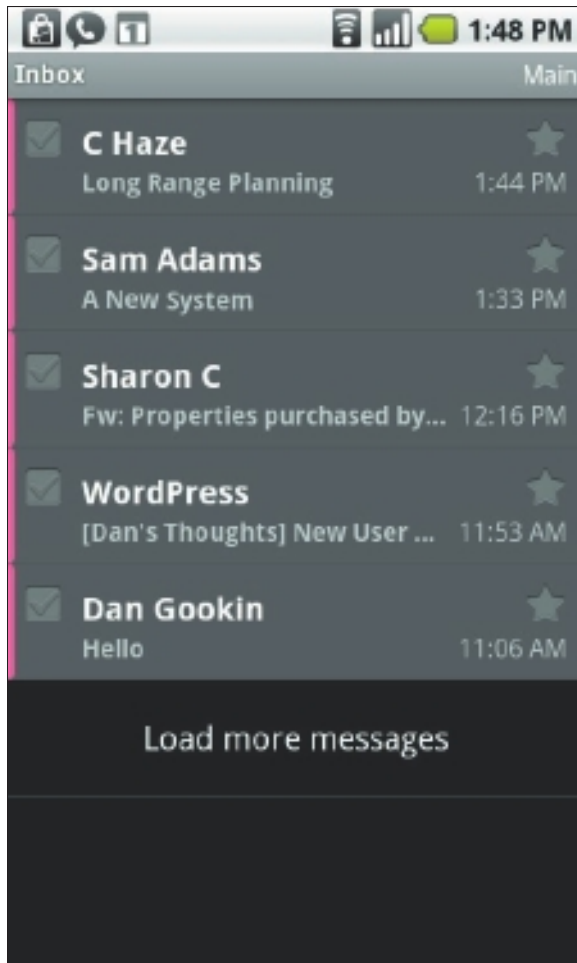


Figure 10-2: The regular Email inbox.

To check for new messages, you can either touch the Load More Messages command in the inbox (refer to Figure 10-2) or press the Menu soft button and choose the Refresh command, which updates your mail folders.

- ✓ You can adjust how frequently the Email program checks for new messages or whether it even checks for messages. See the section “Setting e-mail options,” later in this chapter.
- ✓ You have mailboxes other than the inbox for regular e-mail. To visit them, touch the Menu soft button and choose the command Folders. You see the standard folders Inbox, Outbox, Drafts, and Sent.



- ✓ Gmail is organized using *labels*, not folders. To see your Gmail labels, touch the Menu soft button and choose View Labels.
- ✓ When you touch Load More Messages and no more messages show up, you can assume that you have no more messages.
- ✓ E-mail messages that appear on your Nexus One aren't deleted from the mail server. That way, you can read the same e-mail messages later using a computer. Most computer e-mail programs, however, are configured to delete messages from the mail server. When they do, those messages no longer show up on the Nexus One.

Reading an e-mail message

As mail comes in, you can read it by choosing the new e-mail notification, described earlier in this chapter. You can also choose new e-mail by viewing the inbox. The message appears on the screen, as shown in Figure 10-3. You read and work with the message pretty much the same as in any e-mail program you've used.



In Gmail, to read other messages in the inbox, touch the Older button, as shown in the figure. To read newer messages in the inbox, press the Menu soft button and choose the Newer command.

In the Email program, you browse the messages in your inbox by touching the < or > symbols found at the top of the message, as shown in Figure 10-4.

Here are some things you can do with an e-mail message you read on your Nexus One:

- ✓ To reply to the message, touch the Reply button. Type or dictate your message reply; refer to Chapter 4 for information on typing and talking, if you're unfamiliar with either task.
- ✓ Touch the Send button to send the message.
- ✓ Touch Save As Draft to work on it and send it later.
- ✓ Touch Discard to cancel your missive.
- ✓ Touch the Reply to All or Reply All button to send a response to everyone in the original message's To and CC fields.
- ✓ If you don't want to include the original message text, touch the gray X button by the words *Quoted Text* in the Email message. (To see the X button, you may have to press the Back soft button to temporarily dismiss the onscreen keyboard.) Touching the X button removes the quoted text from the message.



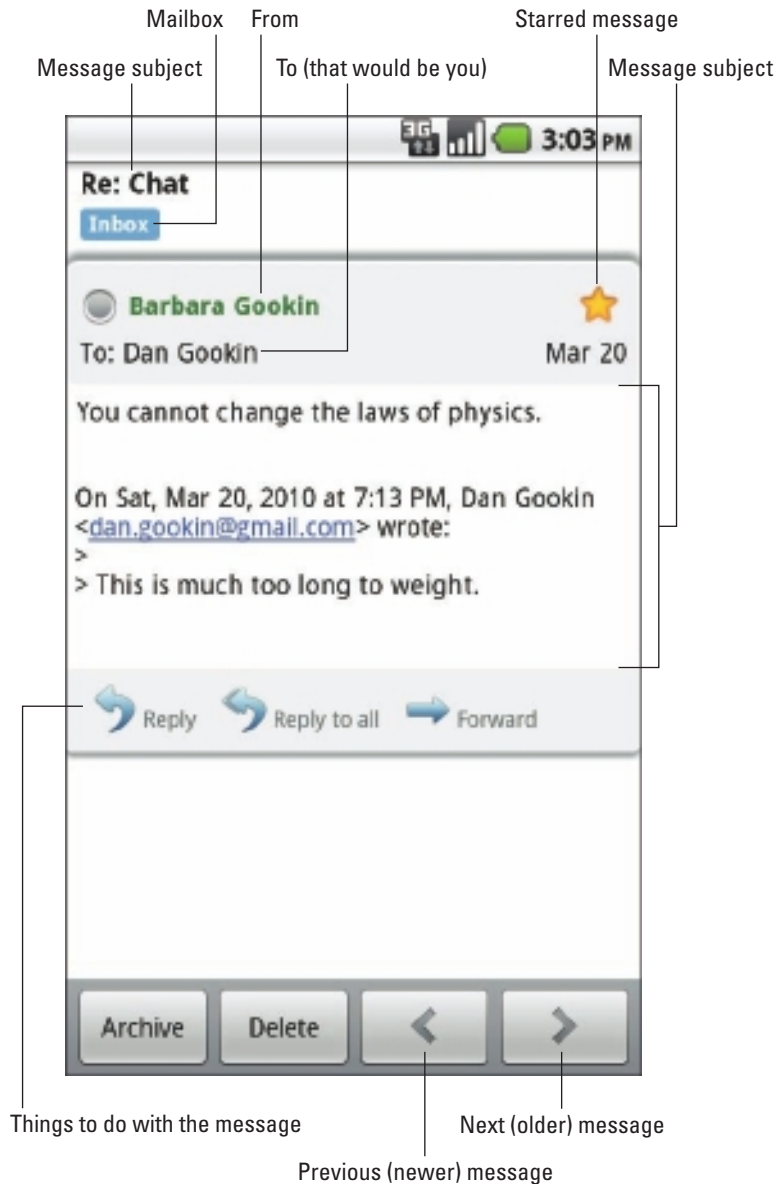


Figure 10-3: Reading a Gmail message on your phone.

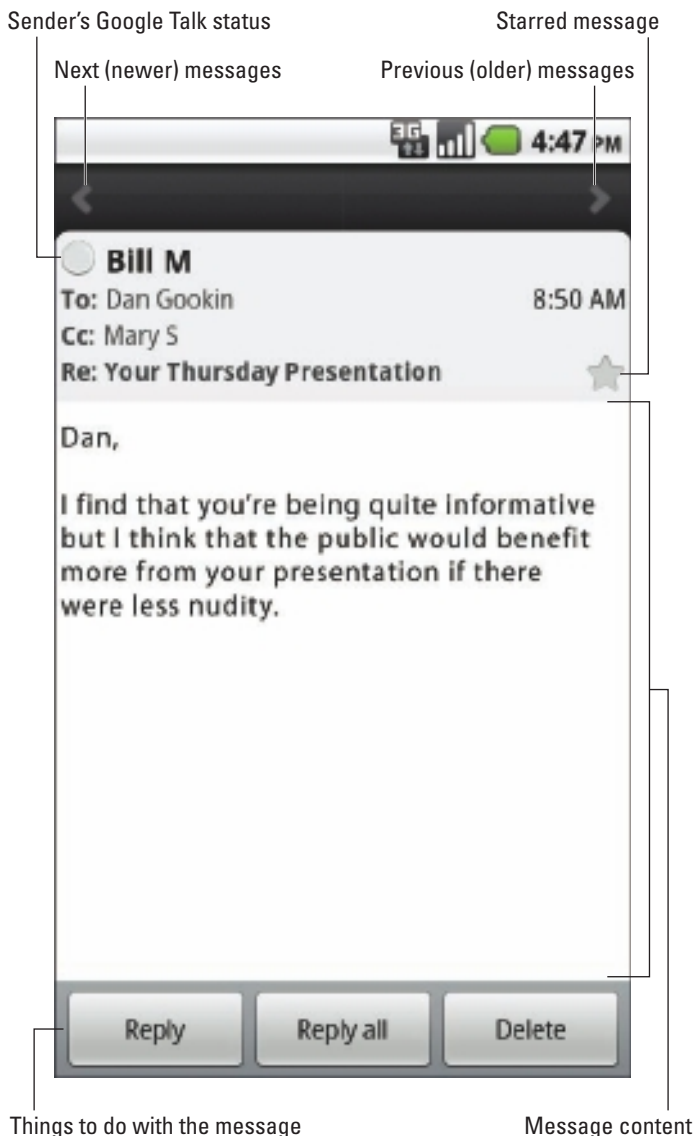


Figure 10-4: Reading an e-mail message in the Email program.



- ✓ Use Reply All only when everyone else *must* get a copy of your reply. Because most people find endless Reply All e-mail threads annoying, use the Reply All option judiciously.



- ✓ To forward the message, touch the Forward button in Gmail. In the Email program, press the Menu soft button and choose the Forward command.
- ✓ Refer to the later section “Composing a new electronic message” for information on (surprisingly) composing a new electronic message, which also applies when you forward or reply to an e-mail.
- ✓ When you touch the Star button or icon in a message, you’re flagging that message. Those starred messages can be viewed or searched separately, making them easier to locate in the future.
- ✓ To delete a message, touch the Delete button. I see no reason to delete messages in the Email program, because they’re deleted when your computer’s e-mail program picks them up later.
- ✓ I find it easier to delete (and manage) Gmail using a computer.

Searching e-mail

You can use the Search soft button to search e-mail on your phone just like you can search for anything else. The key is to use the Search soft button while you’re in your e-mail program. Here’s how:



1. **Go to the mailbox you want to search, such as the inbox in Gmail or the Email program.**
2. **Touch the Search soft button.**
3. **Type the text to find.**

You can also dictate the text by first pressing the Microphone button and then speaking whatever you’re trying to find.



4. **Touch the Search button to begin the search.**
Peruse the results.

When you perform a search in either the Gmail or Email program, the search results are limited to text in those program’s messages. To perform a wider search throughout the entire phone, touch the Search soft button when viewing the Home screen.

Make Your Own Mail

Every so often, someone comes up to me and says, “Dan, you’re a computer freak. You probably get a lot of e-mail.” I generally nod and smile. Then they say, “How can I get more e-mail?” The answer is simple: To get mail, you have to send mail. Or, you can just be a jerk on a blog and leave your e-mail address there. That method works too, though I don’t recommend it.

Composing a new electronic message

Crafting an e-mail epistle on your Nexus One works exactly like creating one on your computer. Figure 10-5 shows the basic setup.

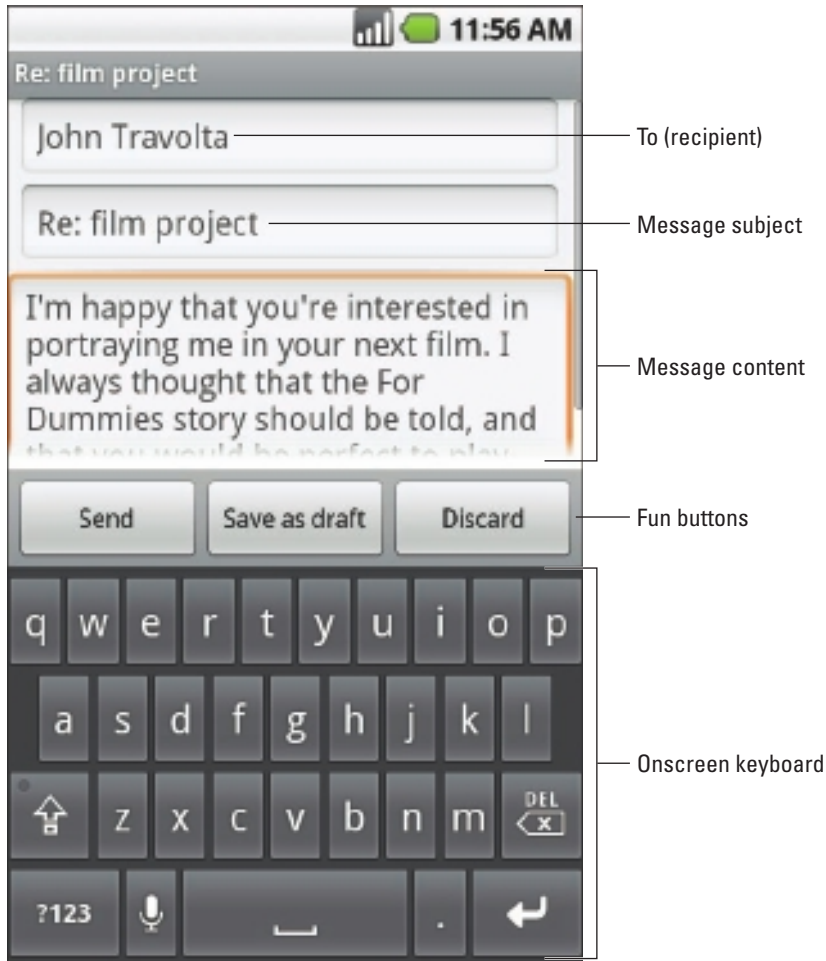


Figure 10-5: Writing a new e-mail message.

Here's how to get there:

1. **Start an e-mail program, either Gmail or the Email program.**

**2. Press the Menu soft button.****3. Choose Compose.**

A new message screen appears, looking like Figure 10-5 but with no fields filled in.

4. Touch the To field to select it.**5. Type the first few letters of a contact name, and then choose a matching contact from the list that's displayed.**

You can also send to any valid e-mail address not found in your contact list by typing that address. Notice that the onscreen keyboard changes to add the @ and .com keys, which makes typing an e-mail address easier.

6. Type a subject.

Touch the Subject field and use the onscreen keyboard to type a subject. Or, you can dictate the subject using voice input, as described in Chapter 4.

7. Type the message.

Touch the Compose Mail field and use your best thumb-typing skills to compose your letter. Or, you can dictate the message.

8. Touch the Send button to whisk your missive off to the Internet for immediate delivery.

Or, you can touch the Discard button to trash the message. If prompted, touch OK to confirm deletion of the message.

When you touch the Save As Draft button, the message is stored in the Drafts folder. You can open that folder to reedit the message. Touch Send to send the message.

Copies of the messages you send in the Email program are stored in the Sent mailbox. If you're using Gmail, copies are saved in your Gmail account, which is accessed from your phone as well as from any computer connected to the Internet.



- ✓ Refer to Chapter 8 for more information on the Contacts list.
- ✓ Chapter 4 covers typing and voice input and also message editing.
- ✓ If you type an invalid or improper e-mail address, a red exclamation point in a circle appears in an obnoxious way to let you know. Fix the address.
- ✓ To summon the CC field, press the Menu soft button and choose the command Add Cc/Bcc. The CC and BCC fields then show up for your fill-in goodness.

Starting a new message from a contact

A quick and easy way to compose a new message is to find a contact and then create a message using the Quick Contact information. Heed these steps:



1. Open the Contacts list.

If necessary, touch Contacts at the top of the Contact screen to see all your contacts. Or, when e-mailing a favorite or recent contact, touch Favorites.

2. Locate the contact to whom you want to send an electronic message.

Review Chapter 8 for ways to hunt down contacts in a long list.

3. Touch the contact's picture or the generic Android icon to view the Quick Contact information.

What you see looks similar to Figure 10-6.

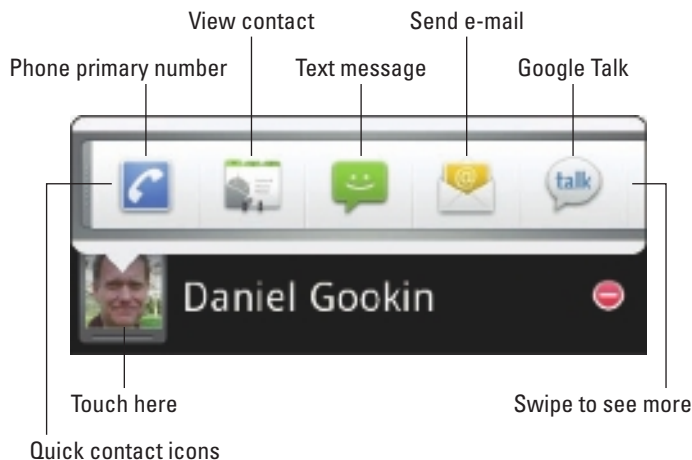


Figure 10-6: Accessing Quick Contact information.

4. Choose the Send Email icon, as shown in the figure.

5. If prompted, choose Compose to use Gmail to send the message or choose Email to use the Email program.

At this point, creating the message works just as described in the preceding section; look there for additional information.

Contact icons can also be found on the Home screen. In that case, you can long-press the contact name to see the Quick Contact information, as described in Step 3.

Message Attachments

Your Nexus One e-mail programs can both send and receive e-mail attachments. Though that feature is nice, e-mail attachments are more of a computer thing, not something that's wholly useful on a cellphone.

For receiving attachments, the Nexus One lets you view the attachment to see its contents. Not every attachment is viewable, however. It all depends on which type of file is attached to the message.

E-mail messages with attachments are flagged in the inbox with a paper clip icon, which seems to be the standard "I have an attachment" icon for most e-mail programs. When you open such a file, you may see the attachment appear as shown in Figure 10-7. Touch the Preview button to witness the attachment on your phone.

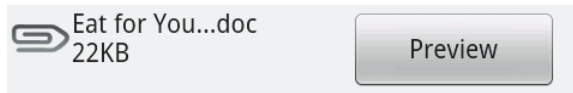


Figure 10-7: An attachment lurking in an e-mail message.

What happens after you touch the Preview button depends on the type of attachment. Sometimes you see a list of apps from which you can choose one to open the attachment. Many Microsoft Office documents are opened by the QuickOffice app, for example.

Some attachments cannot be opened. In those cases, use a computer to attempt to open the attachment. Or, you can reply to the message, informing the sender that you're unable to open the attachment.

- ✓ Sometimes pictures included in an e-mail message aren't displayed. You find a Show Pictures button in the message, which you can choose to display the pictures.
- ✓ You can't save a non-image e-mail attachment on your phone. Wait until you retrieve the message on your computer to save it.



- ✓ You can add an attachment to an e-mail message you create, though attachments are limited to photos and videos: Touch the Menu soft button and choose Add Attachment. The Gallery program appears, where you can choose a photo or video to attach to a message.
- ✓ It's also possible to browse the Gallery and choose a photo or video to e-mail: Long-press the photo and choose the Share command from the bottom of the screen. Choose Email or Gmail from the pop-up menu to begin a new message with that photo or video attached.
- ✓ See Chapter 16 for more information on the Gallery.

E-Mail Configuration

There are a few things you can do to customize the e-mail experience on your Nexus One. You can add one or more of your Internet e-mail accounts so that you can read e-mail on your phone anytime. You can customize an e-mail signature and set other options, some of which are boring, so I don't discuss them in this section.

Setting up an e-mail account

When you have and use non-Gmail e-mail accounts, you can configure the phone's Email program to work with each of them. Here's how it's done:

1. Start the Email program.

You might be prompted to create an account. Skip to Step 6.

2. Press the Menu soft button.

3. Choose Add Accounts.

If you don't see an Add Account command, then choose Accounts, and repeat Steps 2 and 3.

4. Input the e-mail address you use for the account.

5. Input the password for that account.

6. Touch the Next button.

The Nexus One tests your e-mail settings.

7. Input a name for the account.

For example, I use Main for my main e-mail account, though I could use Wambooli instead, which is the name of the server.

8. Optional: Type your name.

The name appears on the outgoing e-mail.

9. Touch the Done button.

The mail account setup is complete.

You can set up a ton of e-mail accounts on the Nexus One, one for each e-mail account you have. They all appear in a list in the Email program, as shown in Figure 10-8. You can open that screen by pressing the Menu soft button and choosing Accounts.

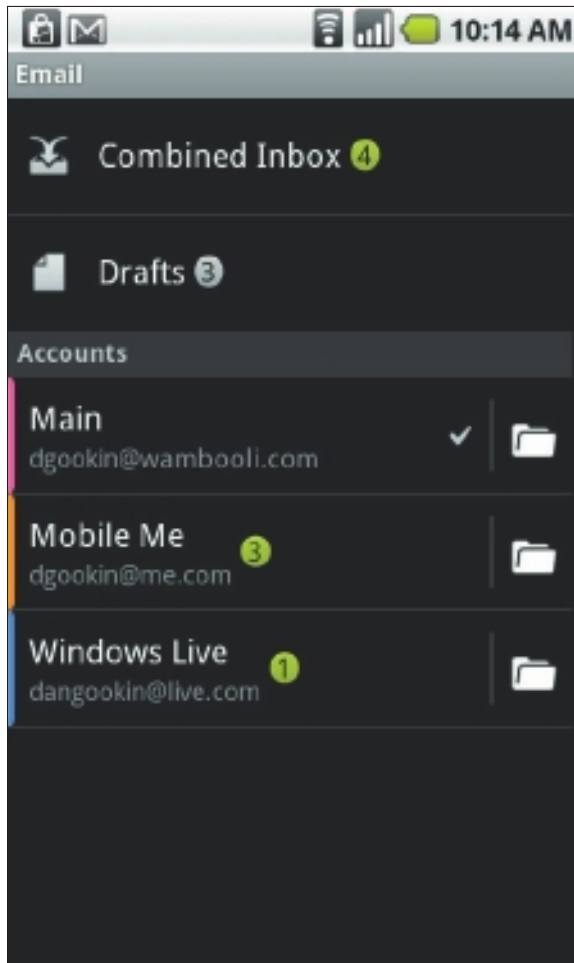


Figure 10-8: Multiple e-mail accounts in the Email program.



Pay heed to the Combined Inbox item, shown in the figure. You can choose that item to read all your new mail, as opposed to checking individual inboxes from each account.

- ✓ Not every Web-based e-mail account can be accessed by the Nexus One. When you're in doubt, you see an appropriate warning message. In most cases, the message also explains how to properly configure the Web-based e-mail account to work with your Nexus One.
- ✓ Though you can configure multiple e-mail accounts to be accessed by the Nexus One, only one account is used to send your e-mail. To set that account, follow the steps in the later section "Setting e-mail options" to summon the account's Settings screen. Choose the option Default Account.

Creating a signature

I highly recommend that you create a custom e-mail signature for sending messages from your phone. Here's my signature:

DAN

This was sent from my phone.
Please forgive the typos.

You'll need to craft a signature for both the Email and Gmail programs. Obey these directions:



- 1. Start Gmail.**
- 2. Press the Menu soft button.**
- 3. Choose the More command, and then choose Settings.**
- 4. Choose Signature.**
- 5. Type or dictate your signature.**
- 6. Touch OK.**

In the Email program, you'll need to set up a signature for each mail account. Heed these steps:

- 1. Start Email.**
- 2. If necessary, get to the main Email screen by pressing the Back soft button.** (The main Email screen is shown in Figure 10-8.) When you have only one email account, then this step (and Step 3) are not required.
- 3. Choose an account from the main Email screen.**

4. **Press the Menu soft button.**
5. **Choose Account Settings.**
6. **Choose Signature.**
7. **Dictate or type a signature.**
8. **Touch OK.**

The signature you set appears in all outgoing messages sent from that account.

Setting e-mail options

A smattering of interesting e-mail settings are worth looking into. To reach the Settings screen in Gmail, follow Steps 1 through 3 in the preceding section. For the Email program, you have to work settings for each e-mail account. Follow these steps:



1. **Start the Email program.**

The Email icon is found on the Home screen or in the Launcher.

2. **At the main account screen (refer to Figure 10-8), choose the account you want to adjust.**

You can open the main account screen from any inbox in the Email program by pressing the Back soft button.

3. **Press the Menu soft button.**

4. **Choose Account Settings.**

You're ready to adjust some options for that particular e-mail account.

Here are some of the items worthy of note on the Settings screen:

- ✓ To specify how often the phone checks for new messages, choose Email Check Frequency. Select a new frequency from the list or choose Never to direct the phone not to pick up e-mail from that account.
- ✓ When you have more than one Email account set up, you can choose which account is the one that sends e-mail by choosing Default Account.
- ✓ Choose Email Notifications to have the phone alert you to new messages. Or, you can disable all notifications by removing the check mark by Email Notifications.
- ✓ Choose a specific ringtone for the account by touching Select Ringtone beneath Email Notifications.
- ✓ Specify whether the phone vibrates on the receipt of new e-mail by choosing Vibrate.



- ✓ The ringtone and vibration options are available only when Email Notifications is selected.
- ✓ You use the Incoming Settings and Outgoing Settings options to customize some nerdy aspects of the e-mail accounts. Go there when directed to by tech support or someone who knows what they're doing.
- ✓ The account settings you change must be done for each e-mail account on the phone.

Out on the Web

In This Chapter

- ▶ Looking at a Web page on your phone
- ▶ Browsing around the Web
- ▶ Bookmarking pages
- ▶ Working with multiple browser windows
- ▶ Searching the Web
- ▶ Sending a link to a friend
- ▶ Downloading stuff from the Web
- ▶ Changing the home page

Why on earth would anyone want to browse the World Wide Web on a cellphone? That was my thinking a few years back, when I routinely would lug a laptop computer with me on short trips. I brought the laptop because of my digital addiction to e-mail and various favorite Web pages I *must* read every day. Then it dawned on me: Why on earth would anyone browse the World Wide Web on a computer when you can easily do it on a cellphone?

The Nexus One easily communicates with the Internet. It comes with a handy Web browser. Those two items, plus the information in this chapter, are all you need to get on the Web when you're out and about.



➤ If possible, activate the Nexus One Wi-Fi connection before you venture out on the Web. Though you can use the phone's cellular data connection, the Wi-Fi connection is *far* faster. See Chapter 13 for more information.



- ✓ The Nexus One has apps for Gmail, Facebook, and Twitter and for potentially other popular locations or activities on the Web. I highly recommend using these applications on the phone as opposed to visiting the Web sites using the phone's browser. See Chapter 10 for more information on Gmail; Facebook and Twitter are covered in Chapter 12.

Behold the Web Page

The World Wide Web should be familiar to you. Using the World Wide Web on a cellphone, however, may not be. Don't worry. Consider this section your quick orientation.

Looking at the Web



Begin your venture out on the Internet by starting the Browser app. It might be found on the Home screen, or you can locate it in the Launcher. You can also start the Browser app by touching the Browser button to the right of the Launcher button (at the bottom of every Home screen). The Browser is the Nexus One Web browser. Figure 11-1 shows how it looks.



Because the Nexus One screen isn't a full desktop screen, not every Web page will look good. Here are a few tricks you can use:

- ✓ Pan the Web page by dragging your finger across the touch screen. You can pan up, down, left, or right.
- ✓ Double-touch the screen to zoom in or zoom out.
- ✓ Pinch the screen to zoom out, or spread two fingers to zoom in.
- ✓ Tilt the phone to its side to read a Web page in Landscape mode. Then you can spread or double-tap the touch screen to make teeny text more readable.

Visiting a Web page

To visit a Web page, type its address into the Address box (refer to Figure 11-1). You can also type a search word if you don't know the exact address of a Web page. Use the onscreen keyboard to type; after you enter the address, touch the Go button to visit a specific Web page or search the Web.

If you don't see the Address box, swipe your finger so that you can see the top of the Web page and access the Address box.

You can click links on a page by using your finger on the touch screen. A better way is to use the trackball: Roll the trackball around to highlight various links on the page. Press the trackball to select a link.

- ✓ To reload a Web page, press the Menu soft button and choose the Refresh command. Refreshing updates Web sites that change often, and the command can also be used to reload a Web page that may not have completely loaded the first time.
- ✓ To stop a Web page from loading, touch the X button that appears to the left of the Address box. (The X button replaces the Bookmarks button.)

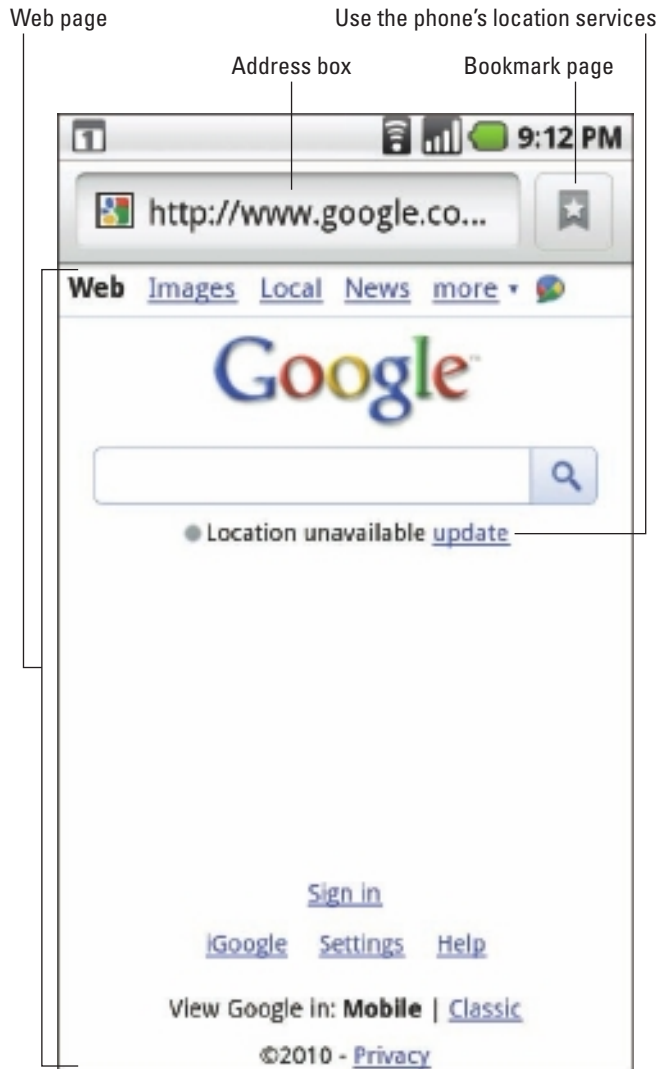


Figure 11-1: The Browser.

Browsing back and forth



To return to a previous Web page, press the Back soft button. It works just like clicking the Back button on a computer's Web browser.

The Forward button also exists in the Browser program: Press the Menu soft button and choose the Forward command.

To review a long-term history of your Web browsing adventures, follow these steps:



1. **Press the Menu soft button.**
2. **Choose Bookmarks.**
3. **At the top of the Bookmarks page, choose History.**

To view a page you visited weeks or months ago, you can choose a Web page from the History list.



To clear the History list, press the Menu soft button while viewing the History list and choose the Clear History command.

Using bookmarks

Bookmarks are those electronic breadcrumbs you can drop as you wander the Web. Need to revisit a Web site? Just look up its bookmark — assuming, of course, that you bothered to create (I prefer “drop”) a bookmark when you first visit the site. Here's how it works:

1. **Visit the Web page you want to bookmark.**
2. **Touch the Bookmark button found at the top of the browser window.**



Refer to Figure 11-1 for the location of the Bookmark button. After pressing the button, you see the Bookmarks screen, shown in Figure 11-2. The screen lists your bookmarks, showing Web site thumbnail previews.

3. **Touch the Add button.**

The Add button appears in the upper left square on the Bookmarks screen (refer to Figure 11-2). The name of the site or page you're bookmarking appears below the square.

4. **If necessary, edit the bookmark name.**

The bookmark is given the Web page name, which might be long. I usually edit the name to fit into the thumbnail squares. For example, you see the Weather bookmark shown in Figure 11-2, though its original name is the long, complex name for the weather Web site I prefer.

5. Touch OK.

You might need to press the Back soft button to dismiss the onscreen keyboard and see the OK button.

After the bookmark is set, it appears in the list of bookmarks, usually at the end of the list. You can swipe the list downward to see the bookmarks and all their fun thumbnails.

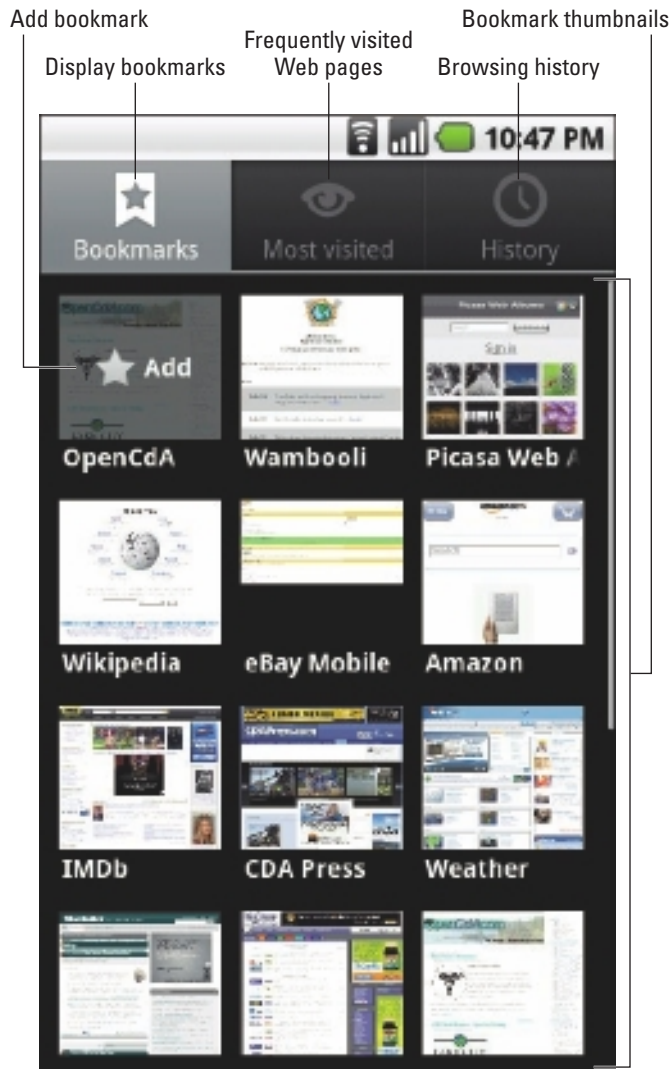


Figure 11-2: Adding a bookmark.

Another way to add a bookmark is to touch the Most Visited button at the top of the Bookmarks screen (refer to Figure 11-2). That screen lists the Web pages you visit most often. To add one of those pages, long-press the thumbnail and choose the command Add Bookmark.



- ✓ To visit a bookmark, press the Menu soft button and choose the Bookmarks command. Touch a bookmark thumbnail to visit that site.
- ✓ Remove a bookmark by long-pressing its thumbnail on the Bookmarks screen. Choose the command Delete Bookmark.
- ✓ Bookmarked Web sites can also be placed on the Home screen: Long-press the bookmark thumbnail and choose the command Add Shortcut to Home.
- ✓ You can switch between Thumbnail and List views for your bookmarks: When viewing the Bookmarks screen, press the Menu soft button and choose the List View command to switch to List view. To return to Thumbnail view, press the Menu soft button and choose Thumbnail View.



- ✓ The MyBookmarks app, which you can purchase at the Android Market, can import Internet Explorer, Firefox, and Chrome bookmarks from your Windows computer into the Nexus One. See Chapter 20 for more information about the Android Market.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 4 for information on editing text on the Nexus One.

Managing multiple Web page windows

Because the Browser app sports more than one window, you can open multiple Web pages at a time on your Nexus One. You have several ways to summon another browser window:

- ✓ *To open a link in another window*, press and hold the new link by using your finger or holding down the trackball. Choose the command Open in New Window from the menu that appears.
- ✓ *To open a bookmark in a new window*, long-press the bookmark and choose the command Open in New Window.
- ✓ *To open a blank browser window*, press the Menu soft button and choose New Window.



You switch between windows by pressing the Menu soft button and choosing the Windows command. All open browser windows are displayed on the screen; switch to a window by choosing it from the list. Or, you can close a window by touching the X button to the right of the window's name.

New windows open using the home page set for the Browser application. See the section “Setting a home page,” later in this chapter, for information.

Search the Web

The handiest way to find things on the Web is to use the Google widget, often found floating on the main Home screen and shown in Figure 11-3. Use the Google widget to type something to search for. You can press the blue G button to choose what to search. You can touch the microphone button to dictate what you want to find on the Internet.

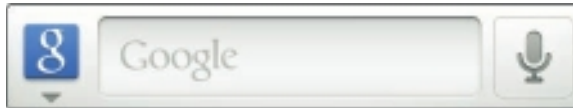


Figure 11-3: The Google widget.



To search for something anytime you’re viewing a Web page in the browser, press the Search soft button. Type the search term into the box. You can choose from a suggestions list, shown in Figure 11-4, or touch the Go button to complete the search using the Google search engine.

To find text on the Web page you’re looking at, as opposed to searching the entire Internet, follow these steps:



1. **Visit the Web page where you want to find a specific tidbit o’ text.**
2. **Press the Menu soft button.**
3. **Choose the More command.**
4. **Choose Find on Page.**
5. **Type the text you’re searching for.**
6. **Use the left or right triangle buttons to locate that text on the page — backward or forward, respectively.**

The found text appears highlighted in green.

7. **Touch the X button when you’re done searching.**

When no text is found, nothing is highlighted on the page; you see 0 matches displayed beneath the search text box.

See Chapter 21 for more information on widgets.

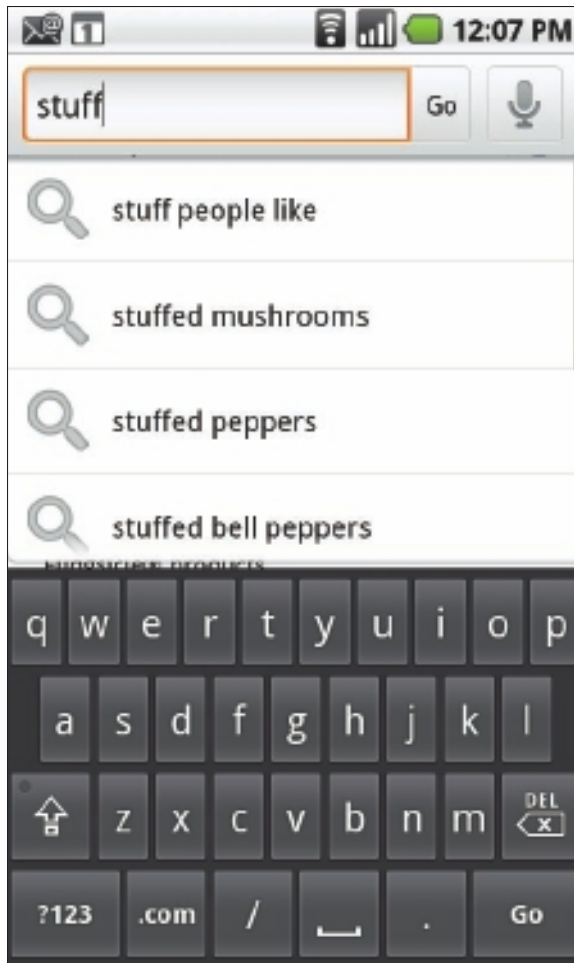


Figure 11-4: Searching for stuff on the Internet.

Sharing a page

The Android operating system makes it easy to share information you find on your phone. With regard to the Web pages you visit, you can easily share links and bookmarks. Follow these steps:

1. **Long-press the link or bookmark you want to share.**
2. **Choose the command Share Link.**

A pop-up menu of places to share appears, looking similar to Figure 11-5. The variety and number of items on the Share Via menu depend on the applications installed on your phone.

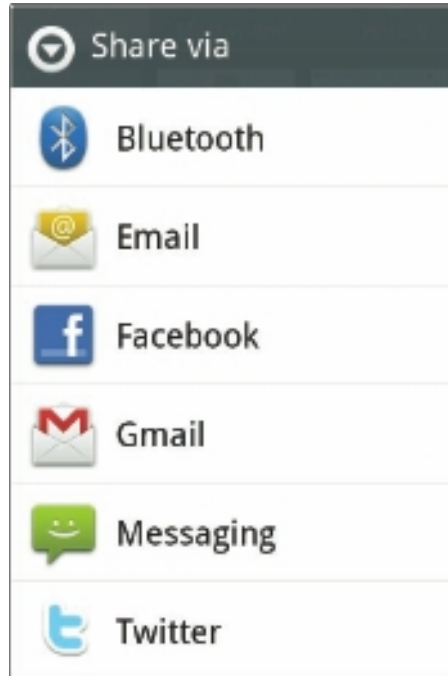


Figure 11-5: Options for sharing a Web page.

3. **Choose a method to share the link.**

For example, choose Email to send the link by mail or Messaging to share by text message.

4. **Do whatever happens next.**

Whatever happens next depends on how you're sharing the link.

Most likely, whatever happens next brings you to another application where you can complete the process. Refer to various parts of this book for the specifics.

The Perils and Joys of Downloading

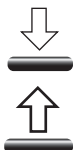
One of the most abused words in all computerdom is *download*. People don't understand what it means. It's definitely not a synonym for *transfer* or *copy*, though that's how I hear it used most often.



In the case of the Nexus One, a download is a transfer of information from another location to your phone. When you send something from the phone, you're *uploading* it.

There. Now the nerd in me feels much, much better.

You can download information from a Web page into your phone. It doesn't work exactly like downloading does for a computer, which is why I wrote this section.



- ✓ You don't need to download program files to your phone. If you want new software, you can obtain it from the Android Market, covered in Chapter 19. Otherwise, you have no need to download program files into your Nexus One.
- ✓ When the phone is downloading information, you see the Downloading notification.
- ✓ When the phone is uploading information, the Uploading notification shows up.

Grabbing an image from a Web page

The simplest item to download is an image from a Web page. It's cinchy: Long-press the image. You see a pop-up menu appear, from which you choose the command Save Image.



- ✓ The image is copied and stored on your Nexus One — specifically, in the Gallery in the special folder Downloads.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 16 for information on the Gallery.
- ✓ Technically, an image is stored on the phone's MicroSD card. You can read about storage on the MicroSD card in Chapter 13.

Downloading a file

When a link opens a document on a Web page, such as a Microsoft Word document or PDF (Adobe Acrobat) file, you can download that information to your phone. Simply long-press the download link and choose the command Save Link from the menu that appears.

You can view the link by referring to the Download History screen. This screen appears after the download is complete. See the next section.

Reviewing your downloads

You can view downloaded information by perusing the Download History screen, shown in Figure 11-6. This screen normally appears right after you download something, or you can summon it at any time while using the Browser app by pressing the Menu soft button, choosing the More command, and then choosing Downloads.

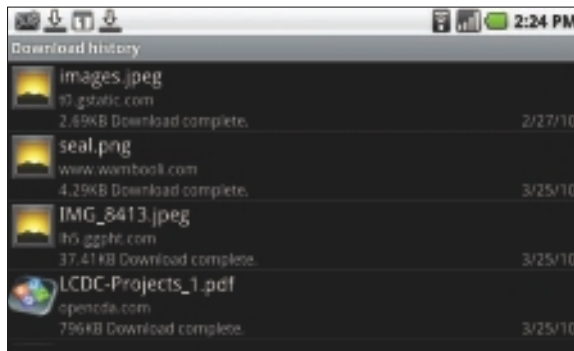


Figure 11-6: The Download History screen.

The stuff you download is viewed by using special apps on your phone, such as the QuickOffice app, which can view Microsoft Office files in addition to PDF documents. Don't fret the process: Simply choose the item you download from the Download History screen and then you can see it on your phone.

Well, of course, there are some things you can download that you cannot view. When that happens, you see an appropriately rude error message.

Web Controls and Settings

More options and settings and controls are in the Browser program than in just about any other program I've seen on the Nexus One. It's complex. Rather than bore you with every dang doodle detail, I thought I'd present just a few of the options worthy of your attention.

Setting a home page

The *home page* is the first page you see when you start the Browser application, and the first page that's loaded when you fire up a blank window. To set your home page, heed these directions:



1. Browse to the page you want to set as the home page.

2. Press the Menu soft button.

3. Choose More.

4. Choose Settings.

A massive list of options and settings appears.

5. Choose Set Home Page.

It's a ways down the list, so swipe the list downward as necessary.

After choosing the Set Home Page command, you see a Set Home Page box where you can type the home page address. Because you obeyed Step 1, you don't need to type that address right now.

6. Touch the Use Current Page button.

The home page is set.

7. Touch OK.

Unless you've already set a new home page, the Nexus One comes configured with the Google search page as your home page.



If you want the home page to be blank (not set to any particular Web page), set the name of the home page (refer to Step 5) to `about:blank`. That's the word `about`, a colon, and then the word `blank`, with no period at the end and no spaces in the middle. I prefer a blank home page because it's the fastest Web page to load. It's also the Web page with the most accurate information.

Changing the way the Web looks

You can do a few things to improve the way the Web looks on your phone. First and foremost, don't forget that you can orient the phone horizontally to see a wide view of any Web page.

From the Settings screen, you can also adjust the text size used to display a Web page. Heed these steps:



1. Press the Menu soft button.

2. Choose More.

3. **Choose Settings.**
4. **Choose Text Size.**
5. **Select a better size from the menu.**

For example, try Large or Huge.

6. **Press the Back soft button to return to the Web page screen.**

I won't make any age-related comments about text size at this time, and especially at this point in my life.

Setting privacy and security options

With regard to security, my advice is always to be smart and think before doing anything questionable on the Web. Use common sense. One of the most effective ways the Bad Guys win is by using *human engineering* to try to trick you into doing something you normally wouldn't do, such as click a link to see a cute animation or racy pictures of a celebrity or politician. As long as you use your noggin, you should be safe.

As far as the phone's settings go, most of the security options are already enabled for you, including the blocking of pop-up windows (which normally spew ads).

If Web page cookies concern you, you can clear them from the Settings window. Follow Steps 1 through 3 in the preceding section and choose the option Clear All Cookie Data.

You can also choose the command Clear Form Data and remove the check mark from Remember Forum Data. These two settings prevent any characters you've input into a text field from being summoned automatically by someone who may steal your phone.

You might also be concerned about various warnings regarding location data. What they mean is that the phone can take advantage of your location on Planet Earth (using the built-in Nexus One GPS or satellite position system) to help locate businesses and people near you. I don't foresee any security problem in leaving this feature on, though you can disable the location services from the browser's Settings screen: Remove the check mark by Enable Location. You can also choose the item Clear Location Access to wipe out any information saved in the phone and used by certain Web pages.

Also see the earlier section "Browsing back and forth" for steps on clearing your Web-browsing history.



A Social Networking Butterfly

In This Chapter

- ▶ Accessing Facebook on your phone
- ▶ Updating your Facebook status
- ▶ Sharing photos on Facebook
- ▶ Finding a Twitter client
- ▶ Sending a tweet
- ▶ Accessing other social networking sites

They said that the Internet would isolate people and keep us alone in our homes and away from human contact. Boy, were they wrong! The Internet is now the most social hub that the world has seen since the Tower of Babel. Thanks to social networking sites on the Web, you can stay in touch with friends and relatives flung far and wide, including people you've never even met. That connection can also be made on your phone, so now it's possible to lead an incredible social life all by yourself, all alone, wherever you go.

Your Life on Facebook

The most popular of all the social networking sites is Facebook. It's an Internet destination where you can offer your thoughts, tell what you're doing, share photos and videos, play games, and enjoy other diversions. To get started, you need a Facebook account, if you don't have one already. Then you can use the Facebook app on your Nexus One to keep up with your busy social networking life.



- ✓ Though you can access Facebook on the Web by using the Browser app, I highly recommend that you use the Facebook app that comes with the Nexus One.
- ✓ Facebook is one of the most popular sites on the Internet as this book goes to press. On some days, it sees more Internet traffic than Google.

Creating a Facebook account

To use Facebook on your Nexus One, you must have a Facebook account. The easiest way to do that is to visit www.facebook.com on your computer and register for a new account. Remember your login name and password.

You confirm your Facebook account by replying to an e-mail message. After you do that, Facebook is ready for your thoughts, photos, and so on. Also, after confirming your Facebook account, you can set up options on your phone by following these steps:



- 1. From the Home screen, touch the Launcher.**
- 2. Open the Settings icon.**
- 3. Choose Accounts & Sync.**
 - If you see a Facebook account listed, you're done. Otherwise:
- 4. Touch the Add Account button.**
- 5. Choose Facebook.**
- 6. Touch the Email text box.**
- 7. Type the e-mail address you used to sign up for Facebook.**
- 8. Touch the Password text box.**
- 9. Type your Facebook password.**

The characters you type turn into big dots so that no one looking at the phone can see your password.

- 10. Touch the Login button.**

The Nexus One signs in to your Facebook account.

Next, you're asked to specify synchronization options.

11. Choose a Synchronization option.

Make a choice based on how you use your contacts. For a business phone, for example, I would be more judicious and choose either Don't Sync or Sync with Existing Contacts. For fun, you can choose Sync All.

12. Touch the Next button.

Read some handy Facebook tips.

13. Touch the Finish button.

You're done.

After activating your Facebook account on the Nexus One, you see the Facebook home screen. Using that screen is covered in the next section.

You can change the Synchronization options at any time: From the main Facebook screen, press the Menu soft button. Choose Settings, and then scroll down the list of options and choose Sync Contacts.

To see the Facebook tips displayed again (refer to Step 12), press the Menu soft button at the main Facebook screen and then choose Settings and then Helpful Tips.

Visiting Facebook



To visit your Facebook account on the Nexus One, open the Facebook icon. If you can't find a copy of it stuck to the Home screen, touch the Launcher and scan for the Facebook icon.

The main Facebook screen is shown in Figure 12-1. It's a rather simplistic interface, yet it's the spot where you can check most of your Facebook activities, including uploading a photo or keeping your status up-to-date wherever you go with your Nexus One.

When you choose an item from the main Facebook screen, you see another screen with more information:

News Feed: View status updates, newly added photos, and other information about your Facebook friends.

Friends: See a list of all your Facebook friends, search for friends, or touch a friend's icon to see their status and other information.

Photos: Review your Facebook photo albums.

Inbox: Check your Facebook messages.

Profile: Review your personal Facebook page, your status updates, and whatever else you're wasting your time with on Facebook.

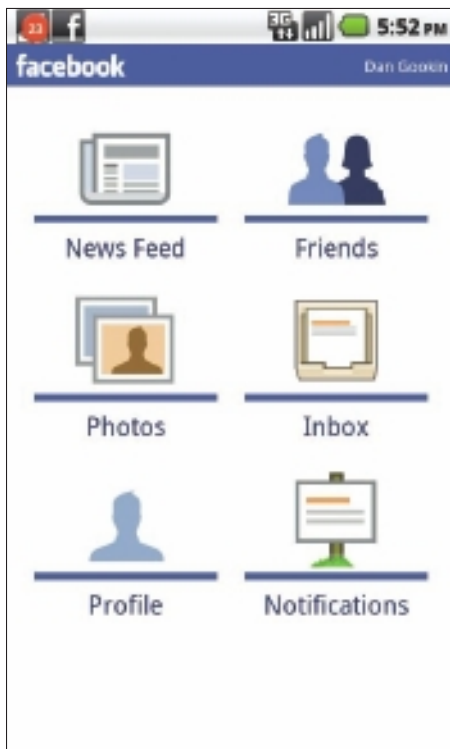


Figure 12-1: Facebook on your phone.

Notifications: Peruse a list of all comments made on your status or photo or any notifications or invites you've received.



To return to the main Facebook screen from one of the other areas, press the Back soft button.



- ✓ When things happen on Facebook, you see a Facebook icon appear in the notifications area. When you have lots of Facebook notices or updates, a number in a red circle appears on the icon, indicating the number of new Facebook items (updates, photos, or messages).
- ✓ Sometimes, choosing a Facebook notification opens the Facebook app, and sometimes it opens the Browser to visit Facebook on the Web.
- ✓ Review Chapter 3 to see how to deal with notifications.
- ✓ See Chapter 21 for information on placing the Facebook icon on the Home screen.
- ✓ To more conveniently waste your time on Facebook, the Nexus One also features a Facebook widget. You can place it right on the Home screen. Instructions for doing that are also found in Chapter 21.
- ✓ To sign out of Facebook on your phone, touch the Menu soft button when viewing the main Facebook screen and choose the command Logout. Touch the Yes button to confirm.

Setting your Facebook status

With Facebook on your phone, you can add a new status, such as “Waiting in line at the DMV” when you’re actually waiting in line at the DMV. I’m sure that all your Facebook friends live for such moments.

To update your Facebook status on the Nexus One, follow these steps:

- 1. From the main Facebook screen, choose either News Feed or Profile.**
- 2. Type or dictate your status into the What’s On Your Mind text box.**

Touch the text box to see the onscreen keyboard.

Your Facebook friends see your status update instantly, plus they see the tiny Mobile icon appear next to your status update, as shown in Figure 12-2.

The Mobile Phone icon tells your pals that the update was made by using your cellphone.



Figure 12-2: A mobile Facebook update.

Taking a picture and sending it to Facebook

One of the handiest reasons to use Facebook on a cellphone is that you can instantly take a picture and upload it to Facebook. This feature lets you easily capture and share various intimate and private moments of your life with everyone in the known universe.

Obey these steps to take and share a photograph on Facebook:

1. Start the Camera app.

The Camera app can be found on the first Home screen to the left, or on the Launcher.

The Nexus One switches to Camera mode, running the Camera app as shown in Figure 12-3. More information on using the camera can be found in Chapter 15.

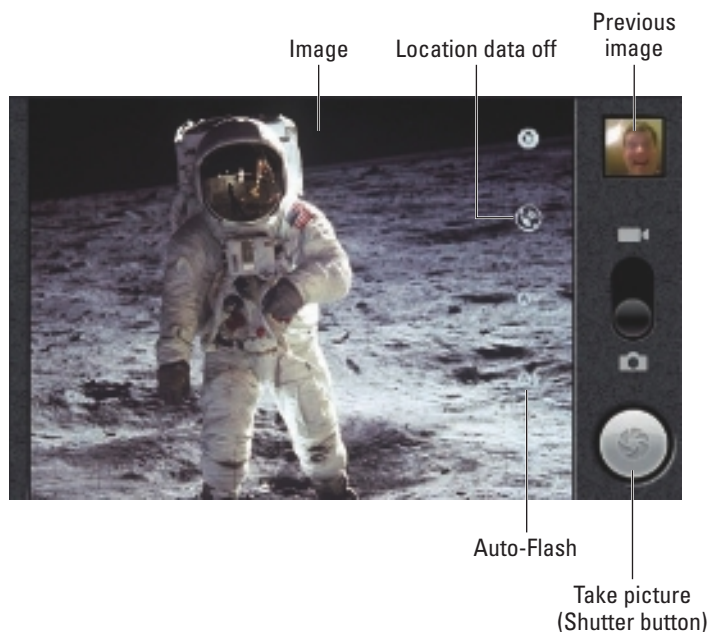


Figure 12-3: Snapping a picture for Facebook.

2. Touch the Shutter button to take the picture.

As with many digital cameras, the Nexus One takes what seems like 14 minutes to eventually snap the picture. Be patient.

3. Touch the Previous Image button (refer to Figure 12-3).

The picture you just took is displayed on the screen.

4. Touch the Share button.

The Share button is found in the lower left corner of the touch screen.

5. Choose Facebook.

A special Upload Photo screen appears. Scroll the top part of the screen (with your picture) up so that you can see the caption area.

6. Type a caption for the image (optional).

You can use the onscreen keyboard or dictate the caption.

7. Touch the Upload button to send the picture to Facebook.

The picture may take a few moments to be uploaded. Meanwhile, you're still using the Camera app. Press the Home soft button to return to the Home screen and then you can restart the Facebook app. Refer to Chapter 15 for more information on the Camera app.



When the picture has been uploaded you'll see the Facebook Uploaded icon in the notifications area, as shown in the margin. See Chapter 3 for how to deal with notification icons.

Sharing a picture you already have

You can use the Share command in the Gallery app to share with your Facebook comrades any photo you've already taken on your phone. Here's how it works:

**1. Start the Gallery application.**

The icon can be found in the Launcher, or possibly on the left Home screen.

2. Browse to find and view the picture you want to share on Facebook.**3. Press the Menu soft button.****4. Choose the Share command.****5. Choose Facebook.****6. Type or dictate a caption for the image (optional).****7. Touch the Upload button.**

After a spell, the image is uploaded to your Facebook Mobile Uploads album.

You can use the Facebook app to view the image in Facebook or use Facebook on any computer connected to the Internet.

Changing various Facebook settings

The commands that control Facebook are stored on the Settings screen, which you open by touching the Menu soft button while viewing the main Facebook screen and then choosing the Settings command.

Most settings are self-explanatory; you simply choose which Facebook events you want the Nexus One to monitor. Two items you might want to set are the refresh interval and the way the phone alerts you to new Facebook activities.

Choose Refresh Interval to specify how often the Nexus One checks for new Facebook activities. You might find the value of one hour to be too long for your active Facebook social life, so choose something quicker. Or, to disable Facebook notifications, choose Never.

Three options determine how the phone reacts to Facebook updates:

Vibrate: Vibrates the phone

Phone LED: Flashes the trackball

Notification Ringtone: Plays a specific ringtone

For the notification ringtone, choose the Silent option when you don't want the phone to make noise upon encountering a Facebook update.

Become Famous with Twitter

The Twitter social networking site proves the hypothesis that everyone will be famous on the Internet for 140 words or fewer.

Like Facebook, Twitter is used to share your existence with others or simply to follow other people's activities or thoughts. Twitter sates some people's craving for attention and provides the bricks that pave the road to fame — or so I believe. I'm not a big Twitter fan, but your phone is capable of letting you tweet from wherever you go.

- ✓ They say that of all the people who have accounts on Twitter, only a small portion of them actively use the service.
- ✓ A message posted on Twitter is a *tweet*.
- ✓ You can post messages on Twitter or follow other people who post messages.

Setting up Twitter on the Nexus One

My advice is to set up an account on Twitter using a computer, not your phone. Visit <http://twitter.com> on a computer and follow the directions there for creating a new account.

After starting a Twitter account, you need to find a Twitter client for use on your phone. Unlike Facebook, Gmail, YouTube, and other Internet locations, Twitter has no app on the Nexus One. That's okay: You can easily obtain a Twitter client from the Android Market.

- ✓ I've used the Twitter client Twidroid while writing this book. It's free.
- ✓ Twitter itself has released an official Android app: Twitter. It's available for free at the Android Market. See Chapter 19.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 19 for information about the Android Market.

Tweeting to other twits

The two most basic tasks on Twitter, are reading and writing tweets.

To read a tweet, simply start your Twitter app. Recent tweets are available by clicking the Tweets button in the Twitter app. In Twidroid, the tweets are displayed in a list.

To create a tweet in the Twitter app, touch the Create Tweet button, which looks like a cartoon bubble. You see the Tweets screen, where you have 140 characters to share your life with the Twitter world.

The Twitter client alerts you to new tweets by displaying an icon in the notifications area. Pull down the notification, as covered in Chapter 3, to see the latest tweets or other Twitter updates.

Other Social Networking Opportunities

A new social networking phenomenon seems to appear on the Web just about every week. The field isn't limited to Facebook and Twitter, though they capture a lot of media attention and are quite popular.

Other common social networking sites include

- ✓ Google Buzz
- ✓ LinkedIn
- ✓ Meebo
- ✓ MySpace

These sites may have special Android apps you can install on your Nexus One, such as the MySpace Mobile app for MySpace.

As with Facebook and Twitter, always configure an account using a computer and then set up everything on your phone.

After adding some social networking apps, you may see them appear on various Share menus on the Nexus One. Use the Share menus to share media files with your online social networking pals.

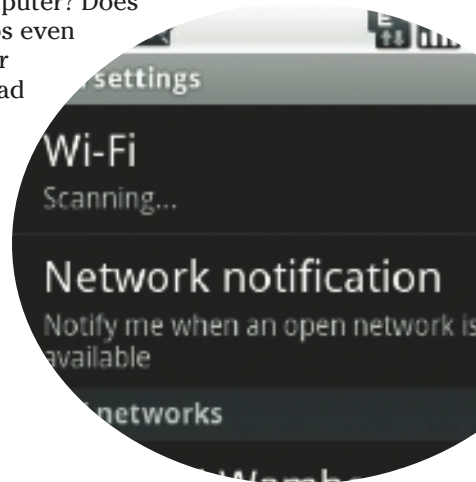
The Nexus One Connection

In This Chapter

- ▶ Making the phone and the computer talk to each other
- ▶ Synchronizing media
- ▶ Mounting the phone as computer storage
- ▶ Replacing the MicroSD card
- ▶ Using Wi-Fi on the Nexus One
- ▶ Connecting to a Wi-Fi network
- ▶ Adding a Bluetooth headset

The Nexus One is far more powerful than the typical computer of 20 years ago. That's a given, but do you think that your phone sits there on your desktop and casts a jealous eye toward the computer? Does the phone want more power, more storage — perhaps even a larger screen? Can electronic gizmos get jealous? Or maybe the phone just feels isolated, alone. That's a sad existence.

Your phone need not live in isolated digital silence. In addition to communicating over the cellular network, the Nexus One can talk with computer Wi-Fi networks, and it can communicate directly with your computer by using a USB cable. Oh, and there are other devices the phone can chat with, all covered in this chapter.



Phone-to-Computer Sharing

Having the Nexus One share information with your computer is a must. The main reason is the transfer of information: You can update your Nexus One with information on the computer, such as music, photos, video, and contacts. You can also update the information on your computer from the Nexus One. It's all explained in this section.



The computer accesses the Nexus One MicroSD card, which is where the phone stores your photos, videos, contact list, music, and other goodies.

Connecting the phone to the computer

Communications between your computer and the Nexus One works best when both devices are physically connected. That connection happens by using the USB cable that comes with the phone. Like nearly every computer cable in the Third Dimension, the USB cable has two ends:

- ✓ The A end of the USB cable plugs into the computer.
- ✓ The micro-USB end of the cable plugs into the bottom of the Nexus One.

Follow these steps to connect the phone to the computer and put the two devices on speaking terms:

- 1. Plug the USB cable into one of the computer's USB ports.**
- 2. Plug the USB cable into the phone.**



If the phone is turned on, an alert may sound and the trackball light may flash. If you can see the screen, you see an alert notification: USB Connected. The USB icon (shown in the margin) appears in the notifications area.

At this point, you can choose to do nothing. But to access information on the phone from the computer, you have to deal with the USB notification.

- 3. Pull down the notifications.**

Refer to Chapter 3 for specific instructions on pulling down notifications.

- 4. Choose USB Connected.**
- 5. Touch the Turn On USB Storage button.**

You'll see a warning. Various apps on your Nexus One cannot access the phone's storage while the MicroSD card is "mounted" onto your computer's file system.

- 6. Touch the OK button.**

The touch screen now tells you that the phone's USB storage is in use; the Nexus One's main storage device, the MicroSD card, is now mounted onto your computer's storage system. An orange Android icon on the touch screen alerts you to the fact that programs on your phone (Music, Gallery, Contacts, and so on) won't be able to access the Micro SD card.



- ✓ When you're done accessing information on the Nexus One, you should properly unmount the phone from your computer system. See the next section.



- ✓ If you don't have a USB cable for your phone, you can buy one at any computer or office supply store. Get a USB-A male to micro-USB cable.
- ✓ Another advantage of connecting your phone to your computer is that the phone charges itself as long as it's plugged in. The phone charges even when it's turned off, though the computer must be on for the phone to charge.

Disconnecting the phone from the computer

After transferring information between the computer and phone, it's wise to properly unmount the MicroSD card from the computer's storage system.

If you've not touched the Nexus One since making the USB connection, then touch the Turn Off USB Storage button, found beneath the orange Android icon on the touch screen. Otherwise, you can follow these steps to turn off USB storage:

1. Pull down the notifications.

Refer to Chapter 3 if you need more help accessing your phone's notifications.

2. Choose Turn Off USB Storage.

3. Touch the Turn Off USB Storage button.

The MicroSD card is unmounted and can no longer be accessed from your computer. The phone's icon disappears from the Computer window or desktop.

4. If necessary, unplug the USB cable.

If you choose to keep the phone connected to the computer, the phone continues to charge. (Only when the computer is off does the phone not charge.) Otherwise, the computer and phone have ended their little *tête-à-tête* and you and the phone are free again to wander the earth.



- ✓ Do not unplug the phone when the USB cable is connected and the MicroSD card is mounted. Doing so may damage the MicroSD card and render invalid all the information stored on your phone. It's a Bad Thing.
- ✓ You can leave the A end of the USB cable plugged into the computer, if you find it convenient. I do. That makes it easier to reconnect the phone later.

Accessing information on the MicroSD card

Information stored on your phone — such as pictures, videos, and music — is stored on the MicroSD card. The card works like a storage device in your computer, keeping your phone's information in files and organized using folders. It's all complex computer stuff, and you're free to merrily skip it all —



unless you're truly curious about how information is stored on the phone or you need to exchange information between the phone and your computer.

To view the information on your phone, stored on the MicroSD card, follow these steps:

1. Connect the phone to the computer.

2. Mount the phone's MicroSD card to the computer's storage system.

See specific directions in the earlier section "Connecting the phone to the computer."

3a. In Windows, open the Computer window.

You can choose Computer from the Start menu or press the Win+E key combination to see a Computer window. The icon representing the phone looks like any other storage icon, as shown nearby. The only puzzle is figuring out which icon represents the phone.



To know for certain which icon represents the Nexus One MicroSD card, unmount the phone (follow the directions in the earlier section "Disconnecting the phone from the computer") and then remount it. The icon that disappears and then reappears in the Computer window represents your phone and generally should be assigned the same drive letter every time you mount it.

3b. On a Macintosh, open the New Drive icon that appears on the desktop.



Macs line up their storage icons on the right edge of the screen, from top to bottom. The Nexus One MicroSD card appears as a generic drive icon, shown in the margin. It has the name NO NAME unless you're clever and already renamed the MicroSD card.

After you mount the Nexus One MicroSD card to your computer, you can access the information stored there. The information is made available just as though your phone were a thumb drive or any other form of external computer storage, which in fact is what it is when the Nexus One is connected to your computer.

✓ To transfer a file to your phone, such as a ringtone or contact, simply drag the file's icon from wherever it dwells on your computer to the MicroSD card's icon. That action copies the file, creating a duplicate on the phone.



- ✓ I wouldn't bother trying to organize files and folders on the MicroSD card. Sure, you can try, but the Nexus One manages those folders. Anything you do is pointless, unless you're one of those obsessive people who feels compelled to organize everything.
- ✓ The best way to transfer music, photos, and video between the phone and your PC is to use the doubleTwist program, which is covered in the next section.
- ✓ You can use certain Android apps to help organize and manage files stored on the MicroSD. Two that I can recommend are Astro and Linda. Both are free and available from the Android Market. See Chapter 19.
- ✓ There's no need to synchronize information such as dates, contacts, and e-mail between the Nexus One and your computer. All that information is synchronized automatically and wirelessly between the phone and your Google account.
- ✓ When you're done accessing the MicroSD card from your computer, unmount the card by following the directions in the section "Disconnecting the phone from the computer."

Synchronizing with doubleTwist

Perhaps the easiest way to move information from your computer and into the phone — and vice versa — is to use the third-party utility doubleTwist. This amazing program is free, and it's available at www.doubletwist.com.

doubleTwist isn't an Android app. You use it on your computer. It lets you easily synchronize pictures, music, videos, and Web page subscriptions between your computer and its media libraries and any portable device, such as the Nexus One.

To use doubleTwist, connect your phone to your computer as described elsewhere in this chapter. Be sure to turn on USB sharing ("mount" the MicroSD card). In many cases, doubleTwist starts automatically as soon as you connect the Nexus One. If not, start it manually. The simple doubleTwist interface is illustrated in Figure 13-1.

To best use doubleTwist is to first ensure that the Google Nexus One is chosen from the list of media storage locations on the left side of the window. Then check all options on the General tab (refer to Figure 13-1). Click the Sync button and all your music, photos, and videos are synchronized between the phone and your PC.

Of course, if you have a lot of photos or videos or music on the computer, you may want to be more selective; the phone's MicroSD card can hold only so much stuff. In that case, click each tab (refer to Figure 13-1) and choose which pictures, music, videos, and subscriptions you want to synchronize between the phone and the computer. Then click the Sync button to transfer the information.

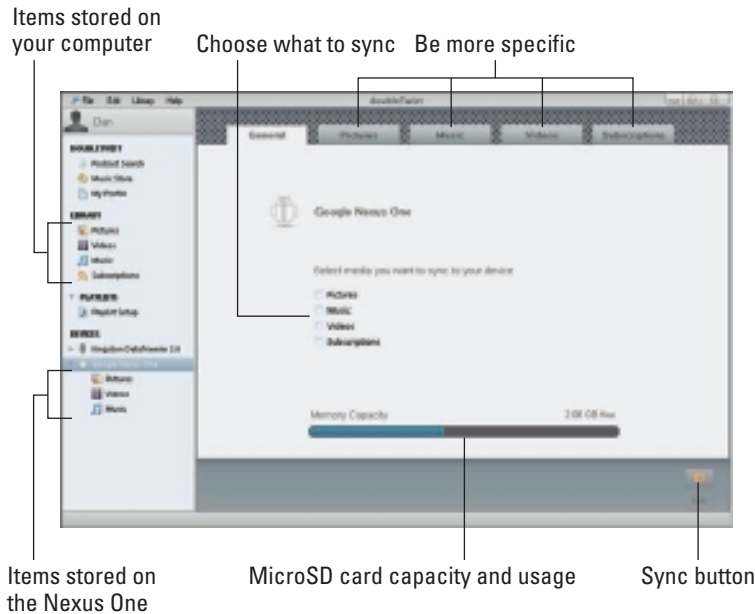


Figure 13-1: The doubleTwist synchronization utility.

- ✓ Versions of doubleTwist are available for both the PC and the Mac.
- ✓ Refer to a handy computer book for information on installing new software such as doubleTwist.
- ✓ doubleTwist doesn't synchronize contact information. The Nexus One automatically synchronizes your phone's contact list with Google.
- ✓ Many programs can be used on your desktop computer to store photos, videos, and music. On the PC, all three are stored using Windows Media Player. On the Mac, photos can be stored using iPhoto, and iTunes is the main music program. You use those programs, or similar ones, to put the media on your computer before you can use doubleTwist to synchronize the media to your phone.
- ✓ Even though you may use programs to organize media on your computer, doubleTwist still searches everywhere on the computer to look for photos, video, and music.
- ✓ *Subscriptions* are podcasts and RSS feeds and other updated Internet content that can be delivered automatically to your computer.



Unmounting, removing, and replacing the MicroSD card

Most of the time, the MicroSD card dwells contently inside your Nexus One. Rarely, if ever, do you need to remove it. If you decide to remove it, you must unmount it first. This type of unmounting is different from unmounting the phone when it's connected to the computer. (Well, it's similar, but not the same thing.)

If you plan to remove the MicroSD card, follow these steps to ensure that none of your important data gets screwed up:

- 1. Ensure that the phone isn't connected to a computer using a USB cable.**

Free the phone from the computer, as described earlier in this chapter.



- 2. From the Launcher, choose Settings.**

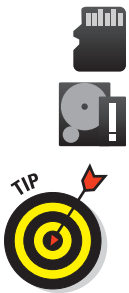
- 3. Choose SD Card & Phone Storage.**

- 4. Choose Unmount SD Card.**

You should hear an alert, after which it's okay to turn off the phone and remove the MicroSD card.

When the MicroSD card has been unmounted by following these steps, you don't have access to any of the information stored there; the Nexus One doesn't show your photos or music or other information.

- ✓ To access the MicroSD card again after unmounting it, turn the phone back on again.
- ✓ When the MicroSD card has been unmounted, an Unmounted MicroSD Card icon appears in the notifications area.
- ✓ On that perilous day when the MicroSD gets full, you see an appropriate notification icon appear, shown in the margin. Time to get a newer, larger MicroSD card.
- ✓ You can get a second or larger-capacity MicroSD card for use with your Nexus One at any computer or office supply store. The MicroSD card needs to be formatted after you insert it into the Nexus One.
- ✓ To format a new MicroSD card, follow the steps in this section. After Step 4 (or in place of it), choose the command Format SD Card.
- ✓ See Chapter 1 for information on removing the MicroSD card from the phone.



Wireless Network Access

You can't see it, but wireless communication is going on all around. No need to duck — the wireless signals are intercepted only by things like cellphones and laptop computers. The Nexus One uses those signals to let you talk on the phone and communicate with the Internet and other networks.

Using the digital network

The Nexus One uses the cellular network to not only send and receive phone calls but also communicate with the Internet. The phone can access several types of cellular digital network:



3G: The *third generation* of wide-area data networks; several times faster than the previous, second-generation data networks. 3G networks also provide for talking and sending data at the same time.



EDGE: The best of the second-generation cellular technologies; allows for wide-area communications with the Internet, but not while using voice communications.



GPRS: Another second-generation (2G) network for sending data; not as fast as EDGE.

Your phone always uses the best network available. If the 3G network is within reach, it's the network the Nexus One uses for Internet communications. Otherwise, the 2G (GPRS or EDGE) network is chosen.

The network being used by the phone appears in the status area, using the icons that appear in the margins in this section.



As this book goes to press, 4G networks are starting to appear. These new networks sport speeds up to ten times faster than 3G networks. I hope that soon the Nexus One hardware and cellular service will be updated to handle the new 4G networks.

Turning on Wi-Fi

The cellular network's data connection is handy, mostly because it's available (almost) all over. For faster network communications, you can set up your Nexus One to communicate with a wireless computer network, or Wi-Fi. It's the same type used by desktop computers and laptops for hooking up to the Internet.

To turn on the Nexus One Wi-Fi network, follow these steps:



1. **From the Launcher, choose Settings.**
2. **Choose Wireless & Networks.**

3. Choose Wi-Fi.

A green check mark appears by the Wi-Fi option, indicating that the phone's Wi-Fi abilities are now activated. If you've configured the phone to automatically connect to a nearby wireless network, the network name appears on the screen.

And now, the shortcut: Slide the Home screen over to the right one notch to see the Power Control widget, shown in Figure 13-2. Touch the Wi-Fi button, and the Nexus One turns on its Wi-Fi abilities.

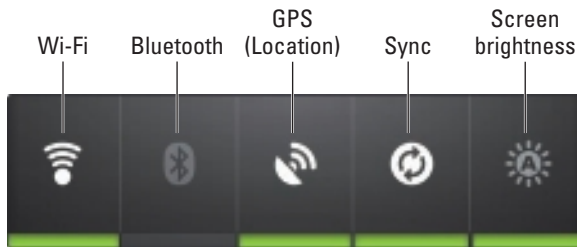


Figure 13-2: The Power Control widget.

To turn off Wi-Fi, repeat the steps in this section. Doing so turns off the phone's Wi-Fi access, disconnecting you from any networks.

See the next section for information on accessing a Wi-Fi network.



- ✓ Turning on Wi-Fi places an extra drain on the battery. So:
- ✓ Don't forget to turn off Wi-Fi when you're out of range or just out and about. That way, you save on battery power.
- ✓ Also see Chapter 22 for information on prolonging battery life.

Accessing a Wi-Fi network

Turning on a phone's Wi-Fi access is only the first part of the process. The next step is joining a wireless network. Just as you would do on a computer, you need to hunt down the wireless network by name and, optionally, input a password. Here's how it works:



1. Choose the **Settings** icon from the Launcher.
2. Choose **Wireless & Networks**.
3. Ensure that **Wi-Fi** is on.

Look for a green check mark by the Wi-Fi option.

4. Choose Wi-Fi Settings.

You see a list of Wi-Fi networks displayed, as shown in Figure 13-3. If no wireless networks are displayed, you're sort of out of luck regarding wireless access from your current location.

5. Choose a wireless network from the list.

In Figure 13-3, I chose the Imperial Wambooli network, which is my office network.

6. Type the network password (optional).

Touch the Password text box to see the onscreen keyboard.

Touch the Show Password check box so that you can see what you're typing; some network passwords can be very long.

7. Touch the Done button on the keyboard after typing the password.**8. Touch the Connect button.**

You should be immediately connected to the network. If not, try the password again.



After your phone is connected, you see the Wi-Fi status icon appear atop the touch screen. It means that the phone's Wi-Fi option is on and that it's connected and communicating with a Wi-Fi network.

Not every network broadcasts its name, which adds security but also makes it more difficult to access a network. In those cases, choose the Add Wi-Fi Network command (refer to Figure 13-3) to manually add the network. Then input the network's name or SSID and the security type. You also need the password, if one is used. This information can be obtained from the guy with the pierced nose who sold you coffee or from whoever is in charge of the wireless network at your location.



The VPN connection

Honestly, if you don't know what a VPN is, you don't need to bother with the VPN connection. But when you're at an organization that uses a virtual private network, you can use the Nexus One to access information on that network from your phone.

After opening the Settings icon, choose Wireless & Networks, VPN Settings, and then Add VPN. Type the name of your VPN and then fill in the

complex instructions provided to you by the VPN manager at your organization. Or, just feign frustration and have that person configure the phone. When you're done, press the Menu soft button and choose the Save command.

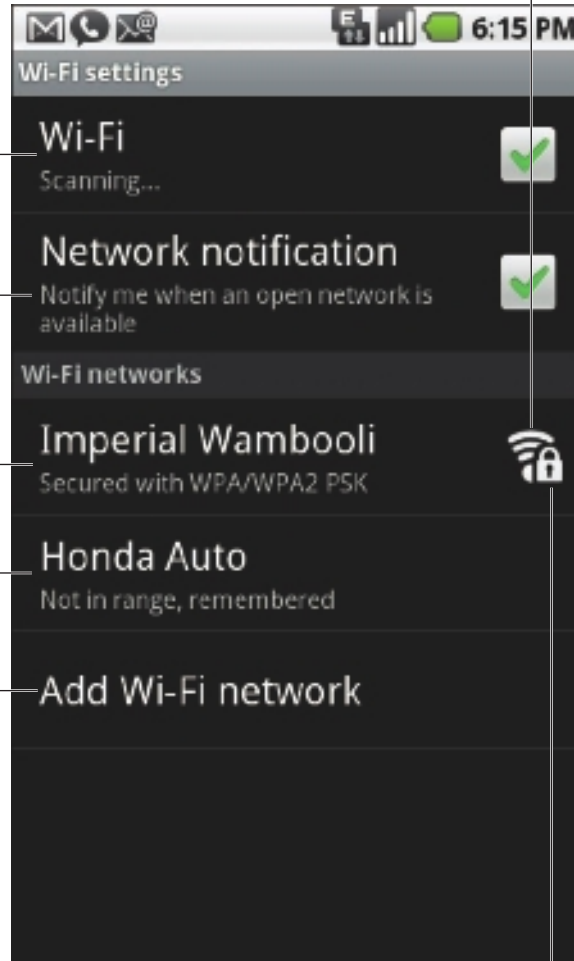
To connect with a VPN, choose Wireless & Networks from the Settings screen and then choose VPN Settings. Choose the VPN you've already set up, and touch the Connect button.

An available network

You'll be alerted to nearby Wi-Fi networks.

The phone's Wi-Fi is on.

The network's signal strength



Manually add a Wi-Fi network. The network is password-protected.

A memorized network

Figure 13-3: Hunting down a wireless network.

- ✓ Not every network has a password.
 - ✓ Some public networks are open to anyone, but you have to use the browser to find a login page that lets you access the network: Simply browse to any page on the Internet and the login page shows up.
 - ✓ The phone automatically remembers any Wi-Fi network it's connected to as well as that network's password.
 - ✓ To change a Wi-Fi network password, touch the Wi-Fi network's name (refer to Figure 13-3) and choose the command Change Password from the pop-up menu.
 - ✓ You can remove any Wi-Fi network saved in the list shown earlier (refer to Figure 13-3). Long-press the network name and choose the Forget command.
- 
- ✓ When network notification is on (refer to Figure 13-3), you see a notification icon appear. It tells you that a Wi-Fi network is in range and available. The icon is shown in the margin.
 - ✓ To disconnect from a Wi-Fi network, simply turn off Wi-Fi on the phone. See the preceding section.
 - ✓ A Wi-Fi network is faster than the cellular data network, so it makes sense to connect with one whenever you can.
- 
- ✓ Unlike the cellular data network, a Wi-Fi network's broadcast signal goes only so far. My advice is to use Wi-Fi when you plan to be in one location for a while. If you wander too far away, the signal is lost and you're disconnected.

Bluetooth Gizmos

Another type of computer network you can confuse yourself with is Bluetooth. It has nothing to do with the color blue or any dental device. *Bluetooth* is simply a wireless protocol for communication between two or more gizmos.

The primary way Bluetooth is used on a cellphone is in one of those wireless earphones you see various people walk around with. They think they're being all high-tech and cool, but they look like they have tiny staplers stuck to their earlobes. They also look like they're talking with invisible people, so stay clear!

Activating Bluetooth

You must turn on the phone's Bluetooth networking before you can use one of those Borg-earpiece implants and join the ranks of walking nerds. Here's how to turn on Bluetooth for the Nexus One:



1. **From the Launcher, choose Settings.**
2. **Choose Wireless & Networks.**
3. **Choose Bluetooth.**

Or, if a little green check mark already appears next to the Bluetooth option, it's already on.

You can also turn on Bluetooth using the Power Control widget (refer to Figure 13-2). Just touch the Bluetooth button to turn it on.

To turn off Bluetooth, repeat the steps in this section.



- ✓ When Bluetooth is on, the Bluetooth status icon appears, as shown in the margin.
- ✓ Activating Bluetooth on the Nexus One can severely drain the battery. Be mindful to use Bluetooth only when necessary, and remember to turn it off when you're done.

Using a Bluetooth device

To make the Bluetooth connection between the Nexus One and one of those “I’m so cool” earphones, you need to *pair* the devices. That way, the Nexus One picks up only your earphone, and not anyone else’s earphone.

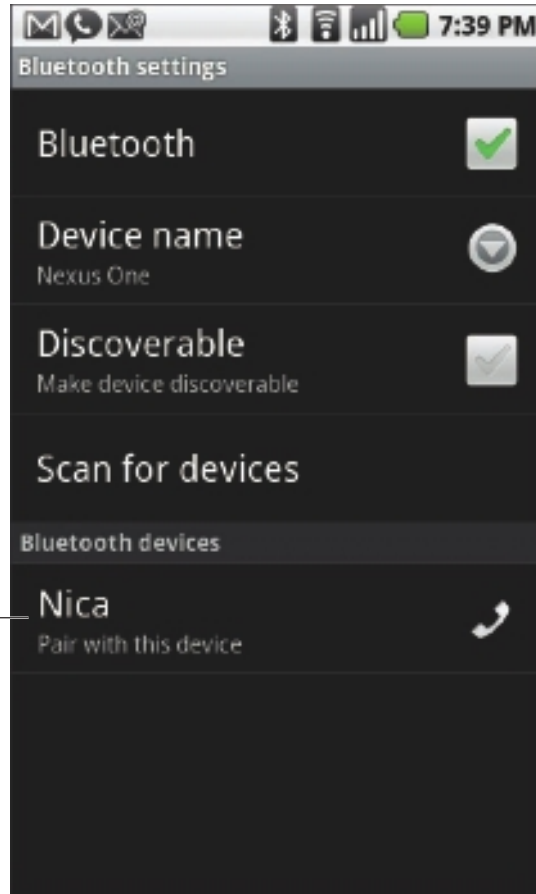
To pair the phone with a headset, follow these steps:



1. **Ensure that Bluetooth on your Nexus One is on.**
2. **Turn on the Bluetooth headset.**
3. **Choose the Launcher and then choose Settings.**
4. **Choose Wireless & Networks.**
5. **Choose Bluetooth Settings.**
6. **Ensure that a check mark appears next to Discoverable.**
7. **Choose Scan for Devices.**
8. **If necessary, press the main button on the Bluetooth gizmo.**

The main button is the one you use to answer the phone. You may have to press and hold the button.

Eventually, the device should appear on the screen, as shown in Figure 13-4.



Bluetooth gizmo

Figure 13-4: Pairing a Bluetooth gizmo.

9. Choose the device.

For example, from Figure 13-4, I'd choose the Nica headset.

10. If necessary, input the device's passcode.

It's usually a four-digit number — quite often, simply 1234.

The device is connected. You can now stick it in your ear and press its main answer button when the phone rings.



Phone, meet modem

You can use your Nexus One as your computer's modem. The computer (or a laptop) can then access the Internet using the cellular network just as the phone does. This operation saves you gazillions of dollars over having to buy a USB cellular modem, and it's a trick that only a few cellphones can perform.

To make the connection, you download one of two free apps from the Android Market —

either PdaNet or EasyTether Lite. After downloading, follow the installation instructions. Often, another file must be downloaded to your PC, and other setup steps may be involved.

After installation is complete, you can use the Nexus One as your computer's or laptop's modem whenever a standard Internet connection is unavailable.

By the way, when a Bluetooth device is on and paired with the phone, the trackball light flashes blue for an incoming call. The main phone screen looks different as well for a Bluetooth-enabled call, as shown in Figure 13-5.

After you answer the call (by pressing the main answer button on the earphone), you can chat away. The Call-In-Progress notification icon is blue for a Bluetooth call (as opposed to green for a regular call).

If you tire of using the Bluetooth headset, you can touch the Bluetooth button to use the Nexus One speaker and microphone. (Refer to Figure 5-2, over in Chapter 5, for the location of the Bluetooth button.)

- ✓ You can turn the Bluetooth earphone on or off after it's been paired. As long as Bluetooth is on, the Nexus One instantly recognizes the earphone when you turn it on.
- ✓ The Bluetooth status icon changes after a device is paired. The new icon is shown in the margin.
- ✓ You can unpair a device by long-pressing the Bluetooth headset on the main Bluetooth screen (refer to Figure 13-4). Choose the Unpair command.
- ✓ Don't forget to turn off the earpiece when you're done with it. The earpiece has a battery and continues to drain when you forget to turn the thing off.



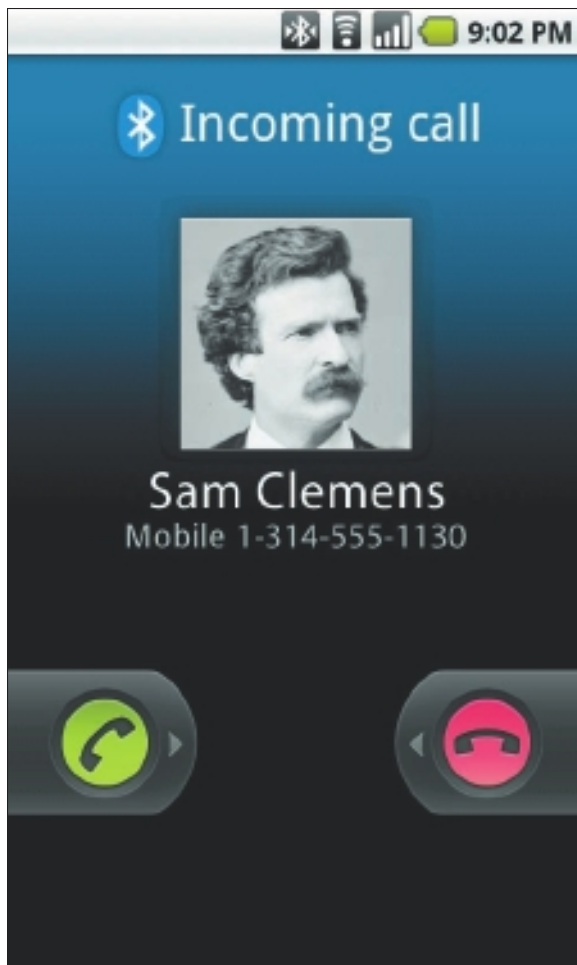
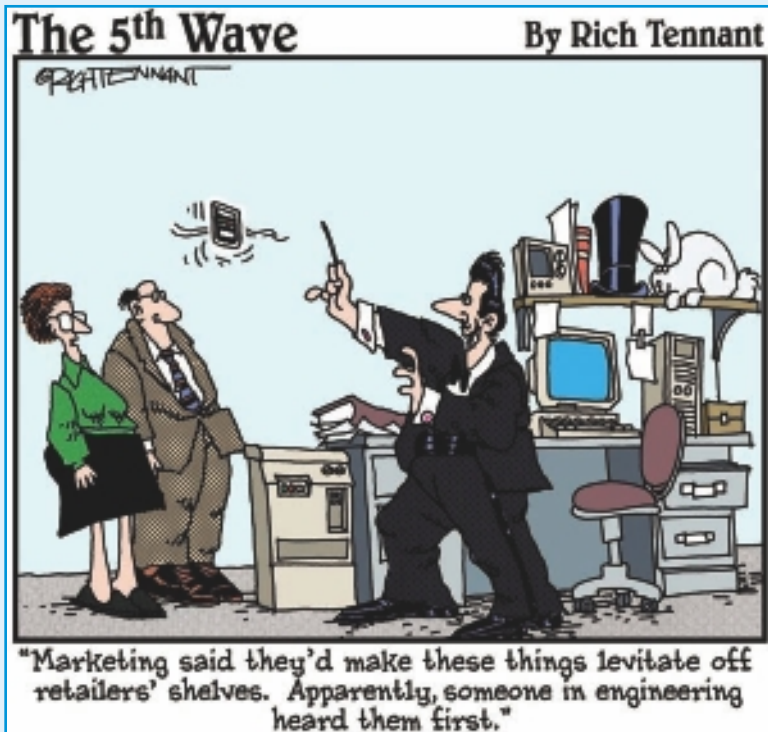


Figure 13-5: Receiving a call using a Bluetooth headset.

Part IV

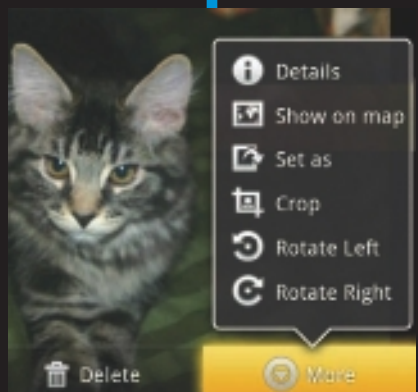
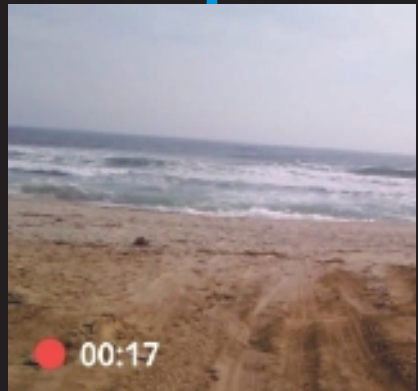
0 What Your Phone Can Do!



In this part . . .

Blame *Star Trek*'s Mr. Spock. He had this *tri-corder* gizmo, a magic box that did just about everything: It could record video and audio, scan the area for green Orion slave babes, or find anything else that Captain Kirk craved. I wanted one of those amazing devices — and not just for the green Orion slave babes.

The modern smartphone has become the *Star Trek* tricorder. In addition to being a phone and being much smaller than the original prop, your Nexus One can record video and sound and can search the local area for items of interest. Though you may not find green Orion slave babes, you can find bars where you can become intoxicated enough to see one. Yes, there are many amazing things your phone can do.



Fun with Maps and Navigation

In This Chapter

- ▶ Exploring your world with Maps
- ▶ Adding optional map features
- ▶ Searching for places
- ▶ Finding a restaurant
- ▶ Getting to your location
- ▶ Using the phone as a navigator
- ▶ Adding a navigation Home screen shortcut

The group members were all stunned and disoriented. Dr. Cornelius explained that it would happen. The room rocked, and gravity tugged left and right instead of down.

Eventually Ira righted himself; his nausea abated. “They’re never going to sell teleportation to the masses with that kind of aftereffect,” he grunted.

Phyllis agreed. Holding a hand to her spinning forehead, she asked, “Where are we? And where is a good sushi restaurant?”

That’s when Dan whipped out his Nexus One super-phone. “I’ll let you know in just a second,” he said proudly. “And the reader will know as well, thanks to the marvelous information in this chapter.”



Basic Map

You no longer need to buy road atlases or struggle with maps that never fold the same way twice: Your Nexus One comes with a Maps application. It charts the entire country, including freeways, highways, roads, streets, avenues, drives, bike paths, addresses, businesses, and points of interest. The map is amazing.

Using the Maps app



You start the Maps app by choosing Maps from the Nexus One Home screen. If it's the first time you've started the Maps app, you can read the What's New screen; touch the OK button to continue.

The Nexus One communicates with global positioning satellites (GPS) to hone in on your current location. It's shown on the map, similar to Figure 14-1. The position is accurate to within a given range, as shown by the blue circle.

Here are some fun things you can do when viewing the basic street map:

Zoom in. To make the map larger (to get closer), touch the Zoom In button, double-tap the screen, or spread your fingers on the touch screen.

Zoom out. To make the map smaller (to see more), touch the Zoom Out button, double-tap the screen, or pinch your fingers on the touch screen.

Pan and scroll. To see what's to the left, right, top, or bottom of the map, drag your finger on the touch screen; the map scrolls in the direction you drag your finger.

The closer you zoom in to the map, the more detail you see, such as street names, block numbers (for addresses), businesses, and other sites.



To see a satellite view, press the Menu soft button and choose Layers and then Satellite. The map image reloads, showing both Street and Satellite views, similar to what's shown in Figure 14-2.



Figure 14-1: An address and your location on a map.

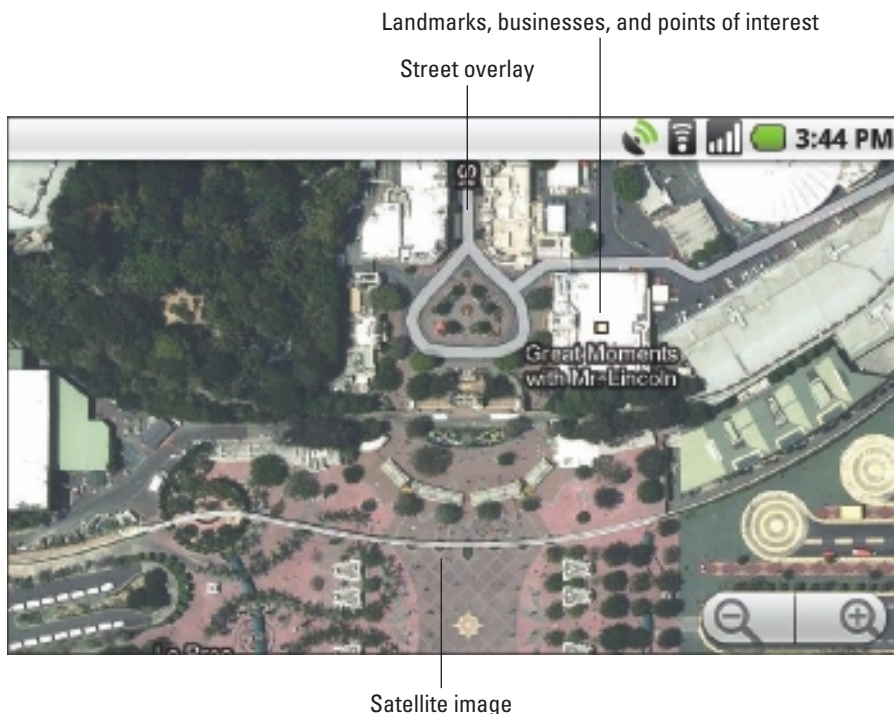


Figure 14-2: The satellite layer.

To return to Street view, press the Menu soft button and choose Layers and then Satellite to peel back that map layer.



- ✓ The Nexus One uses GPS, the global positioning system. It's the same technology used by car navigation toys as well as by handheld GPS gizmos.
- ✓ When the Nexus One is using the GPS, you see the GPS Is On status icon appear.
- ✓ When the Nexus One is receiving GPS information, the GPS Status icon changes to appear as shown in the margin.
- ✓ The compass arrow (refer to Figure 14-1) shows in which direction the phone is pointing.
- ✓ You can always go back to your current location on the map by pressing the Menu soft button and choosing the command My Location.
- ✓ You can add a Traffic layer by pressing the Menu soft button and choosing Layers and then Traffic. Not every location supports the Traffic layer, however.



- ✓ Also see the later section “Locating your address” for details about the Street View feature.
- ✓ The Nexus One may warn you when various applications access the phone’s location feature. The warning is nothing serious. The phone is just letting you know that software is trying to access the phone’s physical location. Some folks may view this process as an invasion of privacy — hence the warnings. I see no issue with the phone knowing where you are, but I understand that not everyone feels that way. If you’d rather not share location information, simply decline access when prompted.

Spiffing up the map with Labs

The Maps app becomes more interesting and conveys more information when you employ the Labs feature. You might find handy the additions that Labs makes to the map, or you might find them annoying. Follow these steps to figure out whether you enjoy the Labs additions:



- 1. Open the Maps app.**
- 2. Press the Menu soft button.**
- 3. Choose More.**
- 4. Choose Labs.**

You see a list of options you can add to the Map display. The list shows quite a few of them, and descriptions are provided in the list.

- 5. Choose a Labs item to add to the map.**

The item is added right away, and you can play with it or see it in action.

All features have their benefits, but some of them (Terrain Layer and Traffic, for example) slow things down.

The Scale bar is useful, especially when you plan to do a lot of walking, as I do.



The Android Market app named Compass also serves as a virtual compass for the Nexus One. See Chapter 19 for more information about the Android Market.

The Phone Is Your Copilot

The best way to put the Maps app to work is when you’re lost or looking for something. You can use Maps to locate people, places, and things. After something is found, your phone tells you how to get to it turn-by-turn. So even when you don’t know where you are or where you’re going, the Nexus One can help.

Locating your address

The Maps app shows your location as a compass arrow on the screen. But *where* is that? I mean, if you need to phone a tow truck, you can't just say, "I'm the blue dot on the orange slab by the green thing."

Well, you *can* say that, but it probably won't do any good.

To see your current street address, or any street address, long-press a location on the Maps screen. Up pops a bubble, similar to the one shown in Figure 14-3, which gives your approximate address.



Figure 14-3: Finding an address.

If you touch the address bubble, shown in the figure, you see a screen full of interesting things you can do at or near the location you've long-pressed.



Show the location on the map again. (Basically, return to the main Maps screen.)



Get directions to the location.



Call the business, providing that the Maps app recognizes the business and has its phone contact information available.



See the Google street view of that location, similar to what's shown in Figure 14-4.

You can also choose options to see what's nearby or search for nearby business or points of interest:

Buzz about this place: Share your thoughts using Google Buzz social networking.

Share this place: Write an email, text message, or send info about the location to a social networking site.

Add as a contact: Create a new contact for the business or location.

What's Nearby?: Display a list of nearby businesses or points of interest.

Search Nearby: Use the Search command to locate businesses, people, or points of interest near the given location.

When in Street view (refer to Figure 14-4), you can browse around the locale, pan and tilt, and zoom in on details to familiarize yourself with the area, for example, whether you're familiarizing yourself with a location or wanting to commit a burglary.



Press the Back button to return to the regular Map view from Street view.



Figure 14-4: Street view.

Finding locations on the map

The Maps app can help you find places in the real world just like the Browser app helps you find places on the Internet. The operation works basically the same:



Open the Maps app and press the Search soft button. You can type a variety of terms into the Search box, as explained next.

Look for a specific addresses

Type in an address to locate that address — for example:

1600 Pennsylvania Ave., Washington, D.C., 20006

Touch the Search button on the onscreen keyboard, and that location is then shown on the map. The next step is getting directions, which you can read about in the later section “Getting directions.”



- ✓ You don't need to type the entire address. Often times, all you need is the street number, street name, and then either city name or zip code.
- ✓ If you omit the city name or zip code, the Nexus One looks for the closest matching address near your current location.

Look for a type of business, restaurant, or point of interest

You may not know an address, but you do know when you crave sushi or Tex-Mex or perhaps a nice Tandoori grill. Maybe you need a hotel or gas station. To find a business entity or point of interest, type its name into the Search box — for example:

Movie theater

This command flags movie theaters on the current Maps screen or nearby.



Set your current location, as described earlier in this chapter, to find things near you. Otherwise, the Maps app looks for them near the area you see on the screen.

You can be specific and look for businesses near a certain location by specifying the city name, district, or zip code, such as in this example:

Sushi 92123

After typing this search command and touching the Search button, you see a smattering of sushi restaurants found in my old neighborhood back in San Diego, similar to the ones shown in Figure 14-5.



Figure 14-5: Search results for sushi in Kearny Mesa.

To see more information about a result, touch its cartoon bubble, such as Haruya Sake & Sushi (refer to Figure 14-5). The screen that appears offers more information, plus perhaps even a Web site and phone number. You can choose the Get Directions command to get driving directions; see the later section “Getting directions.”



- ✓ Each letter or dot on the screen represents a search result.
- ✓ Use the Zoom controls or spread your fingers to zoom in to the map.
- ✓ You can create a contact for the location, to keep it as a part of your Contacts list: After touching the location balloon, choose the command Add Contact. The contact is created using known data about the business, including its location, phone number, and even Web page address — if that information is available.

Look for a contact's location

You can hone in on where your contacts are located by using the map. This trick works when you've specified a location for a contact, either home or work or another location, similar to the one shown in Figure 14-6.



The key to finding a contact's location is the little pushpin icon shown in the figure (and the margin). Just about any time you see that icon, you can touch it to view that location using the Maps app.

Getting directions

One of the commands associated with locations on the map is Get Directions. Here's how to use it:

1. **Touch a location's cartoon bubble displayed by an address, contact, or business or from the result of a map search.**



2. **Touch the Get Directions button.**
3. **Choose Get Directions.**

You see an input screen, similar to the one shown in Figure 14-7. The Nexus One already has chosen your current location (where the phone is) as the starting point, and the thing you searched for, or are viewing on the map, as the destination.

4. **To change the start point, touch the button to the right of the Start Point text box (refer to Figure 14-7).**

Or, you can type a starting point.

5. **To change the destination, touch the button to the right of the Destination text box (refer to Figure 14-7).**

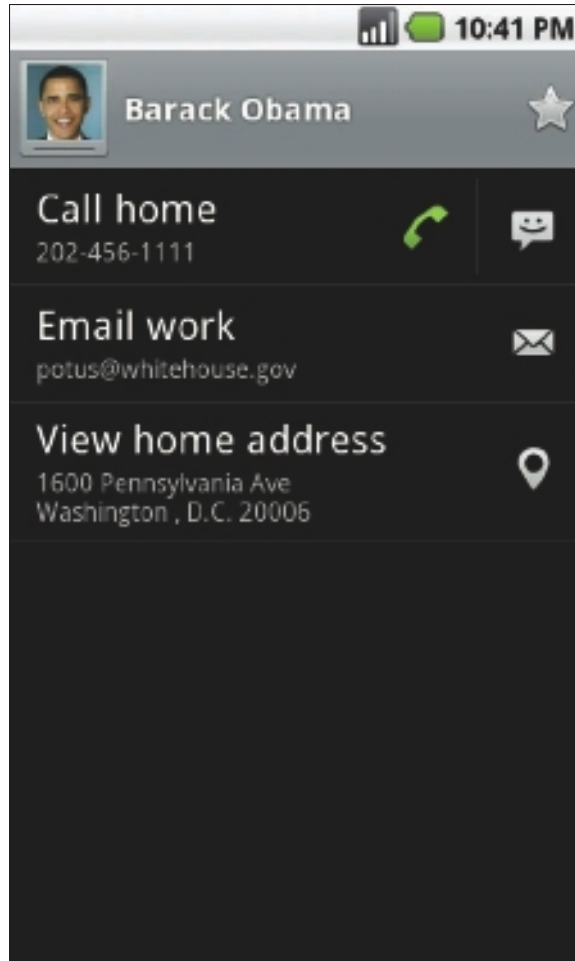


Figure 14-6: Finding a contact's location.

6. Choose your method of transportation: car, public transportation, or walking.

The public transportation and walking options aren't available for all locations.

7. Touch the Go button.

A list of directions appears on the phone's screen.

8. Follow the directions to get where you want to go.



Figure 14-7: Going from here to there.

The directions appear as a list, which you can follow line by line.

You can choose the Show on Map command to view your trail on the map. Zoom in to see more detail.

You can also choose the Navigate option, which lets your phone dictate the list of directions to you as you travel. See the next section.

Navigating to your destination

When you'd rather not see a list of directions to get to a destination, you can activate the Nexus One Navigation mode. In that mode, the phone shows you an interactive map that shows your current location and turn-by-turn directions for reaching your final location. Navigation mode also dictates verbally how far you are to go, when to turn, and other nagging advice, just like a backseat driver — albeit an accurate one.



To use navigation, choose the Navigation option from any list of directions. Or, touch the Navigation icon, shown in the margin.

After choosing Navigation, sit back and have the phone dictate your directions. You can simply listen, or glance at the phone to get an update of where you're heading.



- ✓ To stop navigation, press the Menu soft button and choose the Exit Navigation command.
- ✓ If you tire of hearing the Navigation voice, press the Menu soft button and choose the Mute command.
- ✓ In Navigation mode, the phone uses a lot of battery power. The phone doesn't dim when you travel long distances; the touch screen remains active. Voice commands also put a drain on battery life. See Chapter 22 for more information on maintaining the phone's battery.



Adding a navigation shortcut to the Home screen

When there are places you go often — such as home — you can save the time spent inputting all the navigation information by creating a navigation shortcut on the Home screen. Here's how:

1. Long-press a blank part of the Home screen.

You can use any part of the Home screen: left, right, far left, and far right.

2. From the pop-up menu, choose Shortcuts.

3. Choose Directions & Navigation.

4. Type a contact's name, address, destination, or business in the text box.

As you type, suggestions appear in a list. You can choose a suggestion to save yourself from typing.

5. Choose a travelling method.

Refer to Figure 14-7 for your options.

6. Scroll down a bit, optionally, to type a shortcut name.

7. Choose, optionally, an icon for the shortcut.

8. Touch the Save button.

The navigation shortcut is placed on the Home screen.

To use the shortcut, simply touch it on the Home screen. Instantly, the Maps app begins Navigation mode, steering you from wherever you are to the location referenced by the shortcut.

- ✓ Also see Chapter 21 for additional information on creating Home screen shortcuts.
- ✓ I keep all my navigation shortcuts in one place, on the far right Home screen.

Where are your friends?

One feature of Google Maps is *Latitude*. This social network program allows you to share your physical location with your friends, who are also assumed to be using Latitude. That makes it easier to know where your friends are, and makes it possible to meet up. Or, I suppose it also makes it possible to avoid them. It's all up to you.

To join Latitude, you press the Menu soft button when viewing a map and then choose the Join Latitude command. Read the information and then touch the Allow & Share button to continue. If you don't see the Join Latitude

command, you've already joined; start Latitude by choosing the Latitude command.

Two things must happen for Latitude to work: You add friends to Latitude, and those friends also use Latitude. After adding Latitude friends, you can share your location with them and view their locations on a map. You can also chat using Google Talk, swap e-mail, find directions to their locations, and do other interesting things.

To disable Latitude, press the Menu soft button when Latitude is active and choose the Privacy command. Choose the option Turn Off Latitude.

Say “Cheese”

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using the phone’s camera
- ▶ Taking a still picture
- ▶ Looking at the picture you just shot
- ▶ Adding picture effects
- ▶ Shooting video with the phone
- ▶ Previewing your video
- ▶ Changing video options

The expression “Say ‘cheese’” is often used before a picture is snapped, ensuring that the people in the picture position their mouths in a smile. Other, similar expressions are used around the world. In China they say “eggplant,” in Iran they say “apple,” in Spain they say “potato,” and so on. Perhaps the most interesting phrase comes from Russia, where they say “boobs.” I’m not making that up.

The Nexus One comes with a built-in 5-megapixel camera. The camera can capture still images or video, and it can even take pictures at night thanks to the built-in flash. The camera not only records the image, it also records where you took the image. Yet with all that amazing technology, you’ll probably still cut off people’s heads in pictures or capture your friends with their eyes half-open in those famous “I’m drunk” photos that wind up on Facebook. This chapter shows you how.



The Phone Has a Camera

I have no idea how or when cellphones became digital cameras. To me, no urgent connection seems to exist between the need to speak with someone on the phone and the desire to snap a picture. It would be like trying to combine the features and utility of a blender with a pair of tweezers. Sure, you could — but why?

Of course, having a built-in camera on the Nexus One means that you have one less thing to take with you on vacation — or anywhere.

Taking a picture



Camera

To use the Nexus One as a camera, you need to know that the back of the phone has the lens. To take a picture, you hold the phone away from your face, which I hear is hell to do when you have bifocals. Before doing that, you start the Camera app, whose icon is shown in the margin.

The Camera app dwells on the immediate left Home screen. You can also access the Camera app from the Launcher. After starting the app, you see the main camera screen, as illustrated in Figure 15-1.

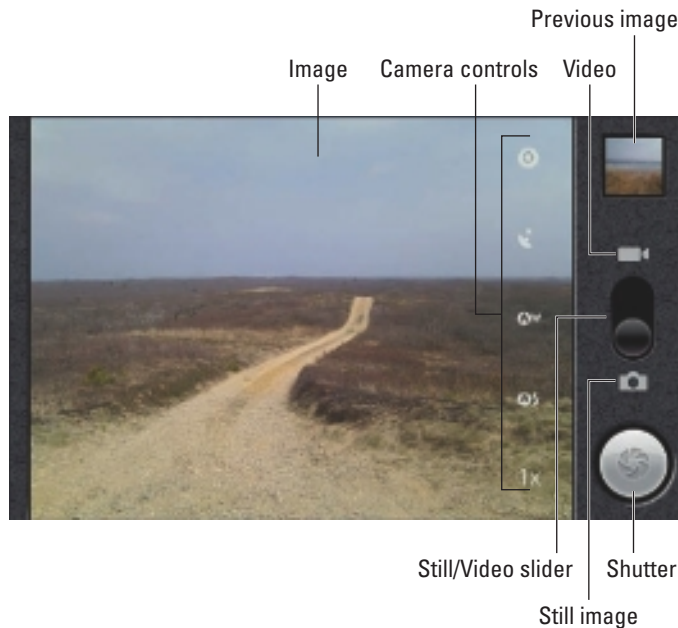


Figure 15-1: Your phone as a camera.

To take a picture, point the camera at the subject and touch the Shutter button, shown in the figure. As on other digital cameras, the shutter doesn’t snap instantly when you take the picture; the camera takes a moment to focus, the flash may go off, and then you hear the shutter sound effect.

For a second, the picture you just snapped appears on the phone’s touch screen. Then the phone returns to Camera mode and you can take more pictures.



- ✓ See the next section on how to review the image you’ve just taken.
- ✓ The phone can be used as a camera in either landscape or portrait orientation. The frame and Shutter button don’t reorient themselves, though the previous image and other icons on the screen rotate in a droll manner.
- ✓ The camera focuses automatically. There’s nothing else you need to do with regard to focusing other than point the camera at the subject.
- ✓ You can take as many pictures with the Nexus One as you like, as long as you don’t run out of storage for those pictures on the phone’s MicroSD card.
- ✓ You can use the Gallery to manage images and delete those you don’t want. See Chapter 16 for more information about the Gallery.
- ✓ You can also delete an image right after you snap the picture; see the next section.
- ✓ The Nexus One not only takes a picture — it also keeps track of where you were located on Planet Earth when you took the picture. See Chapter 16 for information on reviewing a photograph’s location.
- ✓ If your pictures appear blurry, ensure that the camera lens on the back of the Nexus One isn’t dirty. Also confirm that the phone’s back cover is seated properly.
- ✓ Refer to Figure 1-4, in Chapter 1, for the location of the camera on the back of the Nexus One.
- ✓ The Nexus One stores pictures in the JPEG image file format. Images are stored in the DCIM/Camera folder on the MicroSD card; they have the JPG filename extension.



Reviewing the picture

All the pictures you take with your camera can be accessed using the Gallery program, which is covered in Chapter 16. Even so, immediately after you take a picture, you’re given a chance to review it as well as other recent pictures.

To review the image you just took, touch the Previous Image button (refer to Figure 15-1). You see the image as it's saved in the Gallery, which is covered in Chapter 16, though there are a few immediate things you can do with the image:

- ✓ **Share.** Touch the Share button to send the image with the world. You can choose options to email the image, share it on Facebook or Twitter, send the image to your Google Picasa gallery, and so on.
- ✓ **Delete.** Touch the Delete button to remove an image that doesn't meet your liking. Choose the menu item Confirm Delete to get rid of the pic.
- ✓ **More.** The More button displays a menu of image options, all of which are covered in Chapter 16.

To return back to the Camera app, touch the large Camera icon nestled in the upper right corner of the touch screen.



- ✓ Deleting an image frees up the space it used on the phone's MicroSD card.
- ✓ There's no easy or obvious way to undelete an image, so be careful! In fact:
- ✓ I recommend that you do your deleting and other photo management duties by using the Gallery app, discussed in Chapter 16.
- ✓ By pressing the Share button, you can instantly share the image with friends on the Internet. You can share via e-mail or text message or by using social networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter, if you have the Nexus One configured for use with those apps. Other options, such as sharing with the Picasa photo-sharing Web site, might also appear on the Share button's list.
- ✓ How you share a photo depends on where you want the image to end up. See Chapter 9 for information on sending multimedia text messages; Chapter 10 covers e-mail and Gmail, and Chapter 12 goes into Facebook and Twitter.



- ✓ The next time you're face-to-face with a contact, remember to snap the person's picture. Use the picture review window's Set As button to assign the image as the contact's photo — with the contact's permission, of course.

Adjusting the camera

Your Nexus One is more of a phone than a camera. Still, it has various camera adjustments you can make. The adjustment controls are found floating over the image on the Camera app, lined up on the right (refer to Figure 15-1). You make an adjustment by touching one of those teensy white icons and choosing an item from a menu that pops up.

From top-to-bottom, here are the various camera controls that you can mess with:

Settings: Two items are found here, Focus Mode and Exposure index. The two focus modes are Auto and Infinity. When choosing Auto, the phone automatically sets the focus, and it’s pretty good at it. Use the Infinity focus setting when taking a picture of something far away, to ensure that it stays in focus. Examples are taking a picture through a window or when a large object, such as your former mother-in-law, looms in the foreground.

The Exposure index items allow you to over- or under-expose the image when the lighting conditions get strange, or when you’re taking pictures of strange relatives.



Location: The Location option uses the phone’s GPS (Global Positioning System) and satellites in orbit to record the exact longitude and latitude where a picture was taken. (You can read more about this feature in Chapter 16.)

White Balance: The White Balance settings adjust the camera when used in special lighting conditions. For example, choosing the Fluorescent option automatically adjusts images so that they don’t show up with a green tint when shot with fluorescent lighting. Normally this option should be set to Auto.

Flash Mode: The camera has three flash modes:



Auto: In this mode, the camera determines whether the flash goes off. Sometimes it does, like when it’s dark, and sometimes it doesn’t, like when you’re taking a picture of the sun.



On: The flash always blinds your victims.



Off: The flash never goes off, even in the dark.

Zoom: Use the Zoom settings to magnify the image. (It’s not a true optical zoom, but it merely takes a portion of your picture and makes it larger, which is kinda-sorta like a zoom as far as cell phone cameras are concerned.)



- ✓ The tiny control icons on the screen (refer to Figure 15-1) change to indicate the various settings you’ve made. For example, 1X means you’re not using the zoom. Of course, you can always quickly check a setting simply by touching one of the icons.
- ✓ You can force a flash by choosing On for the flash mode. That way, dark objects in the foreground show up against a light background, such as when taking a picture of someone in front of a bright window.

You Ought to Be on Video

When the action is hot, when you need to capture more than a moment and maybe the sounds, switch the Nexus One camera into Video Capture mode. Doing so may not turn you into the next Stephen Spielberg because I hear he uses an iPhone to make his films.

Recording video



Camera

Video chores on the Nexus One are handled by the same Camera app used to take still images. Yep, it's the same app, and the same camera found on the back of the phone. The secret to taking a video is to first set the camera to Video mode:

After starting the Camera app, slide the Still/Video slider to the Video setting. After a moment, the screen changes to show Video Camera mode, depicted in Figure 15-2.



Start shooting the video by touching the Record button.

When recording, you see a red dot in the lower left corner of the screen (refer to Figure 15-2). You also see a timer ticking away (also in the lower left corner of the screen), which tells you the video's duration.

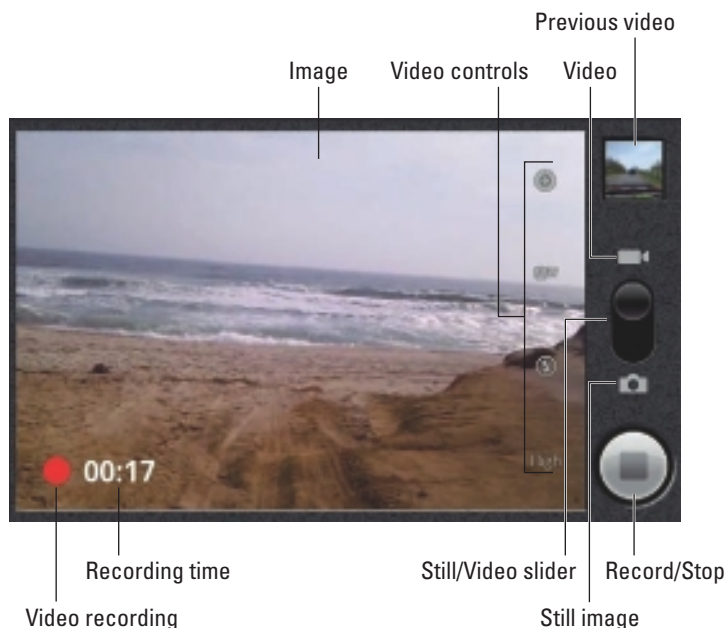


Figure 15-2: Your phone is a video camera.



To stop recording, touch the Stop button.

The video is stored on the phone’s MicroSD card. You can watch the video immediately by touching the Previous Video button (refer to Figure 15-2). Otherwise, the phone is ready to shoot another video.



✓ See the next section for more information on previewing a recently shot video.

✓ Chapter 16 covers the Gallery app, which is used to view and manage the videos stored on your phone.

✓ Hold the phone steady! The camera still works when you whip around the phone, but such wild gyrations render the video unwatchable.

✓ You can record about ten minutes of video, though that length can be limited by how much storage space is available on the MicroSD card. You can also set the maximum recording length as described in the section “Making various video options,” later in this chapter.



✓ The video is stored on the Nexus One MicroSD card using the Third Generation Partnership Project video file format. The video files stored on the phone, in the DCIM/Camera folder, have the GP filename extension.

Reviewing your movie

To instantly review your video masterpiece, touch the Previous Video button (refer to Figure 15-2). You see a screen similar to the one in Figure 15-3. Touch the Play button to review the video.

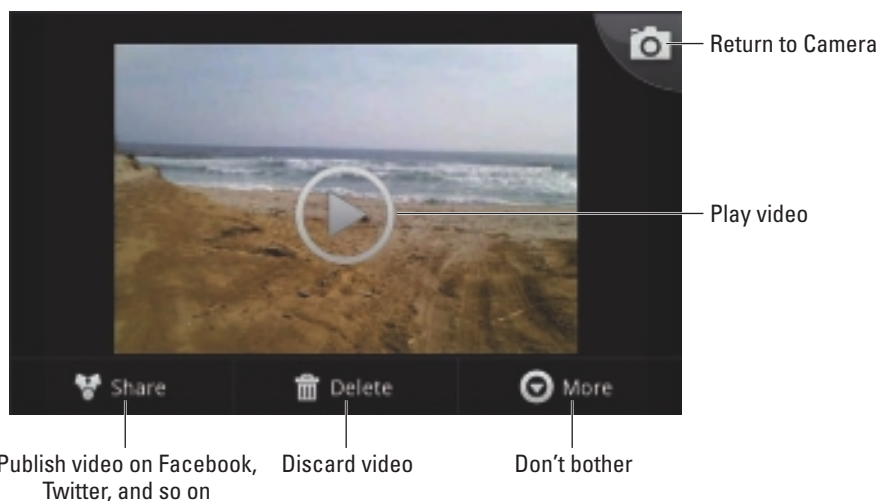


Figure 15-3: Reviewing a recent video.

The video plays in a second window, shown in Figure 15-4. Use the controls in that window to view your video, as described in the figure.



Figure 15-4: Watching a video.

Summon the controls shown in the figure at any time by touching the screen.



When your video is done playing, you return to the main preview window (refer to Figure 15-3). Or, you can return there at any time by pressing the Back soft button.

Touch the Camera button (refer to Figure 15-3) to return to the Camera app and record another video.



- ✓ You can “scrub” the video by dragging the current position slider (refer to Figure 15-4).
- ✓ The Delete button (refer to Figure 15-3) can be used to instantly delete the video you just recorded. After touching the Delete button, choose Confirm Delete to confirm deleting the video.
- ✓ Though deleting a video frees up storage space on the phone’s MicroSD card, it’s not easy or obvious to undelete or recover a video that’s been deleted.

- ✓ Though it's handy to review your video instantly, your best option for viewing and managing videos is to use the Gallery app, discussed in Chapter 16.
- ✓ The Share button can be used to publish your video on the Internet. Options available for sharing include Facebook, Twitter, MMS (described next), e-mail, Gmail, YouTube, and others.
- ✓ When composing a video for a multimedia text message (MMS), be sure to set the video quality to Low and the duration to 30 seconds. See the next section.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 16 for information on publishing your video to YouTube.

Setting various video options

A smattering of settings can be made to adjust the way the Nexus One records video. Access these settings by touching the control icons that appear on the right side of the touch screen when you shoot a video (refer to Figure 15-2).

Going from the top down, here are the four controls available for various video settings:

Color Effect: The items found here are mostly for color special effects, such as sepia tone or the ever-popular Solarize and Posterize.

White Balance: The options for the White Balance setting help adjust the image's colors when shooting under certain light conditions, such as indoor fluorescent lighting or cloudy.

Flash Mode: There are two options for flash mode: On and Off. When On, the Nexus One's camera flash is on all the time, helping illuminate dark subjects (but also draining the battery faster).

Video Quality: The phone has four options for video quality:

High (30m): The video is recorded in high quality and up to 30 minutes can be recorded at a time.

Low (30m): The video is recorded at a low quality, up to 30 minutes in length.

MMS (Low, 30s): The video is recorded in low quality for up to 30 seconds. This is a good setting for sending MMS videos.

YouTube (High, 10m): The video is recorded in high quality for a maximum of 10 minutes, which is exactly ideal for YouTube.

The teensy icons on the viewer (refer to Figure 15-2) change to reflect the current settings. Or you can always touch a control icon to review the settings.

- ✔ Do you really need to record for a full 30 minutes? Well, I would do so if a better camera wasn't available and a large seaborne monster was chasing me through the streets of Manhattan.
- ✔ The sepia color effect is good for making videos look old-timey. Well, actually, a true old-time video would be in monochrome. The negative color effect is creepy.

A Digital Louvre

In This Chapter

- ▶ Viewing images and videos stored on your phone
 - ▶ Editing an image
 - ▶ Finding an image's location
 - ▶ Working with groups of images and videos
 - ▶ Sending an image through e-mail
 - ▶ Sharing an image with Facebook
 - ▶ Adding an image to your Picasa albums
 - ▶ Publishing a video on YouTube
-

It surprised me to find that the Louvre is not the largest museum in the world. It's the largest *single* museum, but the title for largest museum goes to the Hermitage in Saint Petersburg, Russia. The largest museum *complex* is the Smithsonian in the United States. Still, there's something endearing about the Louvre, with its miles of famous paintings and historical works of art.

Your camera contains its own museum, a place where you can review images and movies you've taken with your Nexus One. You can also review images transferred to your phone from your computer or some other gizmo. The name of the app is Gallery, and though it may never rival the Louvre for popularity or fame, it holds images dear to your heart, which you no doubt will view often and share with others.



A Gallery of Images

Pictures and videos you shoot with your phone aren't lost forever. Nope, they're stored on the MicroSD card. After stored or created there, you can access them from the Gallery app, where you can view them or edit them or do a number of other interesting things.

Perusing the Gallery



To access images and videos on your Nexus One, you start the Gallery app. It can be found just to the left of the main Home screen, or you can open the Gallery app icon from the Launcher.

When the Gallery opens, you see images organized into nifty little piles, as shown in Figure 16-1. Call the piles *albums*.

The album names depend on the image or video source, as shown in the figure. Also, you find any Picasa albums you've created and have synced on your phone from your Google account.

Touch an album to open it and view the pictures it contains, as shown in Figure 16-2. You can scroll left or right by flicking your finger on the touch screen, or you can use the slider gizmo to pan images left or right.

To view an image, touch it with your finger. The image appears in full size on the screen, and you can tilt the phone to the left to see the image in another orientation.

You can view more images in the album by swiping your finger left or right.



Videos appear with a Play Button icon, shown in the margin. Touching the Play Button icon plays the video. Refer to Figure 15-4, in Chapter 15, for information on how to work the video-playing screen.

Touching a full-screen image displays some information and menu options, as shown in Figure 16-3. Most of the options displayed are covered in the two later sections "Working with pictures" and "Sharing your pictures and videos."

When your fingers tire of swiping images, touch the Slideshow button. The Nexus One displays each image in the album on the screen for a few moments and then dissolves the image to display the next one. Touch the screen to stop the slideshow.

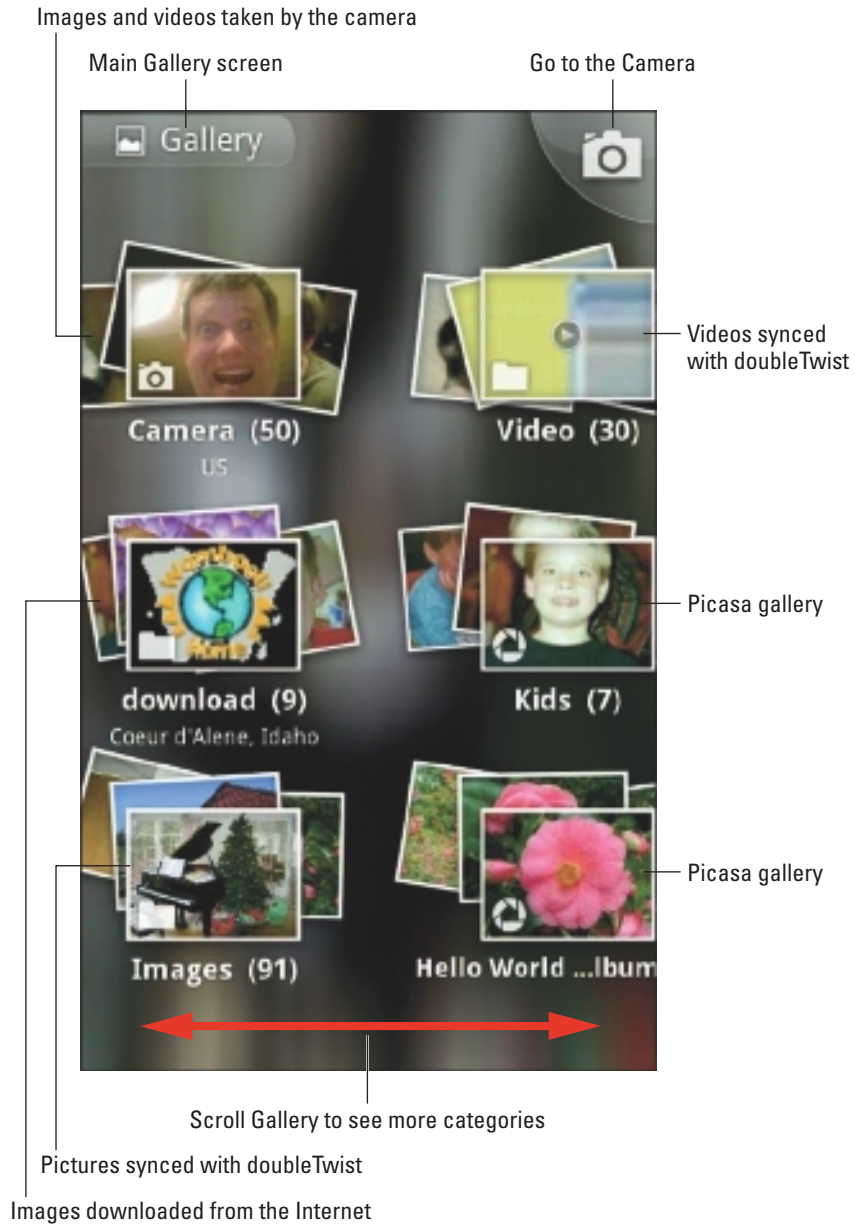


Figure 16-1: The Gallery main screen.

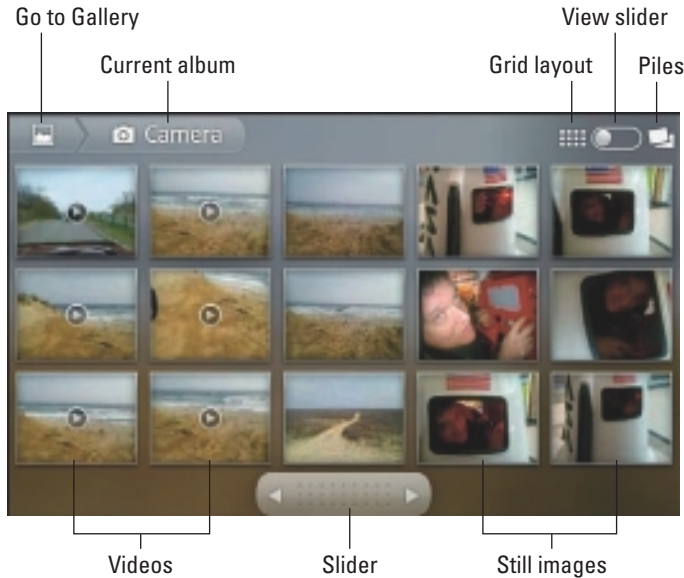


Figure 16-2: Viewing an album.

To return to the album, press the Back soft button. Or, you can touch an image and choose an album from the top of the screen (refer to Figure 16-3).

- ✔ Visit the Picasa Web site, which is part of your Google account, at www.picasa.com.
- ✔ Your public albums on the Picasa site are automatically synced with your Nexus One.
- ✔ See Chapter 13 for more information about doubleTwist, which can be used to copy images and videos from your computer to the Nexus One. In Figure 16-1, the Images and Video albums were created by doubleTwist and contain images copied over from my computer.
- ✔ The view slider, located in the upper right corner of an album (refer to Figure 16-2), can be used to switch between Grid view, shown in the figure, and the view where images are organized into piles by date.
- ✔ When previewing an image, you can double-tap the screen to zoom in and then double-tap again to zoom back out.
- ✔ You can touch the Image Info part of the screen, shown in Figure 16-3, to toggle between the image number in the album and the image's filename.

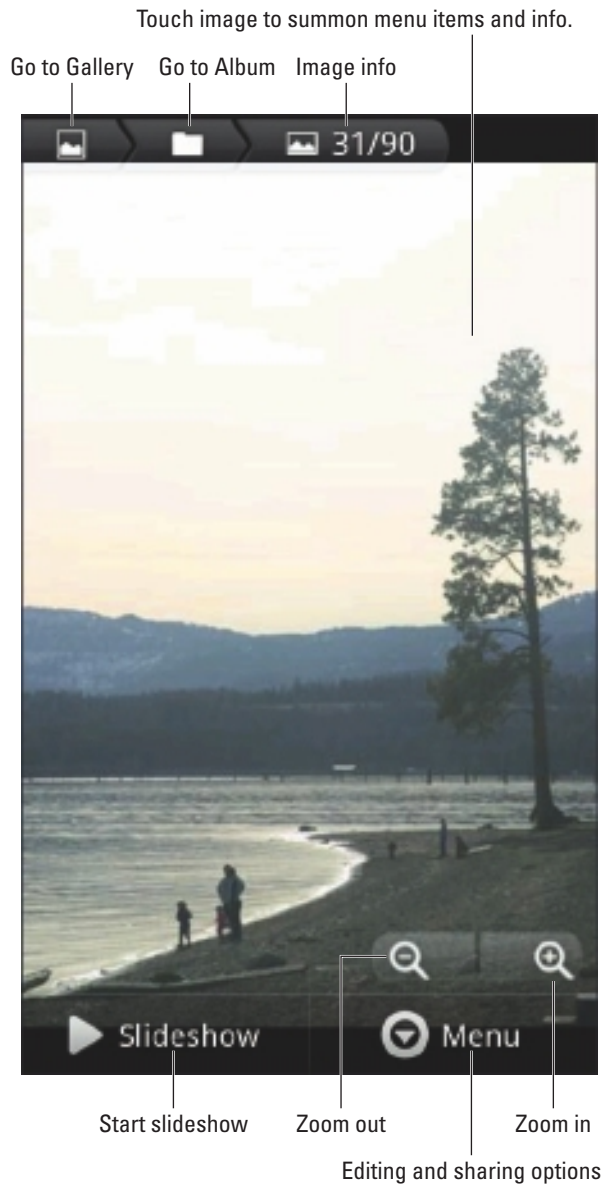


Figure 16-3: More information for an image.

Working with pictures

The Gallery serves as a way to manage the pictures stored on your Nexus One. To individually manipulate an image, summon it in the Gallery as described in the preceding section. Tap the screen to display the onscreen Menu (refer to Figure 16-3). Touching the Menu button displays three additional options: Share, Delete, and More, shown in Figure 16-4.



Figure 16-4: Options for messing with an image.

This figure also shows the image editing commands available when you touch the More button.

You can do these things with a single image in the Gallery:

Share an image. See the later section “Sharing your pictures and videos” for details.

Delete an image. Touch the Delete button to remove the image you’re viewing. You’re prompted before the image is removed; touch the Confirm Delete option to delete the image.

Find where you took the image. As long as the phone was able to access the GPS network when you took the picture, you can view where the image was taken by choosing the Show on Map command. Figure 16-5 shows the location where I took the image shown in Figures 15-1.

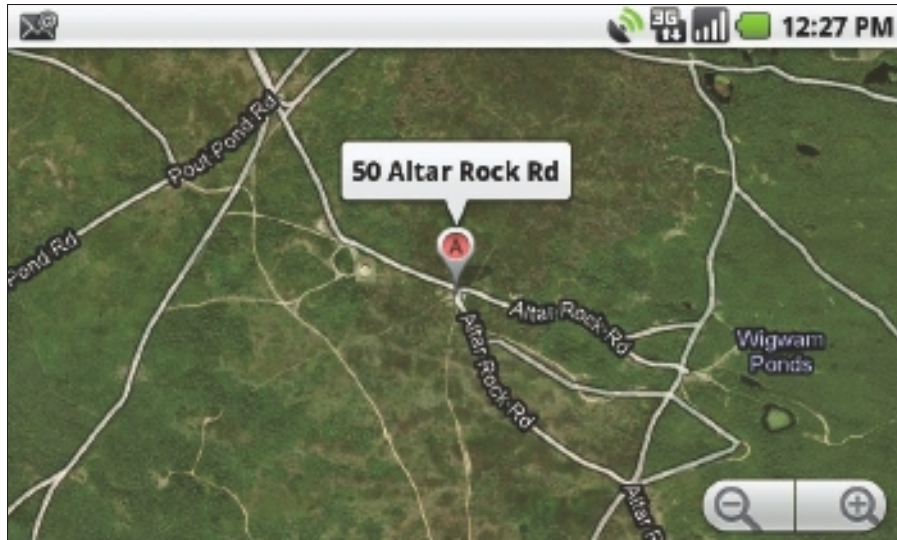


Figure 16-5: The spot on Earth where an image was snapped.



To return to the image, press the Back soft button after viewing the map.

Use an image for a contact or as wallpaper. Touch the More button and choose the Set As command to apply the image you're viewing to a contact or to set that image as the Home screen's background or wallpaper.

The Gallery offers these three simple image-editing commands:

Crop: Choose the crop command to slice out portions of an image, such as when removing an unwanted relative or a former paramour from a family portrait. Figure 16-6 illustrates how to use the cropping thing that appears on the screen. Choose the Save command to keep the portion of the image that dwells within the orange rectangle.

Rotate Left, Rotate Right: These commands help you reorient an image that doesn't display properly on the screen. These orientation issues can be obnoxious on a phone like the Nexus One, which switches between landscape and portrait orientation. A quick touch of either the Rotate Left or Rotate Right command fixes the wayward image's sense of which way is up.

For more image editing, you need the power of a full computer. Images can be transferred to a computer from your phone and then back again. Refer to Chapter 13 for more information.

- ✓ See the next section for information on working with images in groups.
- ✓ To delete a video, you must first select it. Selecting media is covered in the next section.
- ✓ GPS stands for *global positioning system*. The Nexus One uses this technology to access satellite information for the Maps app.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 14 for more information on using the Nexus One Maps app.
- ✓ Only images with GPS information stored in them feature the Show on Map command on the More menu.
- ✓ Yes, it's true: You cannot edit images available on your phone in shared Picasa albums. Other albums might also be stored on your Nexus One where image deleting, cropping, or rotating is forbidden.

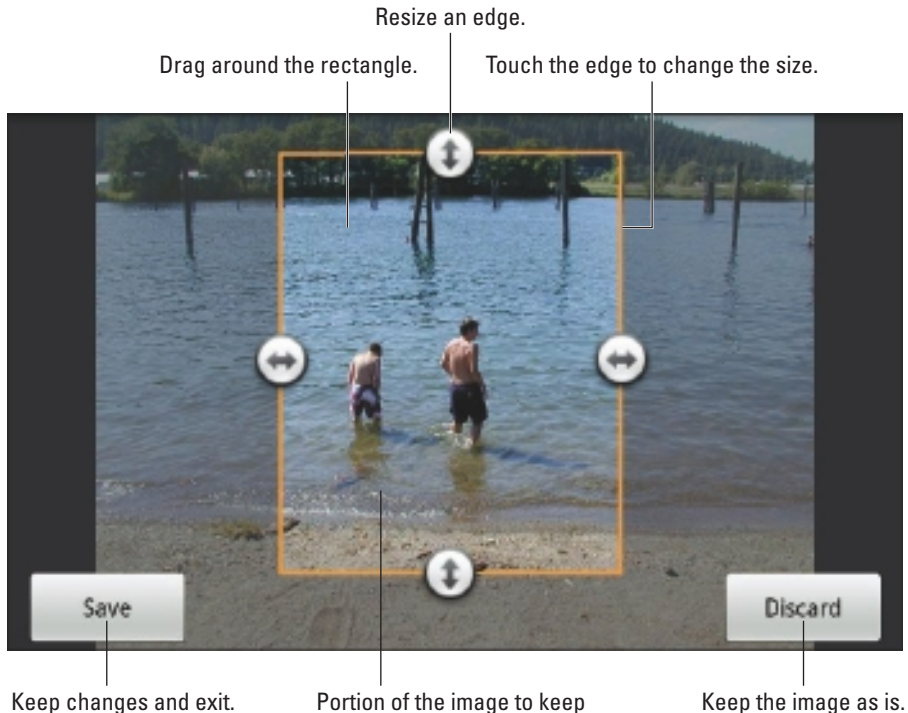


Figure 16-6: Working the crop thing.

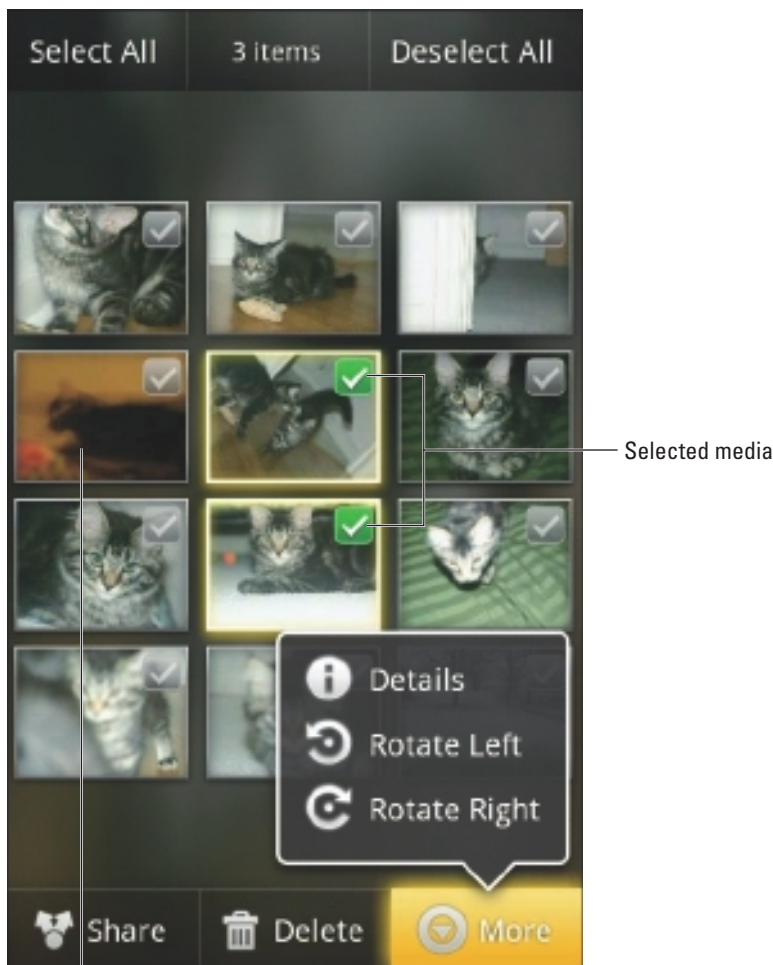
Managing images and videos in groups

Because some albums can grow quite huge, the Gallery app features a handy way for you to work with multiple images at a time. Similar to the way you select multiple files on your computer, you can select multiple images and

videos in the Gallery. Then you can delete or share the group of images or rotate the lot of them. It's like square dancing, but with digital pictures.

To manage images as well as videos, open a Gallery album. Long-press an image to select it. That image is crowned with a green check mark and all other images grow check mark buttons, as shown in Figure 16-7. You also see some menu items, as shown in the figure.

Keep touching more images to select them. The commands you use affect all selected images.



Touch any image to activate selection mode.

Figure 16-7: Choosing multiple images.

Here are the things you can do with selected images:

Share. Touch the Share button to send off selected images to various places on the Internet or by e-mail. Refer to the next section for details.

Delete. Touch the Delete button to remove selected images from the phone's MicroSD card. The Confirm Delete command appears after you choose Delete; touch that command to delete the selected items.

Rotate. To rotate a swath of selected images, touch the More button and choose the appropriate command — Rotate Left or Rotate Right. The Rotate command applies only to images, not to video files.



When you're done messing with images, press the Back soft button to return to regular Album view.



- ✓ The number of selected images appears at the top center of the screen. (Refer to the *Three items* callout in Figure 16-7.) Keep an eye on that number because you can easily select more images than you can see on the screen — especially in very large albums.
- ✓ Use the Select All button at the top of the screen (refer to Figure 16-7) to mark all media in an album as selected.
- ✓ The Deselect All button at the top of the screen is used to remove the check marks from all images.
- ✓ Some options on the More menu show up only when one image is selected. See the preceding section for a review of available options.
- ✓ Selecting a video file as described in this section is the only way to remove video files from the Gallery. Unlike with an image file, no menu displays while the video is playing.
- ✓ You have no way to undelete an image or a video after you touch the Confirm Delete command.
- ✓ Using your phone to copy or move media files between galleries is impossible. You might be able to copy and move media files by accessing the Nexus One MicroSD card from a computer, as discussed in Chapter 13. I don't know whether such an operation works; even though I could figure it out, I'm not sure it's worth the effort.



Share Your Pics and Vids with the World

It's socially acceptable to share your phone's images and videos by queuing them up and then handing your phone to another human for their enjoyment. If you find this type of arrangement too real, you can choose to share the media on your phone in a more digital fashion on the Internet.

Refer to Chapter 13 for information on synchronizing and sharing information between the Nexus One and your computer.

Sharing your pictures and videos

Occasionally, you stumble across the Share command when working with photos and videos in the Gallery. That command is used to distribute images and videos from your Nexus One to your pals on the Internet.

The menu that pops up when you choose the Share command contains various options for sharing media, similar to the one shown in Figure 16-8. You may see more or fewer items on the Share menu, depending on the software you have installed on the Nexus One, the Internet services you belong to, and the type of media being shared.

The following sections describe media items you can choose from the menu and how the media is shared.

Bluetooth

Bluetooth is perhaps the most difficult way to share files, but it's first alphabetically, so I'm forced to talk about it up front. Without boring you: Use a USB cable to connect the phone directly to a computer rather than use Bluetooth for sharing media. See Chapter 13.

You may encounter a problem when file sharing using Bluetooth when the devices can pair just fine but they don't connect. Ensure that the second device (the one that isn't the Nexus One) has updated its Bluetooth drivers, and that should fix the problem.

Email and Gmail

After selecting one or more image or video, choose Email or Gmail from the Share menu to send the media files from the Nexus One as a message attachment. Fill in the To, Subject, and Message text boxes as necessary. Touch the Send button to send off the media.

- ✓ You may not be able to send video files as e-mail attachments. That's probably because some video files are humongous and not only take too long to send but also might exceed the size of the recipient's inbox.
- ✓ As an alternative to sending large video files, consider uploading them to YouTube instead. See the later section "Uploading a video to YouTube."
- ✓ There's no need to take pictures at the highest resolution when you merely plan to e-mail them. Refer to Chapter 15 for information on resetting the Nexus One camera to a lower resolution.



Facebook

To upload a mobile image or video to Facebook, choose the Facebook command from the Share menu. Type (or dictate) an optional caption. Touch the Upload button. Eventually, the media makes its way to Facebook, for all your friends to enjoy and make rude comments about.

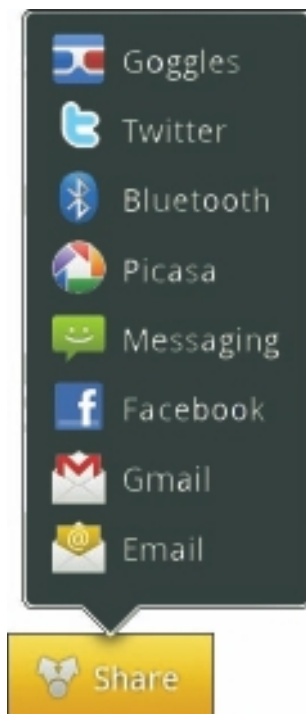


Figure 16-8: Sharing options for media.

Messaging

Media can be attached to text messages, which then becomes the famous multimedia messages (or MMS) that I write about in Chapter 9. After choosing the Messaging sharing option, input the contact name or phone number to which you want to send the media. Type a brief (optional) message. Touch the Send button to send off the message.



- ✓ Some images and videos may be too large to send as multimedia text messages.
- ✓ Not every cellphone can receive multimedia text messages.

Picasa

Perhaps the sanest way to share photos is to upload them to the Google's Picasa photo-sharing site. Heck, you probably already have a Picasa account synced with your Nexus One, so this option is perhaps the easiest and most obvious. Here's how it works:

1. **View a picture or select multiple pictures from an album.**
2. **Choose Picasa from the Share menu (refer to Figure 16-8).**
3. **Type a caption.**

An ugly filename may appear as the caption. Obviously you want to replace that filename with something more descriptive.

4. **Optionally, choose your Google account.**

When the file has been uploaded, you'll see an Upload Complete notification. That's your clue that the image has been sent to the Picasa Web site, and is ready for viewing there.

Because Picasa may automatically sync certain albums with your Nexus One, you can end up with two copies of the image on the phone. If so, you can delete the non-Picasa version of the image from its original gallery.



- ✓ Picasa is for sharing images only, not video.
- ✓ Your Google account automatically comes with access to Picasa. If you haven't yet set things up, visit picasaweb.google.com and get started.
- ✓ You can share images stored on the Picasa Web site by clicking the Share button found above each photo album.
- ✓ To make a Picasa album public, choose the Edit⇨Album Properties command, found just above the album. Choose Public from the pop-up menu found by the Share command in the Edit Album Information window.

Twitter

Images can be shared on the popular Twitter social networking site, but keep in mind that the Nexus One doesn't come with a Twitter client. You can obtain one, such as Twitter's own client or the popular Twidroid, by visiting the Android Market, covered in Chapter 19.

If you have a Twitter client installed, you can choose it as an option from the Sharing menu (refer to Figure 16-8). Choosing that option places the image on a Twitter image-sharing site, such as twitpic.com or twitgoo.com. You can then tweet that link on the next screen, along with perhaps 115 or so characters of text. Touch the Send button to tweet your image.

Well, the image isn't exactly tweeted. What's tweeted is the link, which other twits, er, Twitter users can click to see the image as hosted by Twitgoo.

Uploading a video to YouTube

The best way to share a video is to upload it to YouTube. As a Google account holder, you also have a YouTube account. You can use the YouTube app on the Nexus One along with your account to upload your phone's videos to the Internet, where everyone can see them and make rude comments. Here's how:

1. Activate the Wi-Fi connection for your Nexus One.

The best — the only — way to upload a video is to turn on the Wi-Fi connection, which is oodles faster than using the cellphone digital network. See Chapter 13 for information on how to turn on the Wi-Fi connection.



2. From the Launcher, choose the YouTube app.

3. Press the Menu soft button.

4. Choose the Upload command.

A special Gallery display appears, listing only the albums that contain videos.

5. Choose the video you want to upload.

Browse through the albums to look for the video you want to upload. Touch the video to select it.

6. Type a descriptive, brief title for the video.

7. Touch the More Details item to set more information about the video.

For example, you can choose which Google account to use (for when you have multiple accounts), type a video description, set whether the video is public or private, add one-word search tags, and so on.

8. Touch the Upload button.

The video continues to upload, even if the phone falls asleep.

Large videos take some time to upload.

Doh-dee-doh . . .

After uploading, you can view your video: Press the Menu soft button while you're using the YouTube app and choose the My Account command. If you don't see your recently uploaded video in the My Videos list, choose View All My Videos and you'll find it there.

You can share your video by sending its YouTube Web page link to your pals. I confess that this operation is easier when you use a computer, not a phone: Log in to YouTube on a computer to view your video. Use the Share button that appears near the video to share it by e-mail or Facebook or another service.



- ✓ Wi-Fi access drains battery power, so don't forget to turn it off when you no longer need it after uploading a video.
- ✓ *Upload* is the official term to describe sending a file from your phone to the Internet.
- ✓ See Chapter 18 for more information on using YouTube on your Nexus One.

Your Pocket Is Alive with the Sound of Music

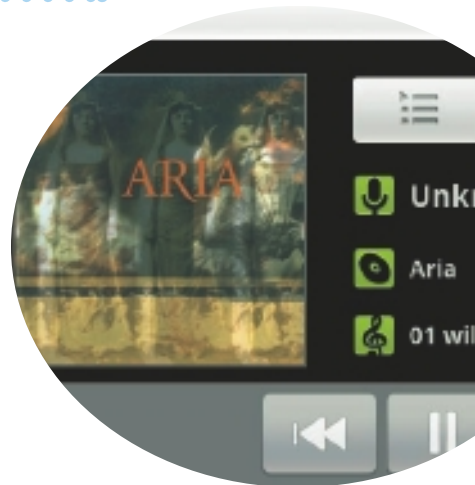
In This Chapter

- ▶ Checking into music on your Nexus One
 - ▶ Listening to a song
 - ▶ Entertaining with the Nexus One
 - ▶ Organizing your tunes into playlists
 - ▶ Making a new playlist
 - ▶ Managing your music
 - ▶ Moving music from your computer into the phone
 - ▶ Purchasing music using the Nexus One
-

You need not sit around bored and melancholy between phone calls. Rather than mind the tedium playing silly games or taking pictures of your hallux, you can listen to music. Yes, one of the innumerable Nexus One features is that it's also a portable music player, similar to that extremely popular device made by a fruit company, a gizmo that rhymes with "sky rod." Though cellphones that double as music players aren't as popular as the Sky Rod, they're equally capable and just as enjoyable.

Now Hear This!

The Nexus One is ready to entertain you with music whenever you want to hear it. Simply plug in the headphones, summon the Music app, and choose the tunes to match your mood. It's truly blissful — well, until someone calls you and the Nexus One ceases being a musical instrument and returns to being the ball-and-chain of the modern digital era.



Browsing your music library



Music Headquarters on your Nexus One is the app named, oddly enough, Music. You can start it by touching its icon on the main Home screen or rooting through the Launcher. Either way, you soon discover yourself at the main Music browsing screen, shown in Figure 17-1.

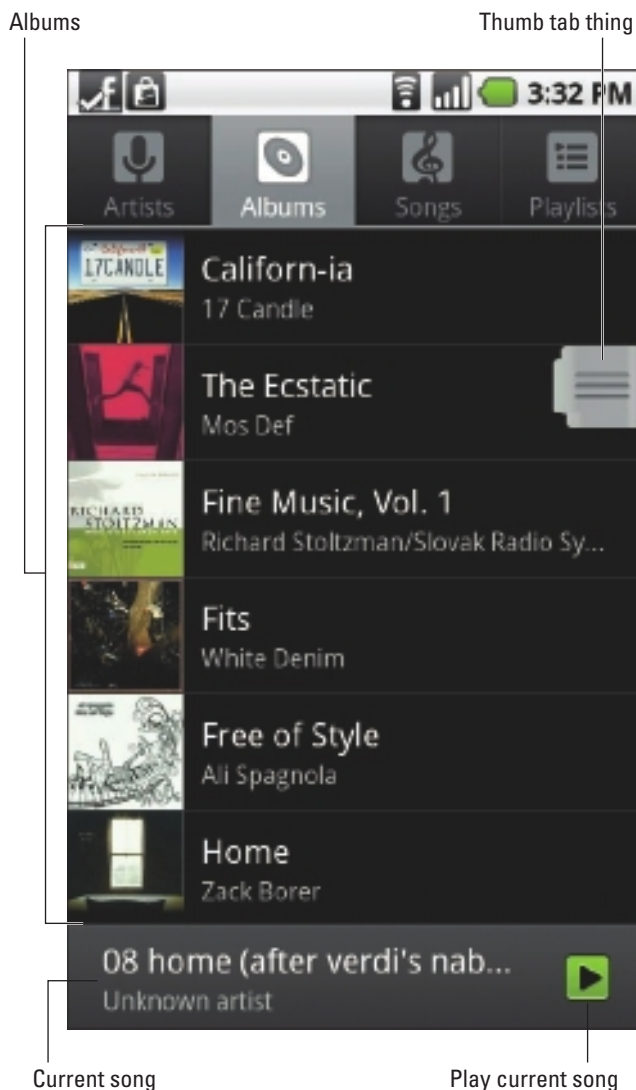


Figure 17-1: The Music library.

All the music stored on your phone can be viewed in four categories:

Artists: Songs are listed by the recording artist or group. Choose Artist to see the list of artists; then choose an artist to see their albums. Choosing an album displays the songs for that album. Some artists may have only one song, not in a particular album.

Albums: Songs are organized by album. Chose an album to list the songs on that album.

Songs: All songs are listed alphabetically.

Playlists: Only the songs you've organized into playlists are listed by their playlist name. Choose a playlist name to view songs organized in that playlist.

These categories are merely ways that the music is organized, ways of making it easier to find when you may know the name of an artist but not the album name or you may want to hear a song when you don't know who recorded it.

Playlists are lists you create yourself, organizing songs by favorite, theme, mood, or whatever you want. The section "Organize Your Music," later in this chapter, discusses playlists.



- ✓ Use the Thumb Tab thing (refer to Figure 17-1) to help you quickly scroll a long list of songs.
- ✓ Music is stored on the Nexus One MicroSD card.
- ✓ The size of the MicroSD card limits the total amount of music that can be stored on your phone. Also, consider that storing pictures and videos on your phone horns in on some of the space that can be used to store music.
- ✓ See the later section "More Music" for information on getting music into your phone.
- ✓ The Nexus One comes with a smattering of tunes preinstalled (refer to Figure 17-1).
- ✓ Album artwork generally appears on imported music as well as on music you purchase online. If an album doesn't have artwork, it cannot be manually added or updated.

Playing a tune

To listen to music on the Nexus One, you first find a song in the library, as described in the preceding section, and then you touch that song title. The song plays in another window, shown in Figure 17-2.

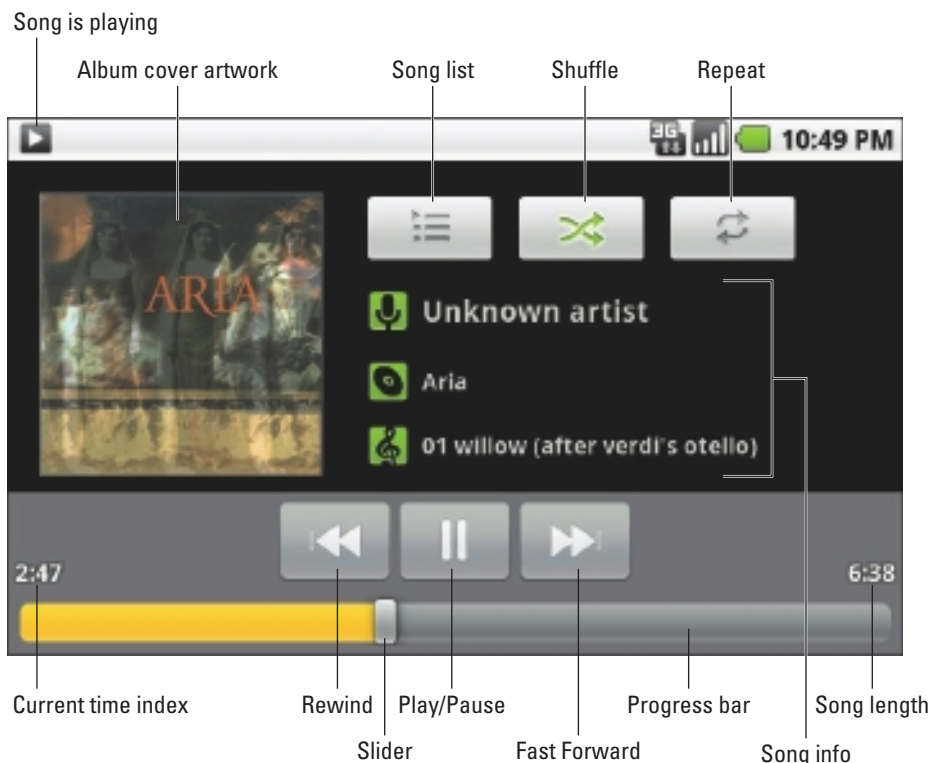


Figure 17-2: A song is playing.

While the song is playing, you're free to do anything else with the phone. In fact, the song continues to play even if the phone goes to sleep. You can just keep listening, a look that's cool wherever you go because you have earbuds in your ear and, obviously, you're a with-it person because you have a portable music player.

After the song is done playing, the next song in the list plays. Touch the Song List button (refer to Figure 17-2) to review the songs in the list; you can even rearrange the songs by dragging them around in the list.

The next song doesn't play if you have the Shuffle button activated (refer to Figure 17-2). In that case, the phone randomizes the songs in the list, so who knows which one is next?



The next song might not play either if you have the Repeat option on: Your phone has two repeat settings. The first one repeats all songs in the list. The second setting repeats the current song endlessly. When that setting is active, the Repeat button appears as depicted in the margin.

To stop the song from playing, touch the Pause button (refer to Figure 17-2).



When music plays on the phone, a notification icon appears, as shown in the margin. To quickly summon the Music app to see which song is playing — or to pause the song — pull down the notifications and choose the first item, which is the name of the song that's playing.



- ✓ Songs may play when you choose them from a list, which skips over the screen you see depicted in Figure 17-2. In that case, choose the song again from the list to see that screen.
- ✓ Set the volume by using the Volume switch on the side of the phone: Up is louder, down is quieter.
- ✓ Refer to Chapter 1 (specifically, Figure 1-5), which explains how the music controls work on the Nexus One headset.
- ✓ When you're browsing the music, library, you may see a green play icon, similar to the one that appears in the margin. That icon flags any song that's playing or paused.
- ✓ Determining which song plays next depends on how you chose the song that's playing. If you choose the song by artist, all songs from that artist play, one after the other. When you choose a song by album, that album plays. Choosing a song from the entire song list causes all songs in the phone to play.
- ✓ To choose which songs play after each other, create a playlist. See the section "Organize Your Music," elsewhere in this chapter.
- ✓ After the last song in the list plays, the phone stops playing songs — well, unless you have Repeat on, in which case the list plays again.
- ✓ You can use the Nexus One Search command to help locate tunes in the phone's music library. You can search by artist name, song title, or album. The key is to press the Search soft button when you're using the Music app. Type all or part of the text you're searching for, and touch the Search button on the onscreen keyboard. Choose the song you want to hear from the list that's displayed.

Turning your phone into a deejay

You need to do four things to make your Nexus One the soul of your next shindig or soirée:

- ✓ Connect the Nexus One to a stereo.
- ✓ Use the Shuffle command.
- ✓ Set the Repeat command.
- ✓ Provide plenty of drinks and snacks.

You can hook the Nexus One to any stereo that has line inputs. You need an audio cable that has a mini-headphone jack on one end and an audio input that matches your stereo on the other end. These types of cables can be found at stores such as Radio Shack or any stereo store.

After your phone is connected, start the Music app and choose the party playlist you've created. If you want the songs to play in random order, choose the Shuffle command. The Shuffle button (refer to Figure 17-2) appears highlighted when that option is on.

You might also consider choosing the Repeat command so that the songs repeat after they've all played.

Enjoy your party, and please drink responsibly.

- ✓ The Nexus One docking station can also be used to connect the phone to a stereo, though it's not a necessity.
- ✓ See the next section for information on creating a playlist.

Organize Your Music

A *playlist* is a collection of tunes you create. You build the list by combining songs from one album or artist or another — whatever music you have on your phone. You can then listen to the playlist, hearing the music you want to hear. That's how you can organize your music on the Nexus One.

Reviewing playlists

Any playlists you've already created, or that have been preset on the Nexus One, appear under the Playlists heading on the Music app's main screen. Touching the Playlists heading displays the playlists, similar to the one shown in Figure 17-3.

To listen to a playlist, long-press the playlist's name and choose the Play command from the menu that appears.

You can also touch a playlist name to open that playlist and review the listed songs. Then you can choose any song from the list to start listening to that song.



Playlists are a great way to organize music where the song's information may not have been completely imported into the Nexus One. For example, if you're like me, you probably have a lot of songs by "Unknown Artist." The quick way to remedy that situation is to name a playlist after the artist and then add those unknown songs to the playlist. The next section describes how it's done.

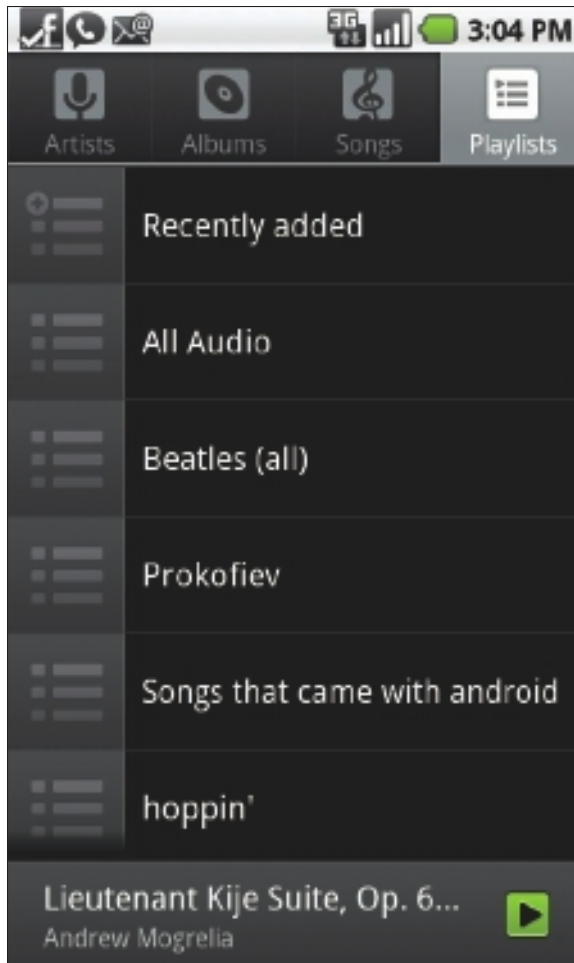


Figure 17-3: Playlists on the Nexus One.

Creating a playlist

To start a new playlist from scratch, you don't just create an empty playlist and then add songs. That might be how things work on your computer, but not on the Nexus One. Instead, you need to start by selecting the first tune that goes into the playlist. Follow these steps:

- 1. Play the song you want to use to start a new playlist.**

You don't have to keep playing the song; feel free to pause the music after the song starts playing.



2. Press the Menu soft button.

3. Choose Add to Playlist.

4. Choose New.

5. Type the playlist name.

Go ahead and touch the input field to summon the onscreen keyboard. Erase whatever silly text already appears in the input field. Type or dictate a new, better playlist name.

6. Touch the Save button.

The new playlist is created and the song you were playing (refer to Step 1) is added to the playlist.

A new playlist has only one song. That's not much of a playlist, unless of course the song is by the Grateful Dead. To add more songs to a playlist, follow these steps:

1. Play the song you want to add to the playlist.

You don't have to keep playing the song; feel free to pause the music after the song starts playing.



2. Press the Menu soft button.

3. Choose the Add to Playlist command.

4. Choose an existing playlist.

You may have to scroll down the list to see all your playlists.

You can keep adding songs to as many playlists as you like. Adding songs to a playlist doesn't noticeably affect the storage capacity of the MicroSD card.



✓ To practice creating a playlist, you can build a new playlist from the random tunes that may have been included on the Nexus One. I made such a list, shown in Figure 17-3 labeled Songs That Came with Android.

✓ Songs in a playlist can be rearranged: Use the tab on the far left end of the song's title in the list to drag the song up or down.

✓ To remove a song from a playlist, long-touch the song in the playlist and choose the command Remove from Playlist. Removing a song from a playlist doesn't delete the song from your phone. (See the next section for information on deleting songs from the Music library.)

✓ To delete a playlist, long-press its name in the list of playlists. Choose the Delete command. Though the playlist is removed, none of the songs in the playlist has been deleted.

Deleting music

To purge unwanted music from your Nexus One, follow these brief, painless steps:

1. **Locate the music that offends you.**
2. **Long-press the music's entry.**

If you don't want to hear the music, locate the music in a list: Artists, Albums, or Songs.

3. **Choose Delete.**

A warning message appears.

4. **Touch the OK button.**

The music is gone.

As the warning says (before Step 4), the music is deleted permanently from the MicroSD card. By deleting music, you free up storage space, but you cannot recover any music you delete. If you want the song back, you have to reinstall or buy it again, as described in the next section.

More Music

Though the Nexus One comes with a smattering of tunes, you probably want to add more songs in line with your musical tastes. Where does such music come from? Well, there's no need to get out a pen and notebook or take up the guitar: You can import music from your computer or buy new music from the Amazon MP3 store.



- ✓ Music, like pictures and video, is stored on the phone's MicroSD card. That card has only so much capacity. Though it would be nice to carry around all your music in the Nexus One, it's just not practical. So be judicious when adding music to your phone.
- ✓ See Chapter 13 for more information on managing the MicroSD card.

Synchronizing music with your computer

Your computer is the equivalent of the 20th century stereo system, a combination tuner, amplifier, and turntable plus all the records and CDs. If you've already copied your music collection to your computer or you use your computer as your main music storage system, you can share that music with the Nexus One.

In Windows, you can use the Windows Media Player to synchronize music between your Nexus One and the PC. Here's how it works:

1. **Connect the Nexus One to the PC.**
2. **Pull down the USB notification.**
3. **Choose the item USB Connected.**
4. **Touch the Mount button.**
5. **On your PC, start the Windows Media Player.**



You can use most any media program, or “jukebox.” These steps are specific to Version 12 of Windows Media Player, though they're similar to the steps you take in any media-playing program.

6. **If necessary, click the Sync tab in Windows Media Player.**

The Nexus One appears in the Sync list on the right side of the Windows Media Player, shown in Figure 17-4.

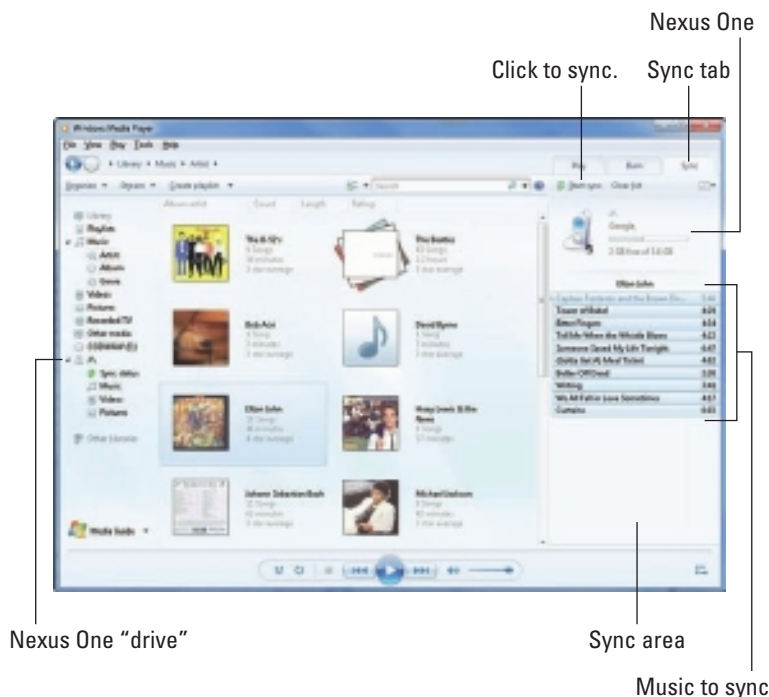


Figure 17-4: Windows Media Player meets Nexus One.

7. Drag to the Sync Area the music you want to transfer to the Nexus One (refer to Figure 17-4).
8. Click the Start Sync button to transfer the music to the Nexus One.
9. Quit the Windows Media Player when you're done transferring music.

Or keep it open — whatever.

10. Unmount the Nexus One from the PC's storage system.

Refer to Chapter 13 for specific unmounting instructions, also known as turning off USB storage.

When you have a Macintosh, or you detest Windows Media Player, you can use the doubleTwist program to synchronize music between your Nexus One and your computer. Refer to the section in Chapter 13 about synchronizing with doubleTwist for more information.



- ✓ You must mount the Nexus One — specifically, its MicroSD card — into your computer's storage system before you can synchronize music.
- ✓ The Nexus One can store only so much music! Don't be overzealous when copying over your tunes. In Windows Media Player (refer to Figure 17-4), a capacity-thermometer thing shows you how much storage space is used and how much is available on your phone. Pay heed to that indicator!



- ✓ You cannot use iTunes to synchronize music with the Nexus One.
- ✓ Though the USB connection is on for your phone, and the phone's MicroSD card is mounted into the computer's storage system, the Nexus One cannot access the MicroSD card. That means you cannot play music (or look at photos or access contacts or do whatever) while the MicroSD card is mounted.



- ✓ You can also, though it's extremely unlikely, manually add music to your Nexus One. By *manually*, I mean to mount the Nexus One into the computer's storage system and then copy and paste music files from your computer to the phone's MicroSD card. The degree of insanity required to make this type of operation fun is of the nature that anyone attempting the procedure would be incapable of seeing this book on the shelf in any bookstore.

Buying music at the Amazon MP3 store

You don't have the music on your computer. You don't even have the CD to *burn* into your computer! You can't jam an old CD into the Nexus One! At this point, a normal person would begin to panic, but because you have this book, you're instead visiting the Amazon MP3 store to buy the music you need for your phone.



Before running through the steps, you must have an Amazon account. If you don't have one set up, use your computer to visit amazon.com and create an account. You also need to keep a credit card on file for the account, which makes purchasing music with the Nexus One work O so well.

Follow these steps to buy music for your phone:

1. Ensure that you're using a WiFi or high-speed digital network connection.

When in doubt about the cellular data network, activate the phone's Wi-Fi as described in Chapter 13. You can also refer to it for information on the various cellular data networks and their speeds.



2. From the Launcher, choose the Amazon MP3 app.

The Amazon MP3 app connects you with the Amazon MP3 store, where you can search or browse for tunes to preview and purchase for the Nexus One.

3. Touch the Search box.

4. Type some search words: an album name, a song title, or an artist's name.

You can also dictate the search text. See Chapter 4 for more dictation information.



5. Touch the onscreen keyboard's Search button to begin the search.

Results appear if matches are found, as shown in Figure 17-5.

6. Touch one of the results.

If the result was an album, you see the content of the album. Otherwise, a 30-second audio preview plays.

When the result is an album, choose one of the songs in the album to hear the preview.

Touch the song again to stop the preview.

7. To purchase the song, touch the big orange button with the amount in it.

For example, the big orange button at the top of the list in Figure 17-5 says \$8.99.

Touching the button changes the price into the word *BUY*.

8. Touch the word *BUY*.

9. If necessary, you may need to accept the license agreement.

This step happens the first time you buy something from the Amazon MP3 store.

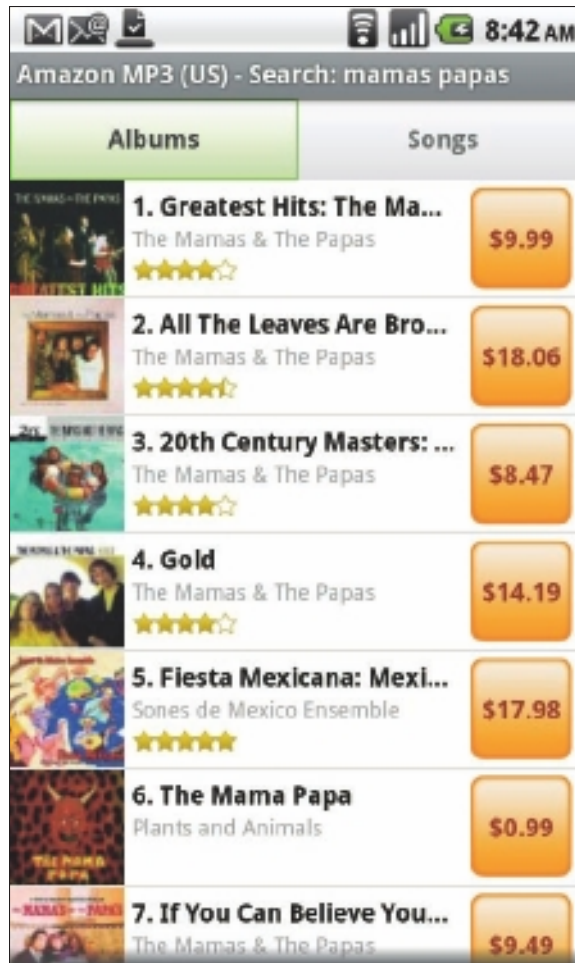


Figure 17-5: Songs found at the Amazon MP3 store.

10. **Log in to your Amazon.com account:** Type your account name or e-mail address and password.

Your purchase is started and your account authorized, and the download starts. If not, touch the Retry button to try again.

11. **Wait while the music downloads.**

Well, actually, you don't have to wait: The music continues to download while you do other things on the phone.



No notification icon appears when the song or album has been downloaded. You notice, however, that the MP3 Store Downloading icon vanishes from the notification part of the screen. It's your clue that the new music is in the phone and ready for your ears.

- ✓ Amazon e-mails you a bill for your purchase. That's your purchase record, so I advise you to be a good accountant and print it and then input it into your bookkeeping program or personal finance program at once!
- ✓ You can review your Amazon MP3 store purchases by pressing the Menu soft button in the MP3 Store app and choosing the Downloads command.
- ✓ You can also buy music using the doubleTwist program. Refer to Chapter 13 for more information on doubleTwist.



Your phone is a radio

With the proper software installed on your Nexus One, you don't have to worry about buying or carrying around the right music with you. That's because your phone can also be used as a radio. Think about it: The same technology that kids once carried around with them as *portable transistor radios* in the 1960s can be part of your 21st century phone. What will they think of next?

Try one of these two apps to listen to radio on your cellphone:

- ✓ Pandora Radio
- ✓ StreamFurious

Pandora Radio lets you select music based on your mood, and it customizes what you listen to according to your feedback. The app works like the Pandora.com site on the Internet, if you're familiar with it.

StreamFurious streams music from various radio stations on the Internet. It's not as customizable as Pandora Radio, but it also uses less bandwidth.

Both apps are available at the Android Market. They're free. See Chapter 19 for more information about the Android Market.



Various and Sundry Apps

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using the Calendar
- ▶ Checking your schedule
- ▶ Adding an event
- ▶ Using the Nexus One as a calculator
- ▶ Setting alarms for the Clock app
- ▶ Reviewing the current news and weather
- ▶ Searching for videos on YouTube

The Nexus One comes with a clutch of useful apps, tiny programs that can help you and your phone get through your day. These apps can replace other gizmos you would normally carry with you, such as a watch, datebook, or television set. They can provide useful information or offer diverse entertainment. It's all part of the grand scheme of cramming your entire digital life into a teeny little box.

More than a Wall Calendar

Some people have datebooks. Others write down appointments on business cards or on their palms. These methods might be effective, but they pale in comparison to the power of using your Nexus One as your calendar and datekeeper. Your phone can easily serve as both a bitter reminder of obligations due and delights to come. It all happens thanks to Google Calendar and the Calendar app on your phone.

Understanding the Calendar

The Nexus One takes advantage of a feature on the Internet named Google Calendar. If you have a Google account (and I'm certain that you do), you



already have Google Calendar. You can visit it by using your computer to go to this Web page:

`calendar.google.com`

If necessary, log in using your Google account. You can use Google Calendar to keep track of dates or meetings or whatever occupies your time. You can also use your phone to do the same thing, thanks to the Calendar app.

- ✓ I recommend that you use the Calendar app on your phone to access Google Calendar. It's a better way to access your schedule on the Nexus One than using the Browser app to visit Google Calendar on the Web.
- ✓ Also see the later section "Ticktock Goes the Clock" for information on setting alarms on the phone by using the Clock app.
- ✓ The Nexus One comes with a Calendar widget that you can add to the Home page. The widget is quite useful for reminding you of upcoming appointments. See Chapter 21 for details on adding widgets to the Home screen.

Browsing dates



To see your schedule or upcoming important events, or just to see which day of the month it is, summon the Calendar app. Use the Launcher at the bottom of the Home screen to display a list of all apps in the phone; choose the one named Calendar.

The first screen you see is most likely the monthly calendar view, shown in Figure 18-1. The calendar looks like a typical monthly calendar, with the month and year at the top. Scheduled appointments appear as green highlights on various days.



To view your appointments by the week, press the Menu soft button and choose Week. Or, you can choose the Day command to see your daily schedule. Figure 18-2 shows both Week and Day views in the Calendar.

You can return to Month view at any time by pressing the Menu soft button and choosing the Month command.



- ✓ See the section "Making a new event" for information on reviewing and creating events.
- ✓ Using Month view gives you an overview of what's going on, but use Week or Day view to see your appointments.
- ✓ I check Week view at the start of the week to remind me of what's coming up.
- ✓ The different colors for events shown in Figure 18-2 represent different calendars that the events are assigned to. See the later section "Making a new event" for information on calendars.



Figure 18-1: The Calendar's Month view.

- ✓ Use your finger to flick Week view or Day view up or down to see your entire schedule, from midnight to midnight.
- ✓ Use the trackball to move around the selected date or time. The selected date or time comes in handy when creating events.
- ✓ Navigate the days, weeks, or months by flicking the screen with your finger. Months scroll up and down; weeks and days scroll left and right.
- ✓ To see the current day highlighted or displayed, press the Menu soft button and choose the Today command.

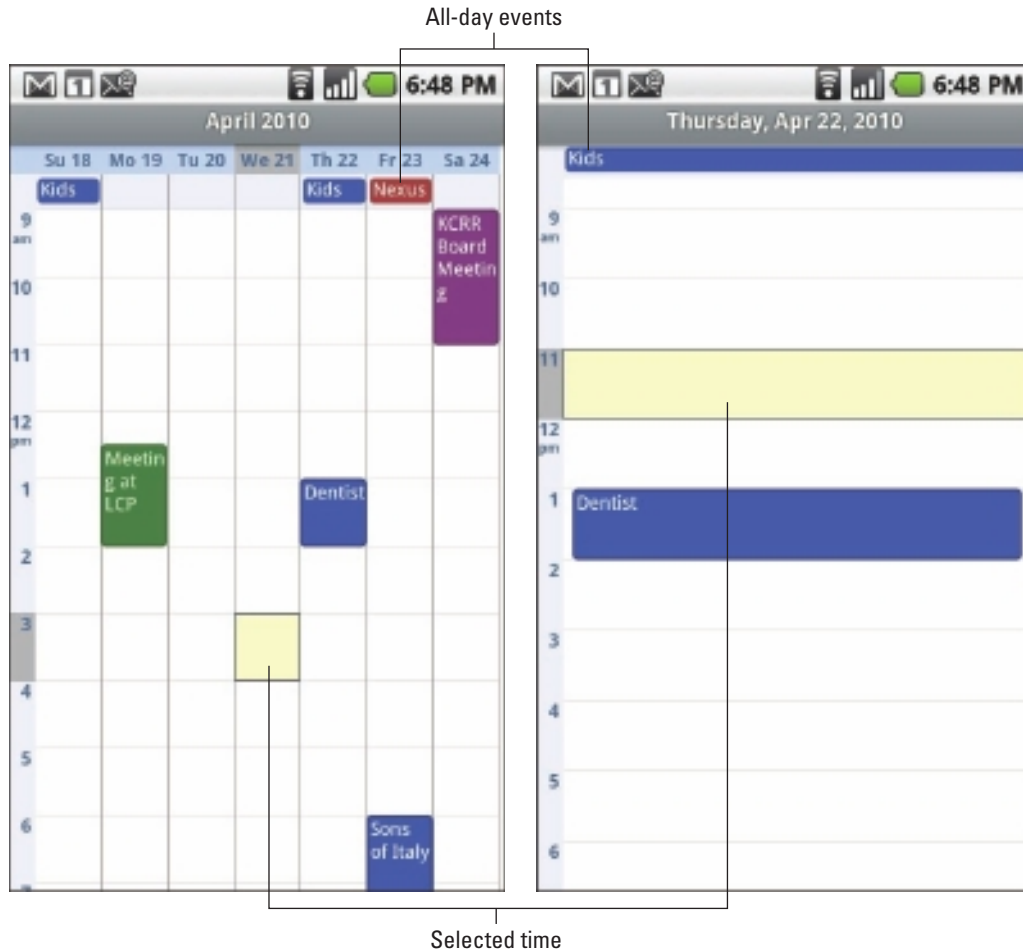


Figure 18-2: The Calendar's Week (left) and Day (right) views.

Reviewing your schedule

To see more detail about an event, touch it. When you're using Month view, touch the date with the event on it and then choose the event from Day view. Details about the event appear similar to what's shown in Figure 18-3.

- To see all upcoming events, you can switch to Agenda view: Press the Menu soft button and choose the Agenda command. Rather than list a traditional calendar, the Agenda screen shows only those dates with events and the events themselves. It's like a list.

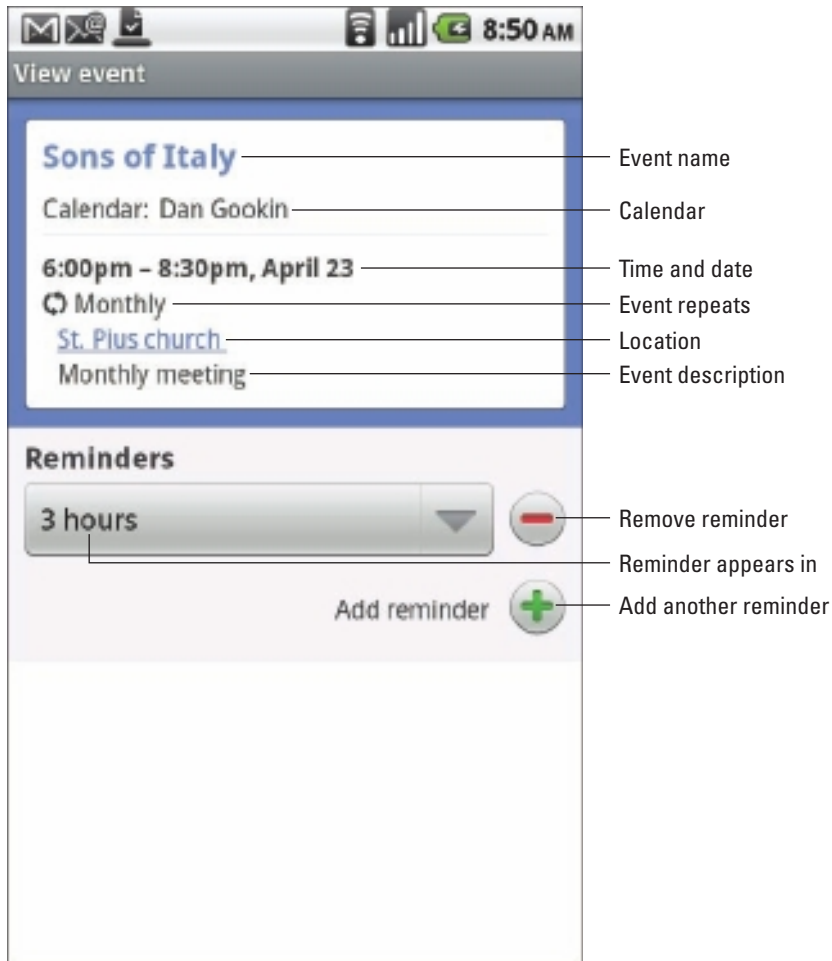


Figure 18-3: Event details.

As with the events in the non-Agenda views, simply touch an event to see more details (refer to Figure 18-3).

- ✓ Not every event has the level of detail shown in Figure 18-3. The minimum information necessary for an event is a name and the date and time.
- ✓ If you touch the event on the calendar too long — and do a long-press — choose the item View Event from the menu.
- ✓ See the next section for information on event reminders.

Making a new event

The key to making the calendar work is to add events. They can be appointments, tasks to do, meetings, or full-day events such as birthdays and vacations. To create a new event, follow these steps in the Calendar app:



1. Select the day for the event.

Use Month or Week view and touch the day of the new event.

To save time, use Day view and touch the hour at which the event starts.



2. Press the Menu soft button.

3. Choose the More command, then choose New Event.

A screen appears and you add details about the event.

4. Type the event name.

For example, type Picnic or Date with Mel or Colonoscopy.

5. If necessary, touch the From button to input the event start time and use the gizmo to choose the starting date.

6. In necessary, touch the Time button to set the start time.

Touch the AM or PM button to specify times before noon or after noon; 12:00 AM is midnight, and 12:00 PM is noon.



When an event lasts all day, such as when you visit your mother-in-law for an hour, simply touch the All Day button to put a check mark there. All-day events appear at the top of the day when the Calendar is shown in Week view (refer to Figure 18-2).

At this point, you've entered the bare minimum amount of information for creating an event. Any additional details you add are okay, but not necessary.

7. Touch the Done button.

The Calendar app creates the event.

You can change an event at any time: Simply summon the event as described in the preceding section, press the Menu soft button while viewing the event, and choose the Edit Event command.

To remove an event, choose an event from the Calendar to view the event details. Press the Menu soft button and choose the Delete Event command. Touch the OK button to confirm.

✓ Adding an event location not only tells you where the event will be located but also hooks into the Maps app. My advice is to type information into an event's Where field just as though you were typing

information to search for a map. When the event is displayed, the location is a clickable link (refer to Figure 18-3); touch the location link to see where it is on a Map.

- ✓ Google Calendar lets you create multiple calendars, which help you categorize types of events. For example, I have a personal calendar, one for my kids' schedule, one for work, and a travel calendar. Events from different calendars show up in different colors (refer to Figure 18-2).
- ✓ Use the Repetition button to create repeating events, such as weekly or monthly meetings, anniversaries, or birthdays.
- ✓ Reminders can be set so that the phone alerts you before an event takes place. The alert can show up as a notification icon (shown in the margin) or an audio or vibrating alert.
- ✓ To deal with an event notification, pull down the notifications and choose the event. You can touch the Dismiss All button to remove event alerts.
- ✓ Alert types are set by pressing the Menu soft button: Choose the More command and then Settings. Use the Select Ringtone option to choose an audio alert. Use the Vibrate option to control whether the phone vibrates to alert you of an impending event.
- ✓ You can also create events using the Google Calendar on the Internet. Those events are instantly synced with the calendar on the Nexus One — if you've followed my advice in Chapter 2.



Your Phone the Calculator

The Calculator is perhaps the oldest of all traditional cellphone apps. It's probably also the least confusing and frustrating app to use, at least on the Nexus One.



Calculator

Choose the Calculator icon from the Launcher to start the Calculator app. The Calculator appears, as shown in Figure 18-4.



- ✓ You can swipe the screen (refer to Figure 18-4) to the left to see an advanced panel of strange mathematical operations that you'll probably never use.
- ✓ Use the trackball to scroll back through the previous calculations you've made.
- ✓ Long-press the calculator's text (or results) to cut or copy the results.
- ✓ I use the Calculator most often to determine the tip at a restaurant. It takes me almost as long to use the Calculator as it does for smarty-pants Barbara to do the 15 percent calculation in her head.

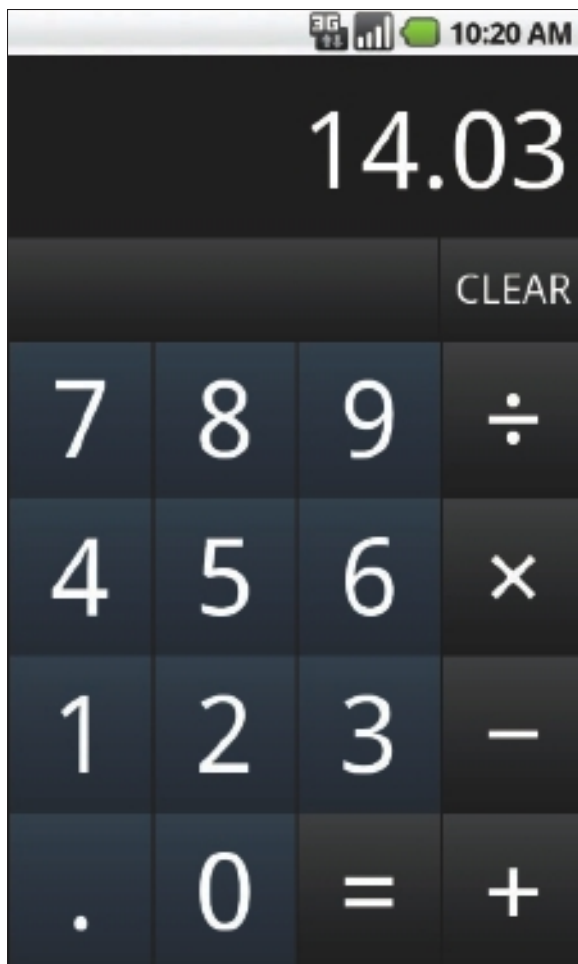


Figure 18-4: The Calculator.

Ticktock Goes the Clock

The Nexus One keeps constant and accurate track of the time, which is displayed at the top of the Home screen and also when you first wake up the phone. The phone even has a Clock app, which you can use when you need to look at a larger version of the time or just use it as a travel clock.



Start the Clock app by choosing its icon from the Launcher. The Clock is shown in Landscape view in Figure 18-5.



Figure 18-5: The Clock.

The most interesting and useful thing you can do with the Clock app is to create and set an alarm. Follow these steps:

- 1. Touch the Alarm button in the Clock app (refer to Figure 18-5).**

- 2. Choose Add Alarm.**

Or, if you see an alarm you want to use already listed, touch that alarm and choose Turn Alarm On from the menu.

- 3. Choose Turn Alarm On to make sure that the alarm is active.**

You can create alarms for the Clock, but unless an alarm is on, you aren't notified when the time comes.

- 4. Touch the Time button to change the alarm time, if necessary.**

Use the gizmo to set the hour and minute and specify either A.M. or P.M. Touch the Set button when you're done setting the time.

- 5. Choose whether the alarm repeats.**

Choose which days of the week you want the alarm to sound.

6. **Choose a ringtone for the alarm, something suitably annoying.**
7. **Specify whether the phone vibrates by placing a check mark by the Vibrate option.**
8. **Type or dictate a label for the alarm (optional).**

The label is merely text that appears by the alarm, which helps you identify why you created the alarm.

9. **Touch the Done button to create the alarm.**

The alarm appears in a list on the main Alarm screen, along with any other alarms you create.



Alarms must be set or else they don't trigger. To set an alarm, touch it in the alarm list. Place a check mark by the option Turn Alarm On. Alarms that are set boast a solid green bar beneath their alarm clock icon.



- ✓ You can add a Clock widget to the Home screen. Refer to Chapter 21 for more information about widgets on the Home screen.
- ✓ Turning off an alarm doesn't delete the alarm.
- ✓ To remove an alarm, touch it from the list and choose the option Delete from the bottom of the screen. Touch the OK button to confirm.
- ✓ The alarm doesn't work when you turn off the phone. The alarm does, however, go off when the phone is sleeping.
- ✓ The Nexus One makes a great travel clock. It's much easier to use the Nexus One than trying to figure out how the hotel's silly radio alarm clock works.

Here's Your News and Weather

The Nexus One has a digital umbilical cord to the Google news and weather Web sites. The News and Weather app can be used to display weather for your current location as well as news items locally or around the world.



To view the news and weather, touch the News and Weather app, found on the Launcher. Use the tabs at the top of the screen to view weather reports, top stories, national (U.S.) news, and sports and entertainment news.

Flick the headline list downward with your finger to scroll the news stories; touch a story headline to see more information.

- ✓ A News and Weather widget can also appear on the desktop. It might already be floating on the first Home screen to the left of the main Home screen. Touch that widget to open the News and Weather app.



- ✓ See Chapter 21 for more information on Home screen widgets.
- ✓ The weather part of the News and Weather app has a cool feature: Touch the weather to see an interactive histogram of the current day's temperatures. Slide your finger over the histogram to see changes in the temperature and forecast.



- ✓ You can choose which type of news you want to view and specify which headings appear on tabs for the news: Press the Menu soft button, choose Settings, and then choose News Settings. Choose Select News Topics to pick and choose which type of news you want to read.
- ✓ The Nexus One uses your location information (if you've granted permission) to determine which weather to display. If you'd rather see a specific weather location, press the Menu soft button and choose Settings and then Weather Settings. Remove the check mark by Use My Location and choose Set Location to input a city name or postal code.

There's No Tube like YouTube

YouTube is the Internet phenomenon proving that Andy Warhol was right: In the future, everyone will be famous for 15 minutes. Or, in the case of YouTube, they'll be famous on the Internet long enough to make a 10-minute (maximum) video. That's because YouTube is *the* place on the Internet for anyone and everyone to share their video creations.



To view the mayhem on YouTube, or to contribute something yourself, start the YouTube app. Like all apps on the Nexus One, It can be found in the Launcher. The main YouTube screen is depicted in Figure 18-6.

To view a video, touch its name or icon in the list.

To search for a video, touch the Search button (refer to Figure 18-6). Type or dictate what you want to search for, and then peruse the results.

Videos in the YouTube app play in Landscape mode, so you need to tilt the phone to the left to see videos in their proper orientation. Videos take up the entire screen; touch the screen to see the onscreen video controls.



Press the Back soft button to return to the main YouTube app after watching a video or if you tire of a video and need to return to the main screen out of boredom.

- ✓ I highly recommend that you use the YouTube app to view YouTube videos as opposed to using the Browser app to visit the YouTube Web site.
- ✓ Because you have a Google account, you also have a YouTube account. I recommend that you log in to your YouTube account when using YouTube on the Nexus One: Press the Menu soft button and choose the



command My Account. Log in, if necessary. Otherwise, you see your account information, your videos, plus any video subscriptions.

- ✓ Not all YouTube videos are available for viewing on mobile devices.
- ✓ You can touch the Record & Upload button, shown in Figure 18-6, to shoot and then immediately send a video to YouTube. Refer to Chapter 15 for information on recording video with the Nexus One.

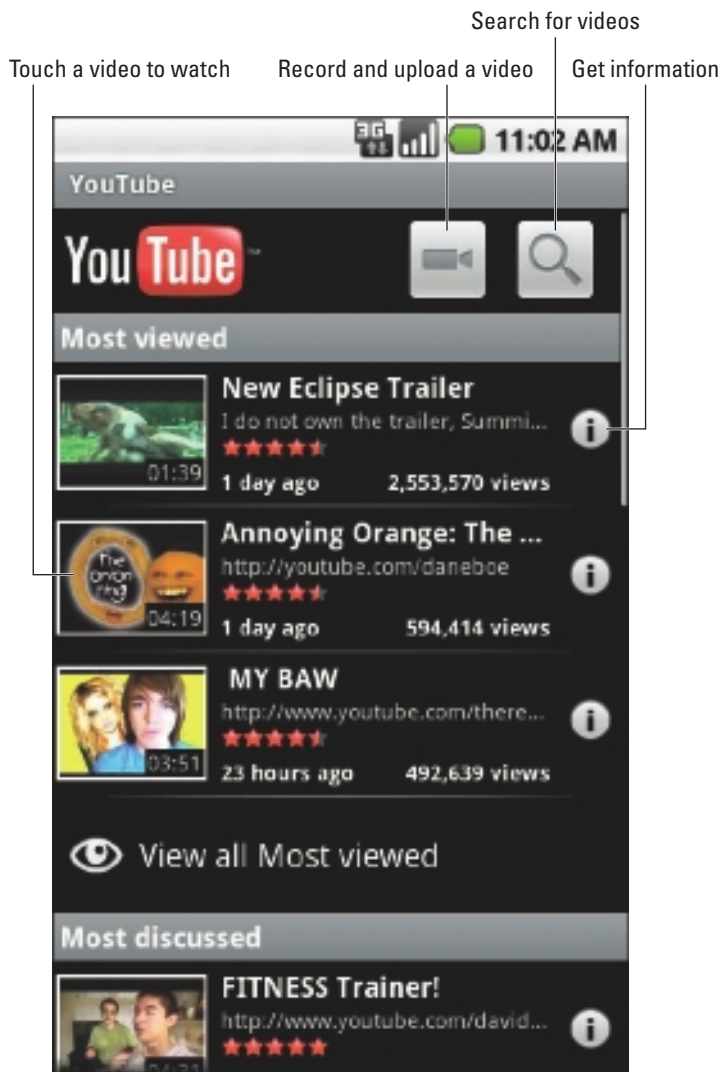


Figure 18-6: YouTube.

More Apps from the Android Market

In This Chapter

- ▶ Using the Market app
- ▶ Searching for apps
- ▶ Downloading a free app
- ▶ Getting a paid app
- ▶ Reviewing apps you've downloaded
- ▶ Deleting apps
- ▶ Maintaining apps

You're not limited to only the software that came with the Nexus One. Thousands of apps are being written for your phone, with dozens more added every day. That's because software development for mobile devices is going crazy. That's good news. Better news is that a lot of those programs are free and available for you to use at a place called Android Market.

- ✓ The Nexus One uses the Android operating system, and as such it can run nearly all applications written for Android.
- ✓ Rest assured that all apps that you can see in the Android Market can be used with the Nexus One. You cannot download or buy an app that's incompatible with your phone.
- ✓ App is short for *application*. It's another word for *software*, which is another word for a program that runs on a computer or on a mobile device such as your Nexus One.



Welcome to the Market

Don't worry about getting in your car — shopping for new software for your Nexus One can be done anywhere that you and your phone just happen to be. You don't even need to know what kind of software you want; like many a mindless ambling shopper, you can browse until the touch screen has wiped away your fingerprints. You don't even have to spend a dime!



- ✓ Software is obtained from the Market by *downloading* it into your phone. The file transfer works best at top speeds; therefore:
- ✓ I highly recommend that you connect to a Wi-Fi network if you plan to purchase software at Android Market. See Chapter 13 for details on connecting the Nexus One to a Wi-Fi network.

Visiting the Market



New apps await delivery into your phone, like animated vegetables shouting “Pick me! Pick me!” To get to them, open the Market icon, which can be found on the main Home screen or accessed from the Launcher.

After opening the Market app, you see the main screen, similar to the one shown in Figure 19-1. You can browse for apps or games or review your downloads by touching the appropriate doodad, as shown in the figure.

Find apps by browsing the lists: Choose Apps (refer to Figure 19-1). Then choose a specific category to browse. You can sort apps by popularity; separate categories exist for paid, free, and newer apps.



When you know an app's name or category or even what the app does, it's faster to search for the app: Touch the Search button at the top of the Market screen (refer to Figure 19-1). Type all or part of the app's name or perhaps a description. Touch the onscreen keyboard's Search button to begin your search.

To see more information about an app, touch it. Touching the app doesn't buy it, but instead displays a more detailed description, screen shots, and comments, plus links to see additional apps or contact the developer.

- ✓ The first time you enter the Android Market, you have to accept the terms of service; click the Accept button.
- ✓ Pay attention to the app's ratings. The ratings are made by the people who use the apps, like you and me. Having more stars is better. You can see additional information, including individual user reviews, by choosing the app.



- ✓ In addition to getting apps, you can download widgets for the Home screen as well as wallpapers for the Nexus One. Just search Android Market for *widgets* or *live wallpaper*.
- ✓ See Chapter 21 for more information on widgets and live wallpapers.

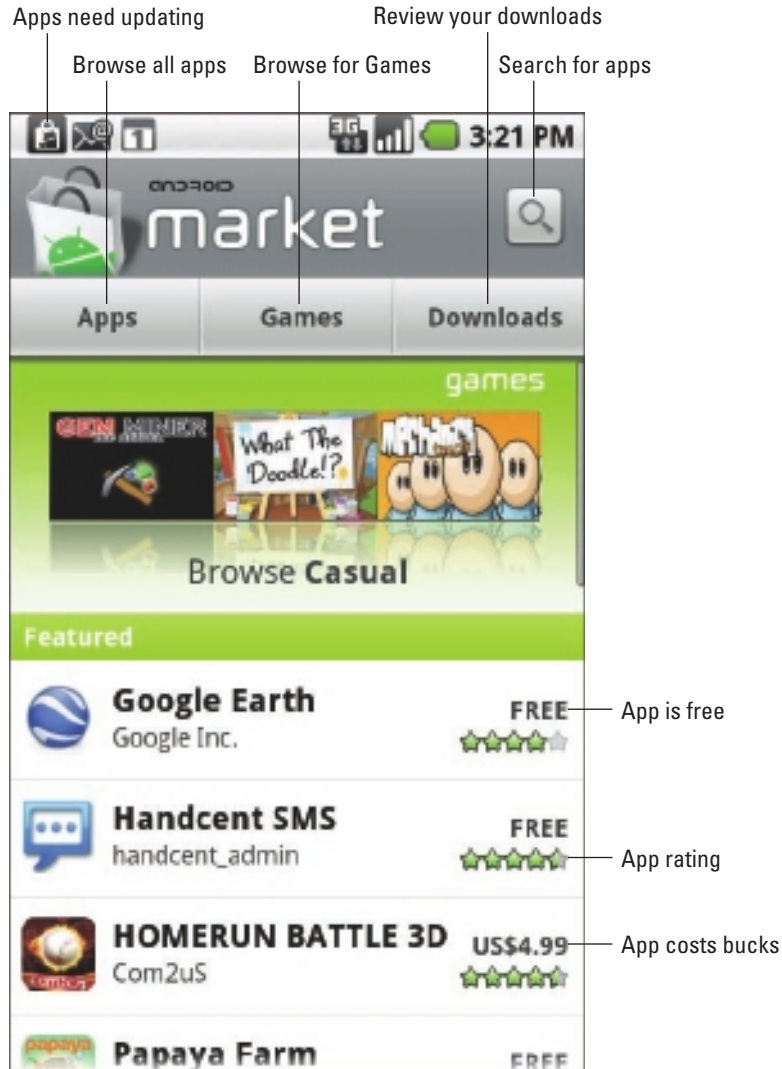


Figure 19-1: The Android Market.

Getting a free app

After you locate an app you want, the next step is to download it. Follow these steps:

- 1. If possible, activate the phone's Wi-Fi connection.**

Downloads complete much faster over a Wi-Fi connection than a digital cellular connection. See Chapter 13 for information on connecting the Nexus One to a Wi-Fi network.



- 2. Open the Market app.**

- 3. Locate the app you want and open its description.**

Refer to the preceding section for details.

Ensure that the app is compatible with the Nexus One. Check the description and reviews to see whether it has any issues.

- 4. Touch the Install button.**

The Install button is found at the bottom of the app's list-o-details. Free apps feature an Install button. Paid apps have a Buy button. (See the next section for information on buying an app.)

After touching the Install button, you're alerted to any services that the app uses. The alert isn't a warning, and it doesn't mean anything bad. It's just that the developer is being honest with you about what the app will be doing with your phone.

- 5. Touch the OK button to begin the download.**

The app continues to download while you do other things with your phone.



After the download is successful, the phone's status bar shows a new icon, shown in the margin. That's the Successful Install notification.

- 6. Pull down the notifications.**

See Chapter 3 for details, in case you've never pulled down notifications.

- 7. Choose the app from the list of notifications.**

The app is listed by its app name, with the text *Successfully Installed* beneath it.

At this point, what happens next depends on the app you've downloaded. For example, you may have to agree to a license agreement. If so, touch the I Agree button. Additional setup may involve signing into an account or creating a profile, for example.

After the initial setup is complete, or if no setup is necessary, you can start using the app.



- ✓ Don't forget to turn off Wi-Fi after downloading your app; the Wi-Fi is a drain on the phone's battery.
- ✓ The new app's icon is placed in the Launcher, along with all the other apps on the Nexus One.
- ✓ Yes, when you add an app, it shuffles all the Launcher icons; they're sorted alphabetically — no way around that.
- ✓ You can also place a shortcut icon for the app on the Home screen. See Chapter 21.
- ✓ The Android Market has many wonderful apps you can download. Chapter 25 lists some that I recommend, many of which are free.



Buying an app

Some great free apps are available, but many apps that you'll dearly want probably cost money. It's not a lot of money, especially compared to the price of computer software. In fact, it's kind of odd to sit and stew over whether paying 99 cents for a game is "worth it."



I recommend that you get a free app first to familiarize yourself with the process.

When you're ready to pay for an app, follow these steps:

- 1. Activate the phone's Wi-Fi connection.**
- 2. Open the Market app.**
- 3. Browse or search for the app you want, and choose that app to display its description.**



Review the app's price. Apps are priced in dollars, euros, pounds, or yen. You can buy an app priced in another currency; your credit card or cellphone bill is charged the proper amount.

- 4. Touch the Buy button.**

If you don't have a Google Checkout account, you're prompted to set one up. Follow the directions on the screen.

- 5. Choose the payment method.**

You can choose to use an existing credit card, add a new card or — most conveniently — add the purchase to your cellular bill.

If you choose to add a new card, you're required to fill in all information about the card, including the billing address.



6. Touch the OK button to accept the payment method.

You can always go back and change the method of payment; payment isn't complete until you touch the Buy Now button in Step 9.

7. If prompted, touch Accept to agree to the terms and conditions and whatnot.

8. Touch the check mark next to the Google Checkout Terms of Service item.

9. Touch the Buy Now button.

The Buy Now button lists the app's price.

After you touch the Buy button, the app is downloaded. You can wait or do something else with the phone while the app is downloading.

10. Touch the Open button after the app has downloaded, to start using your phone's new program.

Additional setup may be required for the app, or confirmation information or other options.

The app can be accessed from the Launcher, just like all other apps available on your Nexus One.

Eventually, you receive an e-mail message from Google Checkout, confirming your purchase. The message explains how you can get a refund from your purchase within 24 hours. The section "Removing installed software," later in this chapter, discusses how that's done.



Be sure to disable the phone's Wi-Fi after downloading the app, because Wi-Fi is an additional drain on the phone's battery.

Manage Your Applications

The Android Market is not only where you buy your apps, it's also the place you return to for performing app management. That task includes reviewing the apps you've downloaded, updating apps, and removing apps that you no longer want or you severely hate.

Reviewing your downloads

If you're like me, and if I'm like anyone, you'll probably sport a whole host of apps on your Nexus One. It's kind of fun to download some new software and give your phone new abilities. To review the apps you've acquired, follow these steps:



1. **Start the Market app.**
2. **Touch the Downloads heading at the top of the screen.**

Refer to Figure 19-1.

On the off chance that your phone has no Downloads button, press the Menu soft button and choose Downloads.

3. **Scroll your list of downloaded apps.**

The list of apps should look similar to the one shown in Figure 19-2.

Besides reviewing the list, you can do two things with an installed app: Update it or remove it. The following two sections describe how each operation is done.

The Downloads list is accurate in that it represents apps you've downloaded. Some apps in the list, however, might not be installed on your Nexus One: They were downloaded, installed, and then removed. To review all apps now installed on the phone, see the section "Controlling your apps," later in this chapter.

Updating an app



One of the nice things about using the Android Market to get new software is that the Market also notifies you of new versions of the programs you download. When a new version of any app is available, you see the Updates Available notification icon, shown in the margin.

Locate apps that need updating by pulling down the phone's notifications list and choosing Updates Available. Or, you can visit the Downloads list, as described in the preceding section.

To update an app, obey these steps:

1. **Turn on the phone's Wi-Fi access, if available.**

Updates are downloaded from the Internet, which means the faster your phone can connect, the more quickly the updates are made.

2. **Choose the updated app; touch it to open more details.**

For example, touch an app with the Updates Available flag (refer to Figure 19-2).

3. **Touch the Update button.**
4. **Touch the OK button to heed the warning.**

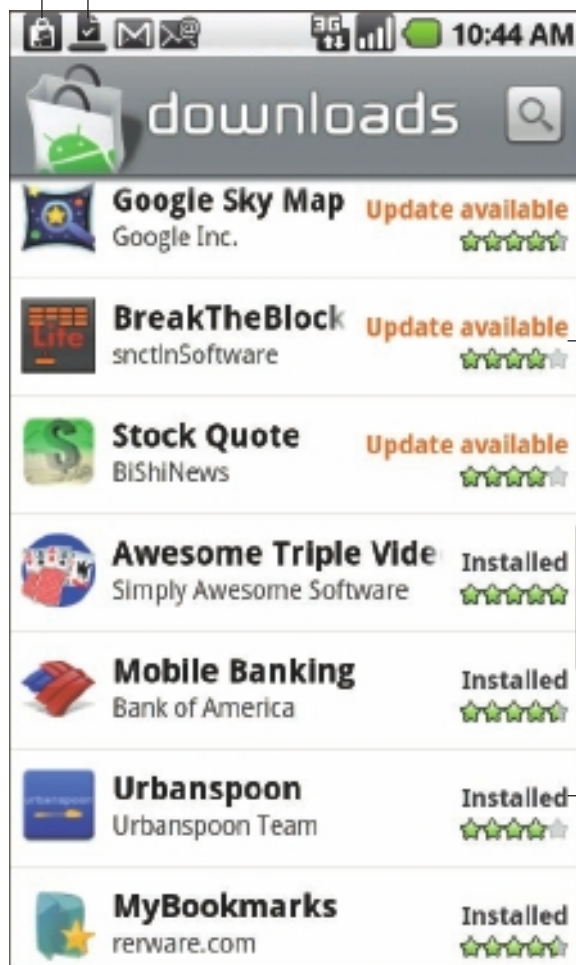
Most often, the update simply means that an entirely new version of the app is downloaded and installed, which replaces the currently installed version. That's okay.

5. Read any services that the app uses on your phone and then touch the OK button (optional).

The update is downloaded.

Updates available

App successfully downloaded



Touch to update.

Touch to see more information, open, or uninstall.

Figure 19-2: Apps downloaded for the Nexus One.



As with initially installing the app, you're free to do other things with the phone while the update is downloading. When downloading is complete, the Successful Install notification appears, as shown in the margin. You can then start using your updated app, or you can continue applying updates by repeating the steps in this section.

After the download is complete, pull down the notifications list and select the downloaded app. When you first start the updated app, you may be asked to agree (again) to the licensing terms; touch the I Agree button. After that, you can start using the app.

Removing installed software

There are a few reasons why you'd want to remove installed software. The first reason is, most odiously, that you just don't like a program or it does something so hideously annoying that you find removal of the app to be emotionally satisfying. The second reason is that you have a better program that does the same thing. The third reason is to free up a modicum of storage on the phone's internal storage system or MicroSD card. Whatever the reason, removing an app from your Nexus One works like this:

- 1. Start the Market app.**
- 2. Touch the Downloads heading to summon a list of all software you've downloaded into your phone.**

Refer to Figure 19-2.

- 3. Touch the app that offends you.**
- 4. Touch the Uninstall button.**
- 5. Touch the OK button to confirm.**

The app is removed.

- 6. Fill in the survey to explain why you removed the app.**

Be honest.

- 7. Touch OK.**

The app is gone!

The app continues to appear in the Downloads list even after it's been removed. After all, you downloaded it once. That doesn't mean that the app is installed. To review apps actually installed on the Nexus One, see the next section.

- ✓ In most cases, if you uninstall a paid app before 24 hours elapses, your credit card or account is fully refunded.
- ✓ You can always reinstall paid apps that you've uninstalled. You aren't charged twice for doing so.



Controlling your apps

There's a technical place where you can review and manage all the apps you've installed on your Nexus One. To visit that technical place, follow these steps:

1. **From the Launcher, choose Settings.**
2. **Choose Applications.**
3. **Choose Manage Applications.**

A complete list of all applications installed on your phone is displayed. Unlike the Downloads list in the Market app, only the applications now installed appear in the list.

4. **Touch an application.**

Additional details and controls for the application are displayed, similar to what's shown in Figure 19-3.



5. **Touch the Back button when you're done being baffled by the information.**

You can also just touch the Home soft button to immediately escape to the Home screen.

You can use the application's information screen (refer to Figure 19-3) to uninstall an app, similar to the steps described in the preceding section.

Refer to the storage information to determine how much space the app is using on the phone's internal storage system or MicroSD card.

If the app is consuming a huge amount of space compared with other apps and you seldom use the app, consider it a candidate for deletion.

The Force Stop button is used to halt a program that runs amok; see Chapter 22 for details.

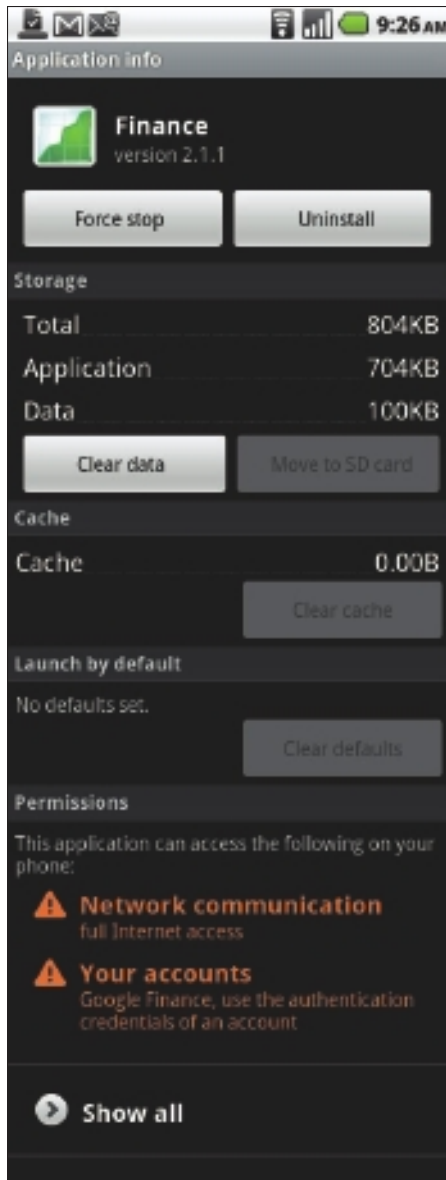
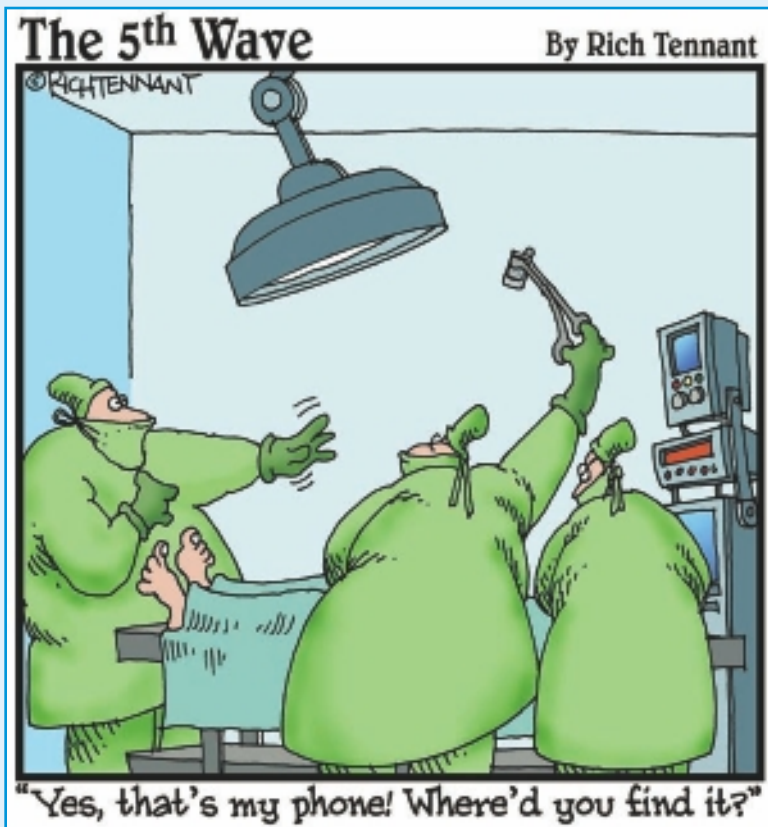


Figure 19-3: Detailed app information.

Part V

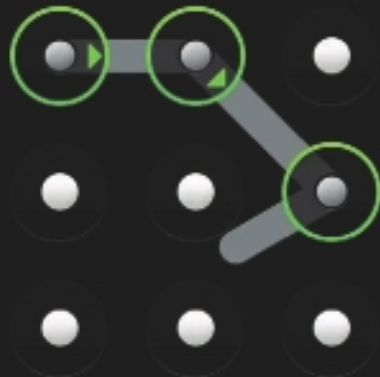
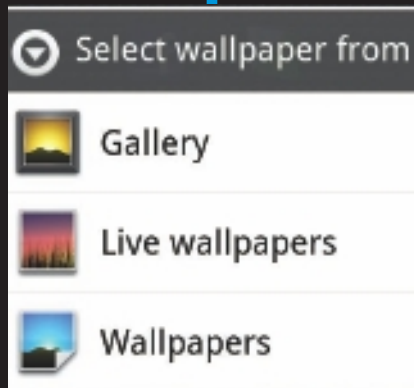
Off the Hook



In this part . . .

The term *hook* is as antiquated as the term *dial* when it comes to modern cellphones. The original telephone didn't have a dial, but it had a hook: Either the hook was used as a cradle for the earpiece or the earpiece hung on a real hook. Even though phone design eliminated the actual hook early in the 20th century, people still referred to an open phone line as "off the hook."

You can't take your Nexus One off the hook any more than you can use a crank to start your Prius. Still, you can take your Nexus One places that an old-timey phone wouldn't dare dream of going. Various chores are also associated with using a modern cellphone — duties and obligations beyond those necessary for the operation of a candlestick phone. Those tasks are covered in this part of the book.



Out and About

In This Chapter

- ▶ Understanding roaming
- ▶ Disabling data-roaming features
- ▶ Entering Airplane mode
- ▶ Contacting friends abroad
- ▶ Using the Nexus One overseas

Cellphones have joined eyeglasses and car keys as essentials of the modern age, specifically in the category of those necessary items that are occasionally and easily misplaced. I don't know about you, but when I leave the house, I do a patdown to ensure that I have my wallet, car keys, glasses, and cellphone. Sheer panic ensues whenever I'm missing one of them. It's like missing a limb.

You can not only take your phone everywhere you go (along with your keys and glasses), but you can also use your Nexus One beyond the typical, everyday realm. There remains nary a place on the globe that you can wander without a cellphone. Sure, your phone may not receive a signal in the Australian Outback, but you can still have the phone! This chapter explains the necessities and perils of taking your phone out and about.

Where the Nexus One Roams

The word *roam* takes on an entirely new meaning when applied to a cellphone. It means that your phone has a cell signal but you're outside your cellphone carrier's operating area. In that case, your phone is *roaming*.



Roaming sounds handy, but there's a catch: It almost always involves a surcharge for using another cellular service — an unpleasant surcharge.



The Nexus One alerts you when you're roaming. You see the Roaming icon appear at the top of the screen, in the status area. The icon looks like the regular connection icon but has an itty-bitty R by the bars, as shown in the margin.

There's little you can do to avoid roaming surcharges when making or receiving phone calls. Well, yes: You can wait until you're back in an area serviced by your primary cellular provider. You can, however, avoid using the other network's data services while roaming altogether. Follow these steps:



1. **From the Launcher, choose the Settings icon.**
2. **Choose Wireless & Networks.**
3. **Choose Mobile Networks.**
4. **Remove the green check mark by the Data Roaming option.**

Removing the check mark disables network data access when the Nexus One is roaming.

The phone can still access the Internet through the Wi-Fi connection. Setting up a Wi-Fi connection, even when the phone is roaming, doesn't incur any extra charges, unless you have to pay to get on the wireless network. See Chapter 13 for more information about Wi-Fi on the Nexus One.

Another network task you might want to disable while roaming has to do with multimedia text messages, or *MMS*. To avoid surcharges from another cellular network for downloading an MMS, follow these steps:



1. **Open the Messaging app.**
2. **If the screen shows a specific conversation, press the Back soft button to return to the main messaging screen (the one that lists all your conversations).**
3. **Touch the Menu soft button.**
4. **Choose Settings.**
5. **Remove the green check mark by Roaming Auto-Retrieve.**

Or, if the item isn't checked, you're good to go. Literally.

For more information about multimedia text messages, refer to Chapter 9.

When the phone is roaming, you may see the text *Emergency Calls Only* displayed on the locked screen.

Airplane Mode

As anyone knows who has been on a plane recently, cellular phone usage while the plane is airborne is strictly forbidden. That's because if you used a cellphone on an airplane, the navigation system would completely screw up, the plane would invert, and everyone onboard would die in a spectacular crash on the ground, in a massive fireball suitable for the 5 o'clock Eyewitness News. It would be breathtaking.

Seriously, you're not supposed to use a cellphone when flying. Specifically, you're not allowed you make calls in the air. You can, however, use your Nexus One to listen to music, play games, or do anything with the phone that doesn't require a cellular connection. The secret is to place the phone into Airplane mode.

The most convenient way to put the Nexus One into Airplane mode is to press and hold the power button. From the menu, choose Airplane Mode. You don't even need to unlock the phone to perform this operation.

The most convenient way to put the Nexus One into Airplane mode is to follow these steps:



1. **From the Launcher, choose the Settings icon.**
2. **Choose Wireless & Networks.**
3. **Touch the square by Airplane Mode to set the green check mark.**

When the green check mark is there, Airplane mode is active.



When the phone is in Airplane mode, a special icon appears in the status area, as shown in the margin. You might also see the text *No Service* appear on the phone's locked screen.

To end Airplane mode and turn on all the phone's wireless networking and radios, repeat the steps in this section but remove the green check mark by touching the square next to Airplane Mode.



- ✓ Officially, the Nexus One should be powered *off* when the plane is taking off or landing. See Chapter 2 for information on turning off the phone.
- ✓ You can compose e-mail while the phone is in Airplane mode. The messages aren't sent until you disable Airplane mode and connect again with a data network.



- ✓ Bluetooth networking is disabled when you activate the Nexus One Airplane mode. See Chapter 13 for more information on Bluetooth.
- ✓ Many airlines now feature wireless networking onboard. You can use your Nexus One with this type of system, even when Airplane mode is on: Simply turn on the phone and then turn on Wi-Fi (refer to Chapter 13). You can then access the airline's wireless network without the Nexus One sending out those potentially lethal cellphone signals.



Nexus One air-travel tips

I don't consider myself a frequent flyer, but I do travel several times a year. It's often enough that I wish the airports had separate lines for security: one for seasoned travelers, one for families, and, of course, one for frickin' idiots. The last category would have to be disguised by placing "bonus coupons" or "free snacks" over the metal detector. That would weed 'em out.

Here are some of my cellphone and airline travel tips:

- ✓ **Charge your phone before you leave.** This tip probably goes without saying, but you'll be happier with a full cellphone charge to start your journey.
- ✓ **Take a cellphone charger with you.** Many airports feature USB chargers, so you might need just a USB-to-micro-USB cable. Still, why risk it? Bring the entire charger with you.
- ✓ **Remove your phone at the security checkpoint and place it into a bin along with any other electronic devices, keys, or metal shards.** I know from experience: Keeping your cellphone in your pocket most definitely sets off airport metal detectors.
- ✓ **When the flight attendant asks you to *turn off* your cellphone for takeoff and landing,**

obey the command. That's *turn off*, as in power off the phone or shut it down. It doesn't mean placing the phone into Airplane mode. Turn it off.

- ✓ **Use the phone's Calendar app to keep track of flights.** The event title serves as the airline and flight number. For the event time, I insert the takeoff and landing schedules. For location, I add the origin and destination airport codes. Referencing your phone from your airplane seat or in a busy terminal is much handier than fussing with travel papers.
- ✓ In the future, some airlines may feature Android apps you can use while traveling: Rather than hang on to a boarding pass printed by your computer, you'll just present to the scanner your phone with the airline's app on it. As this book goes to press, no airline apps are available on the Nexus One, but I predict that you'll soon see a lot of them. Refer to Chapter 19 for information on finding apps in the Android Market.
- ✓ Some apps you can use to organize your travel details are similar to using the Calendar app, but more sophisticated. Visit the Android Market and search for *travel* or *airlines* to find a host of apps.

International Calling

You can not only use your cell phone to dial up folks who live in other countries but also potentially use it overseas. Doing so isn't as difficult as properly posing for a passport photo, but it can become frustrating and expensive when you don't know your way around.

Dialing an international number

A phone is a bell that anyone in the world can ring. To prove it, all you need is anyone in the world's phone number. Dial that number using your Nexus One, and, if you both speak the same language, you're talking! Or, if you're not talking, you're the United Nations!

To make an international call with the Nexus One, you merely need to know the foreign phone number. That number includes the international country code prefix followed by the number.

Before dialing the international country code prefix, you must dial a plus sign (+) on the Nexus One. It's the country exit code, which must be dialed to exit the national phone system and access the international phone system. For example, to dial Finland on your Nexus One, you dial +358 and then the number in Finland. The +358 is the exit code plus the international code for Finland, 358.



To produce the + code in an international phone number, press and hold the 0 key on the Nexus One dialpad. Then input the country prefix and then the phone number. Touch the Dial button to complete the call.



- ✓ In most cases, dialing an international number involves a time difference. Before you dial, be aware of what time it is in the country or location you're calling.



- ✓ Dialing internationally also involves surcharges, unless your cellphone plan already provides for international dialing.
- ✓ The + character is used on the Nexus One to represent the country exit code, which must be dialed before you can access an international number. In the United States, the exit code is 011. (In the United Kingdom, it's 00.) So, if you were using a landline to dial Russia from the U.S., you dial 011 to escape from the United States and then 7, which is the country code for Russia. Then dial the rest of the number. There's no need to do that on the Nexus One because the + is always the country exit code and it replaces the 011 for U.S. users.



- ✓ The plus sign (+) character isn't a number separator. When you see an international number listed as 011+20+???????, do not dial the + character in that number. Instead, dial +20 and then the rest of the number.
- ✓ As an alternative to running up a huge bill by phoning Kerplopistan, consider using Google Voice to place international calls. Simply call your Google Voice phone number and follow the audio prompts to place an international call. Or, you can access Google Voice on the Internet to place the call. See Chapter 7 for more information on Google Voice.
- ✓ International calls fail for a number of reasons. One of the most common is that the recipient's phone company or service blocks incoming international calls.



- ✓ Another reason that international calls fail is the zero reason: Often times, you must leave out any zero in the phone number that follows the country code. So, if the country code is 254 for Kenya and the phone number starts with 012, you dial +254 for Kenya and then 12 and the rest of the number. Omit the leading zero.
- ✓ You can also send text messages to international cellphones. It works the same as for making a traditional phone call: Input the international number into the Messaging app. See Chapter 9 for more information on text messaging.
- ✓ You should know what type of phone you're calling internationally — cellphone or landline. The reason is that an international call to a cellphone often involves a surcharge that doesn't apply to a landline.

Taking your Nexus One abroad

The easiest way to use a cellphone abroad is to rent or buy a cellphone in the country where you plan to stay. I'm serious: Often, international roaming charges are so high that buying a throwaway cellphone wherever you are is just cheaper, especially if you plan to stay there for a spell.

When you opt to use your Nexus One rather than buy a local phone, things should run smoothly — if GSM cellular service is in your location. (The Nexus One uses the GSM cellular network.) The foreign carrier accepts incoming and outgoing calls from your phone, and cheerfully charges you the international roaming rate.

The key to telling whether your Nexus One is usable in a foreign country is to turn it on. The name of that country's compatible cellular service should show up at the top of the phone, where T-Mobile (or whatever your carrier is) appears on the Nexus One main screen. (Refer to Figure 2-1, in Chapter 2.)



- ✓ You receive calls on your cellphone internationally as long as the Nexus One can access the network. Your friends need only dial your cellphone number as they normally do; the phone system automatically forwards your calls to wherever you are in the world.
- ✓ The person calling you doesn't pay extra to pay extra when you're off romping the globe with your Nexus One. Nope — *you* pay extra for that call!
- ✓ Another way to save on the cost of overseas phone calls is to purchase a prepaid SIM at your destination. You can insert the SIM into the Nexus One and then use it "locally" even though you're overseas. See Chapter 1 for more information about the SIM.

Customize Your Phone

In This Chapter

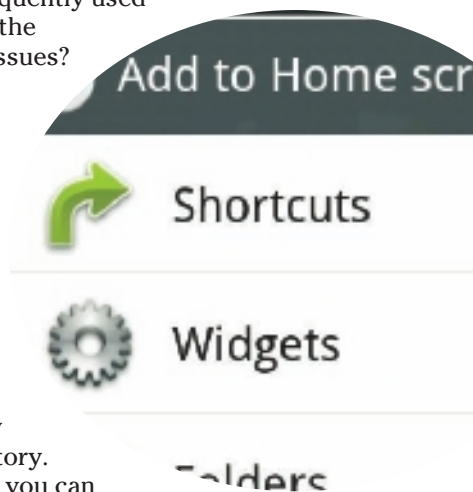
- ▶ Changing the Home screen background
- ▶ Working with icons and widgets on the Home screen
- ▶ Using folders for Home screen organization
- ▶ Adding security with an unlock pattern
- ▶ Modifying phone settings
- ▶ Setting accessibility options

Why in the heck would anyone want to customize their Nexus One? Sure, some diehard geeks will probably paint their phones or use the Bedazzler to add festive beads and sequins. On the other, technical, hand, why would anyone dare take advantage of putting frequently used apps on the Home screen or changing the time when the phone automatically goes to sleep or fixing security issues?

Well, come to think of it, some of those customizable options are useful. Anything that makes your digital life easier is good, right? Consider some of the suggestions in this chapter to see whether they help you make your Nexus One *your own* Nexus One.

It's Your Home Screen

The Nexus One sports a vast, roomy Home screen. It's really five Home screens, most of which are empty because the phone comes preconfigured from the factory. Those empty Home screens exist for a reason: So that you can fill them up! They can have new *icons* — shortcuts for your favorite apps — widgets, and folders. They can even have new wallpaper for the Home screen. Truly, you can make the Home screen be just the way you want it.



For the most part, the key to changing the Home screen is the long-press: Press and hold down your finger on a blank part of the Home screen (not on an icon). You see a pop-up menu appear, as shown in Figure 21-1. From that menu, you can begin your Home-screen-customization adventure, as discussed in this section.

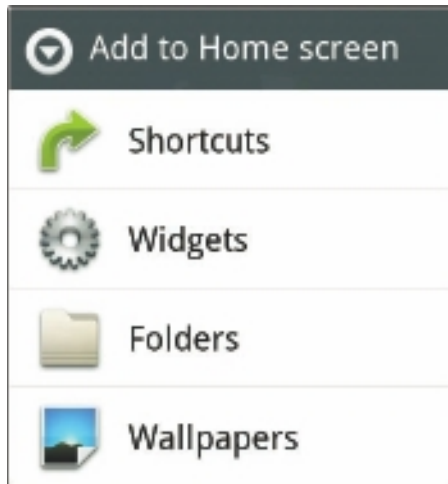


Figure 21-1: The Add to Home Screen menu.

Changing wallpaper

The Nexus One has two types of backgrounds, or *wallpapers*, on the Home screen: traditional and live. Live Wallpaper is animated. Not-so-live wallpaper can use any image, such as a picture from the Gallery.

To set a new wallpaper for the Home screen, obey these steps:

- 1. Long-press the Home screen.**

The Add to Home Screen menu appears (refer to Figure 21-1).

- 2. Choose Wallpapers.**

Another menu appears with three options, as shown in Figure 21-2.

- 3. Select an option based on the type of wallpaper.**

Your choices:

Gallery: Choose a still image stored in the Gallery app.

Live Wallpapers: Choose an animated or interactive wallpaper from a list.

Wallpapers: Choose a wallpaper from a range of stunning images (no nudity).

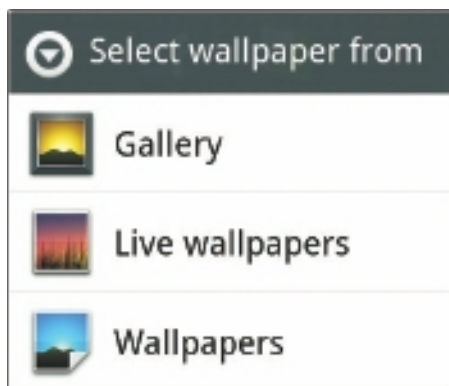


Figure 21-2: Selecting wallpaper.

4. Choose the wallpaper you want from the list.

For the Gallery option, you see a preview of the wallpaper where you can crop part of the image.

For certain Live Wallpaper, a Settings button appears. The settings let you customize certain aspects of interactive wallpaper.

5. Touch the Save button or the Set Wallpaper button to confirm your selection.

The new wallpaper takes over the Home screen.

Live Wallpaper is interactive, usually featuring some form of animation. Otherwise, the wallpaper image scrolls as you swipe from one part of the Home screen to another.

- ✓ The Linda Manager app has some interesting wallpaper features, as does the Zedge app. Check them out at the Market; see Chapter 19.
- ✓ See Chapter 16 for more information about the Gallery, including information on how cropping an image works.

Adding apps to the Home screen

You need not live with the unbearable proposition that you're stuck with only the apps that came supplied on the Home screen. Nope, you're free to add your own apps. Just follow these steps:



1. Open the Launcher to hunt down the app you want to add to the Home screen.

2. Touch — and keep pressing on — an app's icon.

After a moment, you return to the Home screen with the app's icon still stuck under your finger.



3. **Slide your finger — still pressed down — left or right to go to a left or right part of the Home screen.**

Five Home screens are on the Nexus One.

4. **Position your finger — still pressed down — on the spot where you want the app's icon to be placed.**
5. **Release your finger.**

A copy of the app's icon is placed on the Home screen. There's no need to clean your fingertip after completing these steps.

The app hasn't moved: What you see is a copy. You can still find the app from the Launcher, but now — more conveniently — the app is available on the Home screen.



- ✓ Keep your favorite apps, those you use most often, on the Home screen.
- ✓ You cannot drop an app where the Home screen is already full of apps. Try using a blank Home screen.
- ✓ When the Home screen gets too full, you can organize your apps into folders. See the later section “Organizing apps into folders.”

Slapping down widgets

Just as you can add apps to the Home screen, you can also add widgets. They work like tiny, interactive or informative applications, often providing a gateway into another app on the Nexus One.

The Nexus One comes with several widgets already affixed to the Home screen: News and Weather, Google Search, and Power Control. You can place additional widgets on the Home screen by following these steps:

1. **Long-press the Home screen.**
2. **Choose Widgets from the Add to Home Screen menu.**
3. **From the list, choose the widget you want to add.**

The widget is plopped down on the Home screen.

The variety of widgets available depends on the applications you have installed. Some applications come with widgets; some don't.

- ✓ You cannot install a widget when there's no room for it on the Home screen. Choose another Home screen, or remove icons or widgets from the current Home screen.
- ✓ To remove a widget, see the later section “Rearranging and removing icons and widgets.”

Creating shortcuts

A *shortcut* is a doodad you can place on the Home screen that's neither an app nor a widget. Instead, it's a handy way to find a feature or an information tidbit stored in the phone without going through complex gyrations.

For example, I have a shortcut on my Nexus One Home screen that uses the Maps app navigation feature to return to my house. I don't use it when I'm drunk, either.

To add a shortcut, long-press the Home screen and choose the Shortcuts command. What happens next depends on which shortcut you choose.

For example, when you choose a Bookmark, you add a Web page bookmark to the Home screen. Touch that shortcut to open the Browser app and visit that Web page.

Choose a Contact shortcut to display contact information for a specific person or choose the Dial Contact shortcut, which when pressed instantly dials that contact's main number.

Shortcuts for music, maps (Direction & Navigation), e-mail, texting, and various other types of apps are installed on your Nexus One.

A nerdy shortcut to add is the Settings shortcut. After choosing that item, you can select from a number of on-off options that can appear on the Home Screen as widgets.



The AnyCut app is useful for creating certain shortcuts that the Nexus One cannot create by itself. Check out AnyCut at the Android Market; see Chapter 19.

Rearranging and removing icons and widgets

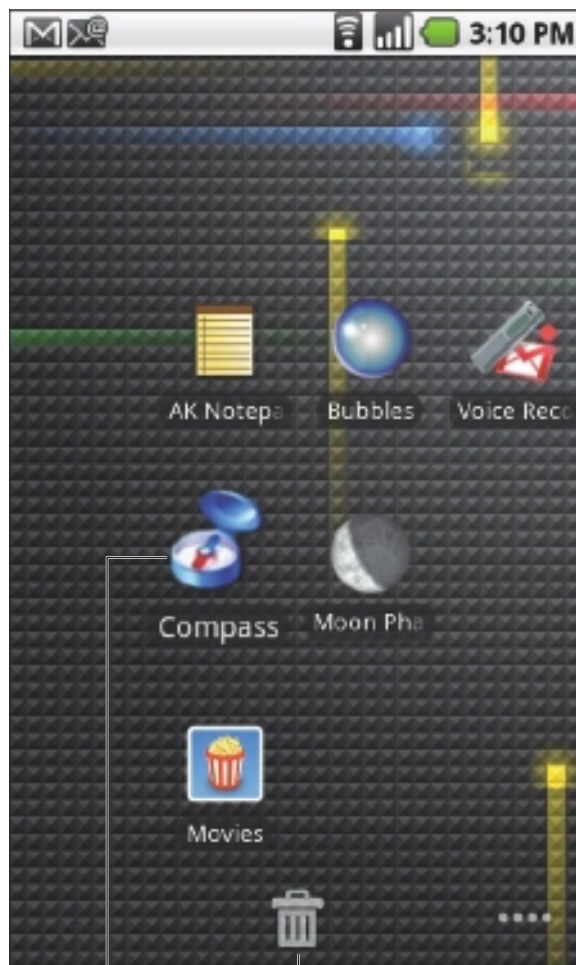
Icons and widgets aren't fastened to the Home screen. If they are, it's Silly Putty that binds them, considering how easy it is to rearrange and remove unwanted items from the Home screen.

Press and hold an icon on the Home screen to move it. Eventually, the icon seems to lift and break free, as shown in Figure 21-3.

You can drag a free icon to another position on the Home screen, to another Home screen, or to the Trash icon that appears at the bottom of the Home screen, replacing the Launcher (refer to Figure 21-3).

Widgets can also be moved around or removed in the same manner as icons.

- ✓ Dragging a Home screen icon or widget to the Trash removes that icon or widget from the Home screen. It doesn't remove the application, which can still be found on the Launcher.
- ✓ When the icon is placed over the Trash, and is ready to be deleted, its color changes to red.
- ✓ See Chapter 19 for information on removing applications.



Launcher changes to Trash icon.

Icon being pressed (appears larger)

Figure 21-3: Moving an icon about.



- ✓ Your clue that an icon or widget is free and clear to navigate is that the Launcher changes to the Trash icon (refer to Figure 21-3).

Organizing apps into folders

When you run out of room on the Home screen, or you feel like adding an extra level of Home screen organization, you can create a folder. The *folder* is used to store icons, similar to the way folders on your computer store files. The result is the same for both: organization.

Create a folder by following these steps:

- 1. Long-press the Home screen.**

- 2. Choose the Folders command.**

A list appears of many different types of folders you can create on the Home screen. The number of items in the list depends on the various apps you have installed and whether they allow you to create handy Home screen folders.

- 3. Select New Folder from the list.**



Folder

The new folder appears, as shown in the margin. You'll probably want to rename it.

- 4. Touch the folder icon to open it and show its contents.**

New folders are empty. Figure 21-4 shows a folder into which I've copied various game apps.

- 5. Long-press the folder window's title.**

Refer to Figure 21-4 for the location. When you press too briefly, the folder closes. Start over again with Step 4.

- 6. Type or dictate a new folder name.**

Touch the folder's name field to summon the onscreen keyboard.

- 7. Touch the OK button to lock in the new name.**

Optionally, close the folder by touching its X button. Refer to Figure 21-4 for the location of the X button.

Drag icons to move them into the folder, just as you drag icons around the Home screen. Or, you can drag icons from the Launcher to the folder. You simply need to "drop" the icon over the folder to move it into the folder.

To move an icon out of a folder, long-press the icon. The folder closes and then you can drag the icon to a new position on the Home screen or drag it to the Trash.

Folders are deleted by dragging them to the Trash.

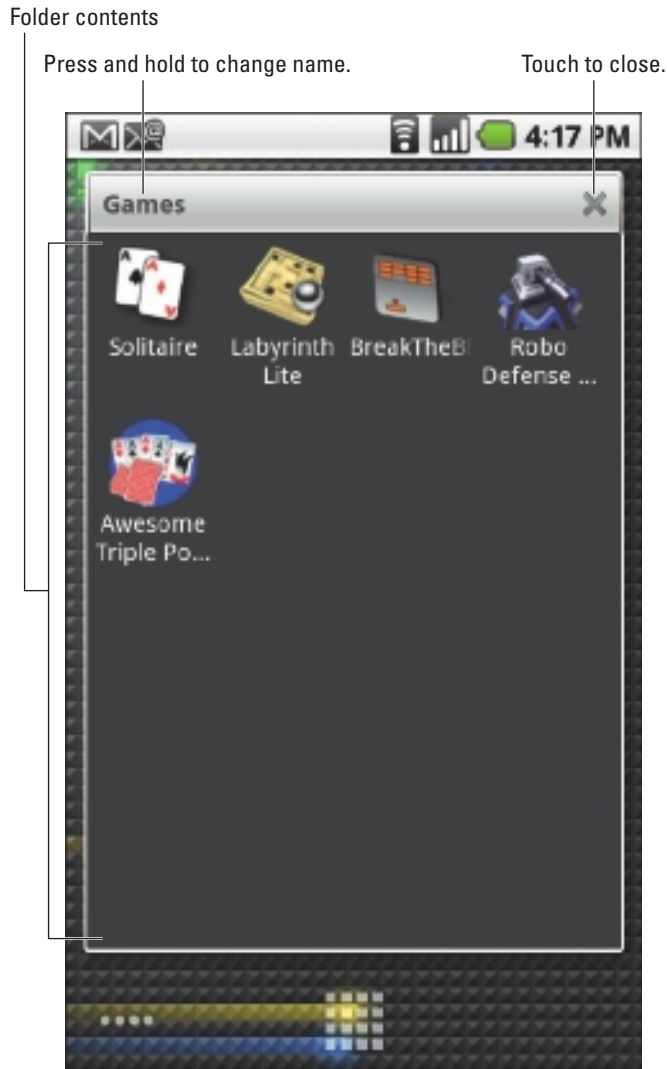


Figure 21-4: A folder for games.

Phone Security

The Nexus One offers extra security for your phone's contents in the form of various locks. These locks appear after turning on or waking up the phone, requiring whoever is using the phone to know a pattern, PIN, or password to get access.

Setting a lock

The three types of lock are chosen and set by accessing the phone's Location and Security settings. Heed these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, press the Menu soft button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Location & Security.**
4. **Choose Set Up Screen Lock.**

When a screen lock has already been set, you'll need to provide input here – trace the unlock pattern or type in a PIN or password – before you can continue.

5. **Choose one of the security options displayed.**

The three security options are displayed on the Screen Unlock Security menu, along with a None option, which removes the lock and lets you access the phone without extra security protection.

The following sections provide details for setting and removing the various locks.

Creating an unlock pattern

The unlock pattern is the graphical choice for phone security, requiring that you use your finger to trace a pattern on the screen to get access to the Nexus One.

Follow Steps 1 through 4 from the preceding section, and then choose the Pattern option to set up an unlock pattern. Draw an unlock pattern on the screen using your finger, as shown in Figure 21-5. Touch the Continue button when you're done, then draw the pattern again to confirm. Touch the Confirm button and, providing that you didn't screw up, you're done.

The pattern lock is required when you turn on the phone or when it's awakened from Snooze mode. Chapter 2 describes how to use the unlock pattern.

To remove the pattern, follow Steps 1 through 4 in the preceding section and choose None for Step 5.



- ✓ The unlock pattern can be as simple or complex as you like, though you can only choose each dot in the pattern once.
- ✓ The unlock pattern can be overridden when USB Debugging is enabled. Unless you're writing programs for the Nexus One, however, odds are good that you'll never have USB Debugging turned on.

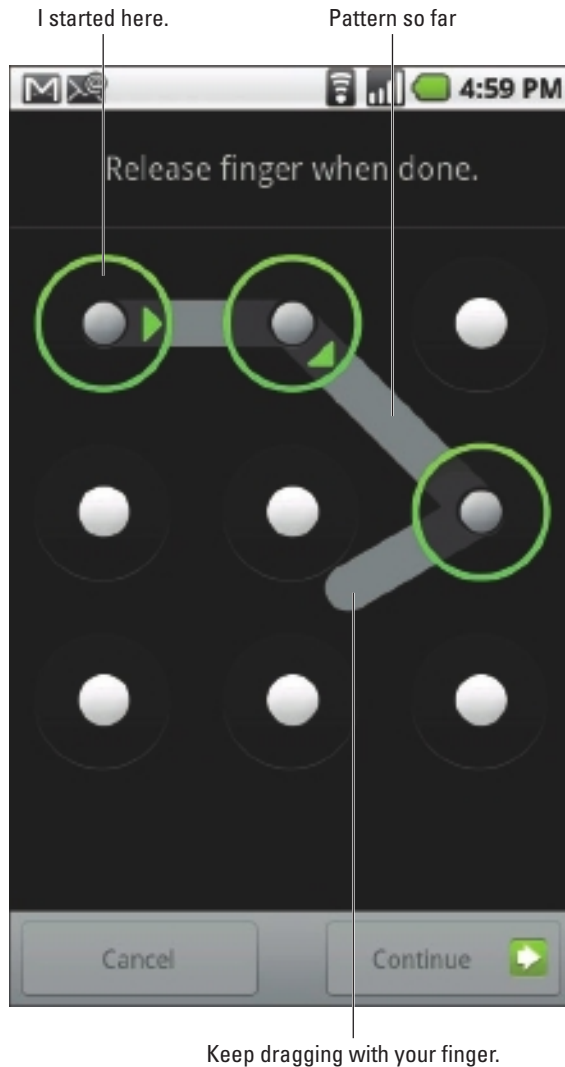


Figure 21-5: Setting an unlock pattern.

Using a PIN

To set a four-digit PIN for your Nexus One, follow Steps 1 through 4 in the section “Setting a lock” earlier in this chapter. For Step 5, choose PIN. Type a four-digit number, then touch the OK button. Type the same number again to confirm that you remember your PIN; Touch the OK button.

You’ll be required to type the PIN each time you wake up or power-on the Nexus One.

To remove the PIN, repeat Steps 1 through 4 in the section “Setting a lock,” but choose the option None for Step 5.

Adding a password

Unlike a PIN, a password lock on your Nexus One can include all kinds of characters, just like the password on your computer or the password on your secret underwater bunker where you work on your plans for world conquest.

To assign a password to your Nexus One, follow Steps 1 through 4 in the section “Setting a lock.” Then choose Password and use the onscreen keyboard to type in a password. Press the Continue button and type in the password a second time to confirm.

The password is required when you turn on or wake up the phone: Type it in and touch the OK button to get access.

To remove the password, or change to another, simpler form of security, follow Steps 1 through 4 in the section “Setting a lock,” earlier in this chapter.

- ✓ The password must be at least four characters long.
- ✓ Passwords are case-sensitive. Use the Shift key on the onscreen keyboard to get at capital letters.
- ✓ Remove the password by choosing the None option from the Screen Unlock Security menu.

Various Phone Adjustments

There are many adjustments you can make on the Nexus One. You can fix things that annoy you or change things better to please you. The whole idea is to make the phone more useable for you.

Changing various settings



Here are a smattering of things you can adjust on the phone. These settings are all made from, logically, the Settings screen. To get there from the Home screen, press the Menu soft button and choose the Settings command.



You can also view the Nexus One settings screen by choosing the Settings icon from the Launcher.

Screen brightness: Choose Display and choose Brightness. Use the slider on the screen to specify how bright the display appears, or choose the option Automatic Brightness.

Screen timeout: Choose Display and then choose Screen Timeout. Select a timeout value from the list. That duration specifies when the phone enters Snooze mode.

Volume Settings: Choose Sound and then Volume. Use the various sliders to set the loudness for the various things on the Nexus One that make noise: Ringtone, Media (music, YouTube, and so on), Alarm (for the Clock app), and the volume for Notifications. Touch OK when you're done.

Keep the phone awake when plugged in: Choose Applications and then Development. Place a check mark by the option Stay Awake.

Adjust the keyboard: Choose Language & Keyboard and then choose Android Keyboard. A smattering of interesting options appears, options you can set when they please you or deactivate when they annoy you.

Turn off the glowing trackball alert: Choose Sound and remove the check mark by Pulse Notification Light.

Using accessibility settings

If you find the Nexus One not quite meeting your needs or you notice that some features don't work well for you, consider taking advantage of some of the phone's accessibility features. Follow these steps:



1. **While at the Home screen, press the Menu soft button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Accessibility.**
4. **Place a check mark by the Accessibility option.**

Three options become available when Accessibility is on:

SoundBack: A sound plays as you use the Nexus One touch screen interface.

KickBack: The phone vibrates as you use various features on the Nexus One.

TalkBack: The phone narrates your activities.

5. **Touch the OK button after reading the scary warning.**

The accessibility feature is active.

6. **Repeat Steps 4 and 5 to active other features.**

To disable any accessibility settings, repeat these steps and remove check marks in Step 4. Or just deselect the Accessibility setting to disable them all. Touch OK to confirm.

Maintenance and Troubleshooting

In This Chapter

- ▶ Checking the phone's battery usage
- ▶ Making the battery last
- ▶ Cleaning the phone
- ▶ Keeping the system up-to-date
- ▶ Dealing with problems
- ▶ Finding support
- ▶ Getting answers to common questions

The idea behind maintenance is that you want to prevent Bad Things from happening. That's why I winterize and drain the oil from my lawnmower and snow-blower every year. Call me a nerd, but such routine activity keeps those machines operational. Fortunately, you don't need to drain the oil on your Nexus One, but there are certain maintenance duties you might consider. I've stuffed them into this chapter, which also offers some troubleshooting advice for those rare times of cellphone woe.

Battery Care and Feeding

Perhaps the most important thing you can monitor and maintain on your cellphone is its battery. The battery supplies that necessary electrical juice by which the phone operates. Without battery power, your Nexus One is about as useful as a tin can and string for communications. It's good to keep an eye on the battery.



Monitoring the battery

The Nexus One displays the current battery status at the top of the screen, in the status area, next to the time. The icons used to display battery status are shown in Figure 22-1.



Figure 22-1: Battery status icons.

You might also see an icon for when the battery is dead or missing, but for some reason I can't get my phone to turn on and display that icon.

You can check the specific battery level by following these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose About Phone.**
4. **Choose Status.**

The top two items on the Status screen offer information about the battery:

Battery Status: This setting explains what's going on with the battery. It might say Full when the battery is full, Charging when the battery is being charged, or other text depending on how desperate the phone is for power.

Battery Level: This setting reveals a percentage value, describing how much of the battery is charged. A value of 100% indicates a fully charged battery.

Later sections in this chapter describe which activities consume battery power and how to deal with battery issues.



- ✓ Heed those low-battery warnings! The phone sounds a notification when the battery gets low (the orange battery in Figure 22-1). The phone sounds another notification when the battery gets very low (the red battery in Figure 22-1).
- ✓ When the battery is too low, the phone shuts itself off.
- ✓ In addition to the status icons, the Nexus One notification light turns red when battery is dreadfully low.
- ✓ The notification light glows green when the battery is full, or yellow/orange when the battery is charging.



- ✓ The best way to deal with a low battery is to connect the phone to a power source: Either plug the phone into a wall socket or connect the phone to a computer using a USB cable. The phone charges itself immediately, and you can use the phone while it's charging.
- ✓ You don't have to fully charge the phone to use it. If you have only 20 minutes to charge and the phone returns to only the 70 percent battery level, that's great. Well, it's not great, but it's far better than a 20 percent battery level.
- ✓ When the battery gets really low, you see a pop-up message on the screen, urging you to plug it in *at once!*



- ✓ Battery percentage values are best-guess estimates. Just because you talked for two hours and the battery shows 50% doesn't mean that you're guaranteed two more hours of talking. Odds are that you have much less than two hours. In fact, as the percentage value decreases, the battery appears to drain faster.

Determining what is sucking up power

A nifty screen on the Nexus One reviews which activities have been consuming power when the phone is operating from its battery. The informative screen is shown in Figure 22-2. To get to that screen, follow these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose About Phone.**
4. **Choose Battery Use.**

You see a screen similar to the one shown in Figure 22-2.



Figure 22-2: Things that drain the battery.

The number and variety of items listed on the Battery Use screen depend on what you've been doing with your phone between charges and how many different programs you're using.

Carefully note which applications consume the most battery power. If possible, try to curb your usage of those programs to conserve the juice. For example, I could have saved 5 percent by not playing Awesome Triple Poker Pro, shown in Figure 22-2. (Five percent of *what* exactly, I don't know.)



See Chapter 25 for information on the Advanced Task Killer program, which can be used to disable phone services that may not only consume battery power but slow down the phone as well.

Saving battery life

Here are a smattering of things you can do to help prolong battery life in your Nexus One:

Use a slower network. The fast, 3G network drains lots of battery power. You can use a slower network — 2G or EDGE instead of 3G. To force that option upon the Nexus One, heed these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Wireless & Networks.**
4. **Choose Mobile Networks.**
5. **Place a check mark by the option Use Only 2G Networks.**

Touch the box so that a green check mark appears. Or, when you already see a green check mark there, there's nothing else you need do.

The 2G networks are slower, but you still get Internet and data access.

Turn off vibration options. The phone's vibration is caused by a teensy motor. Though you don't see much battery savings by disabling the vibration options, it's better than no savings at all. To turn off vibration, follow these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Sound, and then choose Vibrate.**
4. **Choose Never.**
5. **Remove the check mark by Haptic Feedback.**

The Haptic Feedback option causes the phone to vibrate when you touch the soft buttons.

Additionally, consider lowering the notifications volume, which also saves a modicum of battery life, though in my travels I've missed important notifications by setting the volume too low.

Dim the screen. If you look at Figure 22-2, you see that the Display sucks down quite a lot of the battery's power. Though a dim screen can be more difficult to see, especially outdoors, it definitely saves on battery life.

Battery replacement

Unlike with some cellphones, you can easily replace the battery in the Nexus One. Chapter 1 discusses how to install and remove the battery. It's cinchy! But the real issues are when to replace the battery and what to replace it with.

Under normal usage, the battery in the Nexus One should last at least as long as your two-year cellular contract. The battery is probably good for about four years, if treated properly. Even so, at some point the battery will fail. The

battery charge decreases. Eventually, the battery doesn't even hold a charge.

Ensure that any replacement battery you buy is compatible with the Nexus One. Any battery from HTC (the phone's manufacturer) or from Google works best. Otherwise, ensure that the battery is a 1400 mAH battery designed for the Nexus One. Avoid buying batteries for your electronic devices at swap meets or from the back of trucks in grocery store parking lots.



You can set the screen brightness using the Power Control widget on the home page; touch the brightness button to change the screen intensity.

You can also set the brightness from the Settings app: Choose Sound & Display then choose Brightness.

Turn off Bluetooth. When you're not using Bluetooth, turn it off. Or, when you really need that cyborg Bluetooth ear thing, try to keep your phone plugged in. See Chapter 13 for information on turning off Bluetooth, though it can be done quickly from the Power Control widget on the Home screen.

Turn off Wi-Fi. Nexus One Wi-Fi networking keeps you on the Internet at top speeds but drains the battery. Because I tend to use Wi-Fi when I'm in one place, I keep my phone plugged in. Otherwise, the battery drains like my bank account at Christmas. Refer to Chapter 13 for information on turning off the phone's Wi-Fi.

Disable automatic syncing. The Nexus One syncs quite often. In fact, I'm surprised when I update something on the Internet and find the phone updated almost instantly. When you need to save battery power, and frequent updates aren't urgent (such as when you're spending a day traveling), disable automatic syncing by following these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Accounts & Sync.**
4. **Touch Background Data to remove the green check mark.**
5. **Touch the OK button to confirm.**



When saving battery juice isn't as important, remember to repeat these steps to reenable background and automatic synchronization.

Regular Phone Maintenance

There are only two tasks you can do for regular maintenance on the phone. You can keep it clean, which is probably something you're doing already. And you can keep important information backed up.

Keeping it clean

You probably already keep your phone pretty clean. I must use my sleeve to wipe the touch screen at least a dozen times a day. Of course, better than your sleeve is something called a *microfiber cloth*. Such a cloth can be found at any computer or office supply store.



- ✓ Never use liquid to clean the touch screen, especially ammonia or alcohol, which damage the touch screen.
- ✓ If the screen keeps getting dirty, try a screen protector. Its specially designed cover keeps the screen from getting scratched or dirty, but also allows you to use the touch screen with your finger. Be sure to obtain a screen protector designed for use with the Nexus One.
- ✓ You can also find customized Nexus One cellphone cases and protectors, though I've found that those items are purely for decorative or fashion purposes and don't prevent serious damage if you drop the phone.

Backing up your phone

There are two aspects to backing up your Nexus One: backing up settings, which involves the Google servers on the Internet, and backing up the information on the MicroSD card.

Backing up your phone's settings takes place automatically. To ensure that everything is set properly, heed these steps:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Privacy.**
4. **Ensure that a green check mark appears by the option Back Up My Settings.**

When no check mark is there, touch the gray square to add one.

Where to find phone information

Who knows what evil lurks inside the heart of your phone? Well, the phone itself knows. You can view information such as battery information, phone number, mobile network, how long the phone's been on, plus other information. To see that trivia, summon the Status app, choose About Phone, and then choose Status.

For specific information about your account, such as minutes used, data transmitted, and

other trivia, you have to visit the cellular service's Web site. In the U.S., the Nexus One was supported by the T-Mobile network at the time this book went to press. The Web site is t-mobile.com. You need to set up or access your account, which then leads you to information on your phone usage.

By backing up the Nexus One settings, you ensure that information stored on your current Google phone smoothly transfers to your next Google phone — *if* you follow proper setup procedures.



The Nexus One has no native way to back up the data on its MicroSD card. To do so, you must perform a manual backup, which copies the information from the MicroSD card to another location, such as your computer. You use that safety copy of the MicroSD card's information to restore those files to the MicroSD if anything bad happens to the phone.

For more information on copying the information from the MicroSD card, find a reference for your computer's operating system that covers copying files.

Updating the system

Every so often, a new version of your phone's operating system becomes available. It's called an *Android update* because Android is the name of the Nexus One operating system — not because your phone is some type of robot.

When an automatic update occurs, you see an alert or message appear on the phone, indicating that a system upgrade is available. You have three choices:

- ✓ Install Now
- ✓ Install Later
- ✓ More Info

My advice is to choose Install Now and get it over with — unless you're waiting on a call, a message, or another urgent notification, in which case you can choose Install Later and be bothered with the message again.



You can manually check for updates: From the Settings screen, choose About Phone and then choose System Updates. When your system is up-to-date, the screen tells you so. Otherwise, you find directions for updating the system.

- ✓ Turning on the phone's Wi-Fi makes the update download faster. See Chapter 13.
- ✓ The Nexus One restarts after an update.

Help and Troubleshooting

Things aren't as bad as they were in the old days. Back then, you had two sources for help: the atrocious manual that came with your electronic device or a phone call to the guy who wrote the atrocious manual. It was unpleasant. Today, things are better. Many resources exist for solving issues with your gizmos, including the Nexus One.

Fixing random and annoying problems

Aren't all problems annoying? There isn't really such a thing as a welcome problem, unless the problem is welcome because it diverts attention from another, preexisting problem. And random problems? If problems were predictable, they'd be serving in office. Or maybe they already are?

Here are some typical problems and my suggestions for a solution.

General trouble: For just about any problem or minor quirk, consider restarting the phone: Turn the phone off and then turn the phone on again. That procedure will most likely fix a majority of the annoying and quirky problems you encounter with the Nexus One.

When restarting doesn't work, consider turning off the Nexus One and removing its battery. Wait about 15 seconds and then return the battery to the phone and turn the phone on again.

Check the data connection: Sometimes the data connection drops but the phone connection stays active. Check the status bar. If you see bars, you have a phone signal. When you don't see the 3G, E, G, or Wi-Fi icons, your phone has no data signal.

Sometimes the data signal just drops for a minute or two. Wait around, and it comes back. If it doesn't, the cellular data network could be down, or you may just be in an area with lousy service. Consider changing your location.

For wireless connections, you have to ensure that the Wi-Fi is set up properly and working. That usually involves pestering the person who configured or made the Wi-Fi signal available, such as the happy person in the green apron who serves you coffee.

Music begins to play while you're on the phone: I find this quirk most annoying. For some reason, you start to hear music playing while you're in a conversation on the phone. I actually wonder why the phone's software doesn't disable music from being able to play while the phone is in use. Anyway, it might seem impossible to stop the music. It's not:

Press the Home soft button to return to the Home screen. (You might have to unlock the phone.) Pull down the notifications and choose the Music Playing notification. Press the Pause button to pause the damn music.

The MicroSD card is busy: Most often, the MicroSD card is busy because you've connected the Nexus One to a computer and the computer is accessing the phone's storage system. To unbusy the MicroSD card, unmount the phone or stop the USB storage. See Chapter 13.

When the MicroSD card remains busy, consider restarting the phone as described earlier in this section.

A program has run amok: Sometimes programs that misbehave let you know. You see a warning on the screen, similar to the one shown in Figure 22-3. Touch the Force Close button to shut down the errant program.

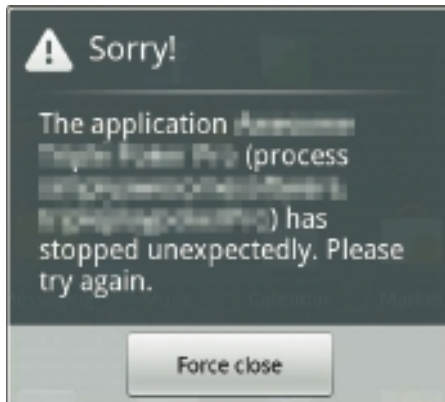


Figure 22-3: A program has gone stanky.

When you don't see a warning or a program appears to be unduly stubborn, you can shut 'er down the manual way by following these steps:



1. **From the Launcher, choose the Settings icon.**
2. **Choose Applications.**
3. **Choose Manage Applications.**
4. **Choose the application that's causing you distress.**

For example, a program might not start, or it might say that it's busy, or another program might have a problem.

5. **Touch the Force Stop button.**

The program stops if it's running.

After stopping the program, try opening it again to see whether it works. If the program continues to run amok, contact its developer: Open the Market app and choose Downloads. Open the app you're having trouble with and choose the option Send Email to Developer. Send the person a message describing the problem.



Reset the phone's software (a drastic measure): When all else fails, you can take the drastic route and reset all the phone's software, essentially restoring your phone to the state it was in when it first arrived. Obviously, you need not perform this step lightly. In fact, consider getting support (see the next section) before you do this:



1. **From the Home screen, touch the Menu button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Privacy.**
4. **Choose Factory Data Reset.**
5. **Touch the button Reset Phone.**

All the information that you've set or stored on the phone is purged.

Again, please don't follow these steps unless you're certain that they fix the problem or you're under orders to do so from tech support.

Getting support

The easiest way to find support for the Nexus One is to dial 611. You're greeted by a cheerful Google employee who will gladly help you with various phone issues. Or, if you need to contact your cellular service provider, they'll transfer you.

On the Internet, you can find support at the following Web sites:

www.google.com/support/android

www.htc.com/www/support/nexusone

<http://market.android.com/support>

www.t-mobile.com/Contact.aspx

Nexus One Q&A

I just love Q&A! That's because not only is it an effective way to express certain problems and solutions, but also some of the questions might be ones I've been wanting to ask.



Consider visiting the Google support forums (the first link in the preceding section) for more Q&A. Odds are good that your question will have already been asked — and answered.

“The touch screen doesn’t work!”

Touch screens, like the one used on the Nexus One, require a human finger for proper interaction. The phone interprets a slight static charge between the human finger and phone to determine where the touch screen is being touched.

You cannot use the touch screen when you're wearing gloves, unless they're specially designed static-carrying gloves that claim to work on a touch screen. Batman wears those types of gloves, so they probably do exist in real life.

The touch screen might also fail when the battery is low or the phone has been physically damaged.

“The keyboard is too small!”

It's not that the keyboard is too small; it's that you're a human being and not a marsupial. Your fingers are too big!



You can rotate the phone to landscape orientation to see a larger keyboard. Not every app may feature a landscape orientation keyboard. When they do, you'll find typing on the wider keyboard much easier.

“The battery won’t charge!”

Start from the source: Is the wall socket providing power? Is the cord plugged in? The cable may be damaged, so try another cable.

When charging from a USB port on a computer, ensure that the computer is turned on. Most computers don’t provide USB power when they’re turned off.

“The phone gets so hot that it turns itself off!”

Yikes! An overheating phone can be a nasty problem. Judge how hot the phone is by whether you can hold it in your hand. When it’s too hot to hold, the phone is too hot. If you’re using the phone to warm up your coffee, the phone is too hot.

Turn the phone off. Take out the battery and let it cool.

If the overheating problem continues, the phone should be looked at for potential repair. The battery might need replacing.

Do not continue to use a phone that gets too hot! The heat damages the phone’s electronics. It can also start a fire.



“The phone doesn’t do Landscape mode!”

Not every program takes advantage of the Nexus One’s ability to orient itself in Landscape mode. For example, the Home screen doesn’t do Landscape. One program that definitely does Landscape mode is the Browser, described in Chapter 11. So, just because the app doesn’t enter Landscape mode doesn’t mean that it can do Landscape or that the phone is broken.

The phone has a setting you can check to confirm that landscape orientation is active: From the Launcher, choose Settings and then Display. Ensure that a check mark appears by the item Auto-Rotate Screen. If it doesn’t, touch the square to put a green check mark there.

Part VI

The Part of Tens



In this part . . .

A list of one is no fun and two is too few. A list of three can be with a list of four one more. You can have five top picks, which is easier than six. Some can manage seven, which is great but still one less than eight. Nine is fine when you have the time. To be king of lists and cap off a win, proudly pound your fists when the list reaches ten.

This last, traditional part of a *For Dummies* book contains chapters listing ten items apiece. You'll find useful lists, tips, shortcuts, and suggestions, all neatly packaged into chapters containing ten items.



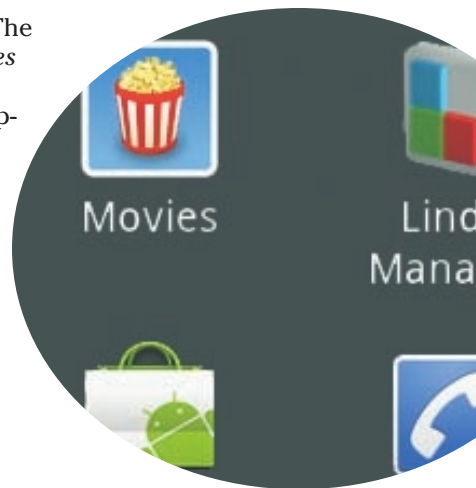
Ten Tips, Tricks, and Shortcuts

In This Chapter

- ▶ Accessing recent apps
- ▶ Setting e-mail updates
- ▶ Halting unnecessary services
- ▶ Making the keyboard more usable
- ▶ Adding words to the Dictionary
- ▶ Setting vibration mode quickly
- ▶ Adding direct dial and direct messaging shortcuts
- ▶ Finding a lost phone
- ▶ Creating event locations

This chapter has certainly grown over the years. The original chapter was found in my book *Telephones For Dummies*, published in the 1930s. Back then, *For Dummies* titles had the Part of Ones, where each chapter had only one item in it. For this chapter's ancestor, the tip was obvious: When the phone rings, pick up the receiver and say Hello. It was part of the then-new Pavlovian concept of answering a telephone. Those were the days.

I'm certain there are way more than ten tips, tricks, and shortcuts for the Nexus One. Even so, I distilled the list down to what I feel are ten of the best, presented in this chapter.



Summon a Recently Opened App

I have to kick myself in the head every time I return to the Launcher to, once again, scroll through the list o' icons to dig up an app I just opened. Why bother? Because I can press and hold the Home soft button to instantly see a list of recently opened apps, similar to the one shown in Figure 23-1.

Pressing and holding the Home soft button works no matter what you're doing with the phone; you don't necessarily have to be viewing the Home screen to see the list of recently opened apps.

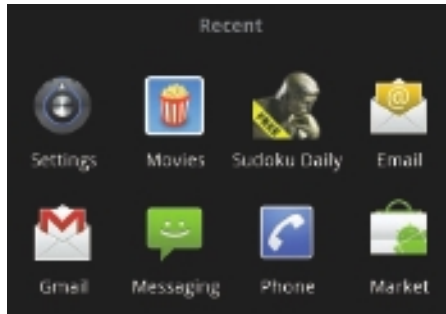


Figure 23-1: Recently opened apps.

Redundant E-Mail Checking

It may seem silly to have your Nexus One check for email when you have the phone at your computer. That's because e-mail arriving in the Nexus One also arrives on your computer. In fact, the Nexus One serves as a second e-mail alert for you, depending on how frequently you check for new messages.

Then again, you can easily disable e-mail checking while you have your phone at your computer by following these steps:



1. Start the Email program.

2. If necessary, choose an e-mail account.

For example, if you see the combined inbox, choose a specific account.

3. Press the Menu soft button.

4. Choose Account Settings.

5. Choose Email Check Frequency.

6. Choose Never.

Or, choose 5 minutes or another setting if you prefer to have your e-mail checked, or are restoring the setting for those times when you're away from your computer.

I prefer to have e-mail not checked, not only when I'm at my computer but also when I'm in town. I direct my Nexus One to check e-mail only when I'm out of town.



- ✓ You need to make the setting for each of your e-mail accounts when you're using a combined inbox. Repeat the steps in this section for each e-mail account.
- ✓ The frequency setting need not be made for Gmail, which operates differently from e-mail on the Nexus One.
- ✓ See Chapter 10 for more information about e-mail on your Nexus One.

Stop Unneeded Services

Things might be going on in your Nexus One that you don't need or don't even suspect. These things are computer activities, usually the monitoring of information or the phone's status. The technique term for these activities is *services*.

When a service has started that you don't want, or have been requested to stop, you can halt the service. Here's how:



- 1. While at the Home screen, press the Menu soft button.**
- 2. Choose Settings.**
- 3. Choose Applications.**
- 4. Choose Running Services.**
- 5. Touch a service to stop it.**

Most likely, it's a service you recognize that you don't need, or a service you've been directed to disable from another source or authority.

- 6. Touch the Stop button to halt the service.**

Also refer to Chapter 25 for information on the Advanced Task Killer app.

When you stop a service, you free phone resources used by that service. These resources include memory and processor power. The result of stopping unneeded services can be improved performance.

The service starts up again the next time you start the phone. The only way to halt a specific service is to uninstall the program associated with that service, which is a drastic step.



Do not randomly disable services. Many of them are required for the Nexus One to do its job, or for programs you use to carry out their tasks. If you disable a service you don't recognize and the phone begins to act funny, turn the phone off and then on again to fix the problem.

Set Keyboard Feedback

Typing on a touch screen keyboard isn't easy. Aside from the screen being tiny (or your fingers being big), it's difficult to tell what you're typing. You can add some feedback to the typing process. Heed these steps:



1. **While at the Home screen, press the Menu soft button.**
2. **Choose Settings.**
3. **Choose Language & Keyboard.**
4. **Choose Android Keyboard.**
5. **Put a check mark by the option Vibrate on Keypress.**

This option causes physical feedback whenever you press a “key” on the onscreen keyboard.

6. **Put a check mark by the option Sound on Keypress.**

The Nexus One makes a sound when you type on the onscreen keyboard. Clackity-clack-clack.

Of the two options, I prefer Sound on Keypress. The phone makes a different sound for the character keys and spacebar, which reminds me of my ancient typewriter.

Yeah, *keypress* is really two words: Key press.

Add a Word to the Dictionary

Betcha didn't know that the Nexus One has a dictionary. The dictionary is used to keep track of words you type using the onscreen keyboard, words that may not be recognized as being spelled properly.

To add a word to the Nexus One dictionary, long-press the word after you type it. From the menu that appears, choose the Add “*Word*” to Dictionary command, where *Word* is the word you want to add.

You can also choose the word when it appears in the list of suggestions, shown in Figure 23-2. Long-press the word, as shown in the figure, to add it to the dictionary. The confirmation that appears is your clue that the word has been added.

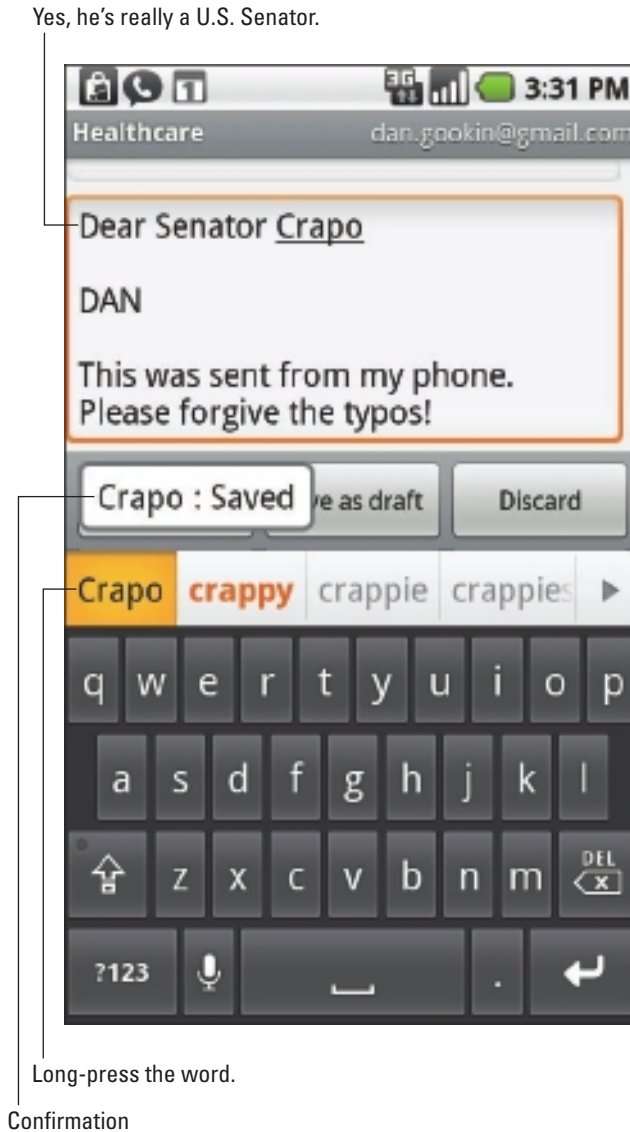


Figure 23-2: Adding a word to the dictionary.

To review the contents of the dictionary, open the Settings app and choose Language & Keyboard and then User Dictionary. You see a list of words you've added. Touch a word to edit it or remove it from the dictionary.

Set Vibrate with the Volume Control

A quick way to activate Vibrate mode on the Nexus One is to press the volume button until the volume setting moves one notch below silent. That notch is Vibrate. Figure 23-3 illustrates what you see on the screen.

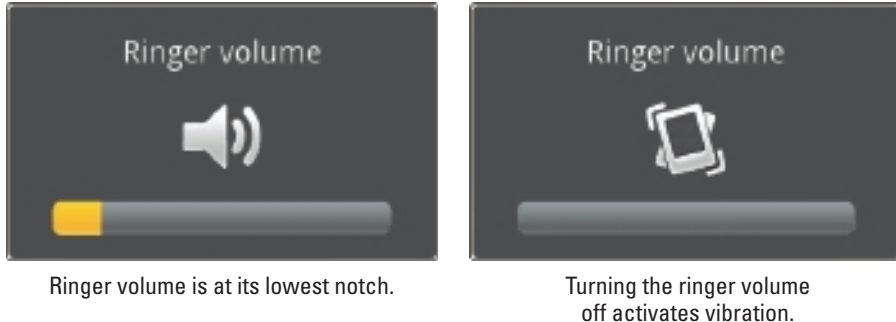


Figure 23-3: Setting vibration with the volume control.

The volume control is located on the left side of the phone (refer to Figure 1-3), in Chapter 1.

This trick won't work when you've disabled vibration for the Nexus One. See Chapter 22, the section "Saving battery life." When Vibration is turned off (set to Never) then turning down the volume control merely silences the phone.

Create a Direct-Dial Screen Shortcut

For the numbers you dial most frequently, you have the Favorites list, as described in Chapter 5. For überfavorites, you have desktop shortcuts. Here's how to create a direct-dial shortcut on the Home screen for the people you call often:

- 1. Long-press the Home screen.**
- 2. Choose Shortcuts.**
- 3. Choose Direct Dial.**
- 4. Choose the contact you want to direct-dial.**

The Contacts list that's displayed contains every contact who has a phone number. Entries are sorted alphabetically by first name, and folks with multiple phone numbers have multiple entries.

After you choose a contact, an icon representing that person appears on the Home screen. If the contact has an image, that image appears instead of the generic Android icon.

To dial the contact, touch their direct dial icon. The phone number is dialed instantly.

Create a Direct Text-Message Screen Shortcut

Just as you can create a direct-dial shortcut (shown in the preceding section), you can create an icon to directly text-message a contact. Here's how:

- 1. Long-press the Home screen.**
- 2. Choose Shortcuts.**
- 3. Choose Direct Message.**
- 4. Choose the contact you want to text.**

The icon that appears on the Home screen can be used to instantly send the contact a text message. Simply touch the icon and start typing with your thumbs.

See Chapter 9 for more information about text messaging.

Find Your Lost Cellphone

Someday you're going to lose your Nexus One. It might be for a brief, panic-filled few seconds, or it could be forever. Aside from welding a chain to your phone, I have a software solution to suggest.

Various cellphone locator services are available, specifically for phones such as the Nexus One that feature GPS and communicate with satellites. One of the most notable is Mobile Defense. It comes as an app and a Web site that help you keep track of your Nexus One (or any Android phone) if it gets lost or stolen or even tampered with.

For more information, see the Mobile Defense Web site:

www.mobildefense.com

You can download the Mobile Defense app from the Market; see Chapter 19.

As this book goes to press, the Mobile Defense service is available at no charge. In the future, however, you will have to pay a subscription fee. Check into my Wambooli Web site for any updates regarding the Mobile Defense service:

www.wambooli.com/help/phone

Enter Location Information for Your Events

When you create an event for the Calendar app, be sure to enter the event's location. You can type an address (if you know it) or the name of the location. The key is to type in text as you would for the Map app when searching for a location. That way, you can touch the event location and the Nexus One displays that location on the touch screen. Finding an address couldn't be easier.

- ✓ See Chapter 14 for more information about the Maps app.
- ✓ See Chapter 18 for details about the Calendar.

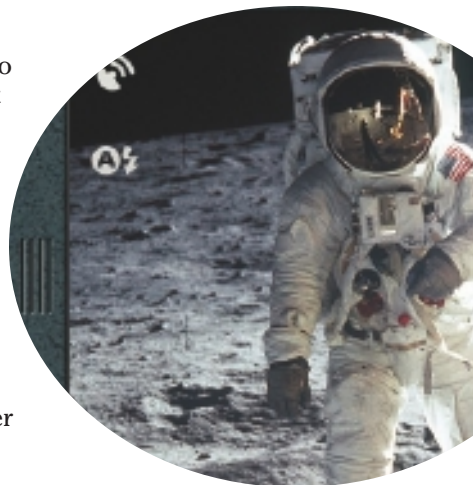
Ten Things to Remember

In This Chapter

- ▶ Locking the phone
- ▶ Using landscape orientation
- ▶ Taking advantage of the trackball
- ▶ Saving typing time
- ▶ Minding things that consume battery power
- ▶ Checking for phone roaming service
- ▶ Using the + key to dial international calls
- ▶ Mounting and unmounting the MicroSD card
- ▶ Taking a picture of your contacts
- ▶ Using the Search command

The original title of this chapter was “Ten Things to Forget.” The problem with that chapter’s content was that I couldn’t recall for the life of me which ten items I could recommend that you not remember. Oh, well. Things like that just fly out of my brain sometimes. I should wear a hairnet.

I’ve narrowed the list of the myriad things you can forget or, well, remember regarding using your Nexus One and placed ten good ones into this chapter. As I remember more things, I’ll probably panic and contact the publisher, but by then it will be too late. So visit my Web site for more things to remember and Nexus One updates: www.wambooli.com.



Lock the Phone on a Call

Whether you dialed out or someone dialed in, after you start talking, lock the phone: Press the power button atop the Nexus One. By doing so, you ensure that the touch screen is disabled and the call won't be unintentionally disconnected.

Of course, a call can still be disconnected by a dropped signal, or the other party may get all huffy and hang up on you, but by locking the phone, you should prevent a stray finger or your pocket from disconnecting (or muting) the phone.

Landscape Orientation

Too many times, I find myself using the phone and cursing my stubby fingers. Then I slap myself in the forehead and tilt the phone to the left. Yes sir, landscape orientation comes to the rescue. Some applications give you a wider screen view, larger keyboard, and more room to touch buttons in landscape orientation.



Not every app supports landscape orientation.

Use the Trackball

Some smartphones have a touch screen. Some smartphones use a trackball. The Nexus One has *both*. Even though you can touch items on the screen, swipe, pinch, and spread, keep in mind that the trackball can also be used to manipulate things.

- ✓ The trackball comes in amazingly handy for finding, moving between, and clicking links on a Web page.
- ✓ The trackball can precisely locate the insertion pointer for selecting and editing text.
- ✓ Try using the trackball in some games. You'll be surprised where it can be used.
- ✓ Pressing the trackball button doesn't wake up or unlock the phone.



Use the Keyboard Suggestions

Don't forget to take advantage of the suggestions that appear above the keyboard when you're typing text. In fact, you don't even need to touch a suggestion; to replace your text with the highlighted suggestion, simply touch the onscreen keyboard's spacebar. Zap! The word appears.

- ✓ Two settings ensure that the keyboard suggestions work as advertised: Show Suggestions and Auto Complete. To ensure that both settings are active, open the Settings app and choose Language & Keyboard and then Android Keyboard.
- ✓ Refer to Figure 4-6, from Chapter 4, to see how the onscreen keyboard suggestions work.

Things That Consume Lots of Battery Juice

Three things on the Nexus One suck down battery power faster than a thirsty vampire at the blood bank:

- ✓ Wi-Fi networking
- ✓ Bluetooth
- ✓ Navigation

Both Wi-Fi networking and Bluetooth require extra power for their wireless networking. When you need that speed or connectivity, it's great! I try to use my phone plugged into a power source when I'm accessing Wi-Fi or using Bluetooth. Otherwise, disconnect from those networks as soon as you're done, to save power.

Navigation using the Maps app is certainly handy, but because the phone is on the entire time and dictating text to you, the battery drains rapidly. If possible, try to plug the phone into the car's power socket when you're navigating. If you can't, keep an eye on that battery meter.

See Chapter 22 for more information on managing the Nexus One battery.

Check for Roaming



Roaming can be expensive. The last non-smartphone (dumbphone?) I owned racked up \$180 in roaming charges the month before I switched over to a better cellular plan. Even though you too may have a good cell plan, keep an eye on the phone's status bar. Ensure that when you're making a call, you don't see the roaming status icon, shown in the margin.

Well, yes, it's okay to make a call when you're roaming. My advice is to remember to *check* for the icon, not to avoid it. If possible, try to make your phone calls when you're back in the coverage area of your cellular service. If you can't, make the phone call but keep in mind that you'll be charged roaming fees. They ain't cheap.

Use the Plus Sign When Dialing Internationally

I suppose most folks are careful when dialing an international number. On the Nexus One, you can use the plus sign (+) key to replace the country's exit code. In the United States, that code is 011. So, when you see an international number listed as 011-xxx-xxxxxxx, you can instead dial +xxx-xxxxxxx, where an x represents a number to dial.

See Chapter 20 for more information on international dialing.

Properly Access the MicroSD Card

To access Nexus One storage using your computer, you must properly mount the phone's MicroSD card. After the card is mounted, you can use your computer to access files — music, videos, still pictures, contacts, and other information — stored on the Nexus One.

When the MicroSD card is mounted on a computer storage system, you cannot access the card using the phone. If you try, you see a message explaining that the MicroSD card is busy.

When you're done accessing the MicroSD card from your computer, be sure to stop USB storage: Pull down the USB notification and choose Turn Off USB Storage. Touch the Turn Off USB Storage button. (See Chapter 13 for more details.)



Do not simply unplug the phone from the USB cable when the computer is accessing the MicroSD card. If you do so, you could damage the MicroSD card and lose all the information stored there.

Snap a Pic of That Contact

Be sure to do something that I always forget to do: Whenever you're near one of your contacts, take their picture. Sure, some people are bashful, but most folks are flattered. The idea is to build up your contact list so that your contacts all have photos. That makes receiving a call much more interesting when you see the caller's picture displayed, especially silly or embarrassing pictures.

When taking the picture, be sure to show it to the person before you assign it to the contact. Let them decide whether it's good enough. Or, if you just want to be rude, assign the person a crummy-looking picture. Heck, you don't even have to do that: Just take a random picture of anything and assign it to a contact. But, seriously, keep in mind that the phone can take a contact's picture the next time you meet.

See Chapter 15 for more information on using the Nexus One camera and assigning a picture to a contact.

The Search Command

Google is known worldwide for its searching abilities. By gum, the word *google* is now synonymous for searching. So please don't forget that the Google phone, the Nexus One, has a powerful search command.



The search command is not only powerful, it's also available all over. The Search soft button can be pressed at any time, in just about any program to search for information, locations, people — you name it. It's handy. It's everywhere. Use it.

Ten Worthy Apps

In This Chapter

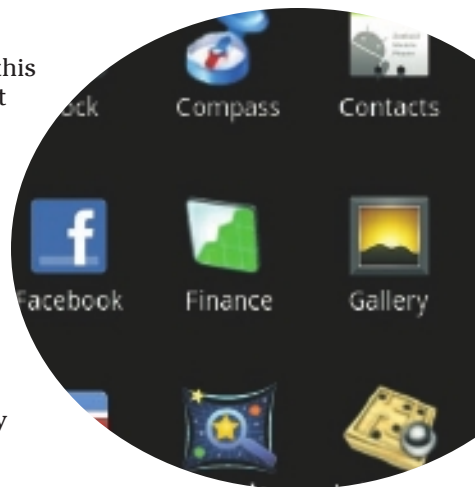
- ▶ Advanced Task Killer
- ▶ AK Notepad
- ▶ FlightMode Control Widget
- ▶ Google Finance
- ▶ Linda Manager
- ▶ Movies
- ▶ Ringdroid
- ▶ ScreenMode Widget
- ▶ Voice Recorder
- ▶ Zedge

Welcome to the most controversial chapter of this book! It's almost impossible to narrow the list of more than 40,000 Android apps for the Nexus One into 10 that are most worthy.

I know for certain that I haven't tried *all* the apps. Still, I feel I should pass along some suggestions and ideas for what I've found to be my favorites.

I'm open to adding to this list, for future versions of this book as well as on my Web page at www.wambooli.com. Feel free to send me suggestions. Until then, here are the ten apps that I feel are worthy of your attention.

They're all free. Get them at the Android Market. See Chapter 19.



Advanced Task Killer



Advanced Task Killer displays a list of programs that run in the background on your Nexus One. Those programs continue to run whether you're using them or not, which consumes resources and sucks battery life and potentially makes the phone run slower.

By using Advanced Task Killer, you can halt some of the programs that run in the background. Specifically, you can halt programs you don't need all the time.

For example, choose the Finance program from the list to halt Google Finance from running all the time. Though that action doesn't prevent you from using Google Finance, it frees up resources. Similarly, you can halt other background programs to improve the phone's performance.

Advanced Task Killer is perhaps the most popular free program available for Android phones. When used properly, it can greatly improve your phone's performance.

AK Notepad



One program I feel that the Nexus One is missing out of the box is a notepad. A good choice for an app to fill that void is AK Notepad. You can type or dictate short messages and memos, which I find handy to have with me.

For example, for a recent visit to the hardware store, I simply dictated a list of what I needed by using AK Notepad. I also keep some important items as notes, things that I often forget or don't care to remember, such as frequent flyer numbers, my dress shirt and suit size (like I ever need that info), and other important notes I might need handy but prefer not to clutter my brain with.

Perhaps the most important note you can make is your contact information. A note titled In Case You Find This Phone on my Nexus One contains information about me in case my phone is ever lost and someone would be decent enough to search the phone for my information. (Also see Chapter 23 for information on Mobile Defense.)

FlightMode Control Widget



FlightMode Control isn't a program — it's a widget. You download it from the Market just like an app, but you don't find it on the Launcher. Instead, you add FlightMode Control to the Home screen as a widget, described in Chapter 21.

What the FlightMode Control widget does is give you one-touch access to the phone's Airplane mode. I find this mode a lot easier to use than the power button or the Airplane Mode command, buried deep in the Settings screens.

See Chapter 20 for more information on Airplane mode.

Google Finance



The Google Finance app is an excellent market-tracking tool for folks who are obsessed with the stock market or want to keep an eye on their portfolio. The app offers you an overview of the market, updates to your stocks, as well as links to financial news.

To get the most from the Google Finance app, configure Google Finance on the Web using your computer. You can create lists of stocks to watch, which are then instantly synchronized with your Nexus One. You can visit Google Finance on the Web at

www.google.com/finance

As with other Google services, Google Finance is provided to you free as part of your Google account.

Linda Manager



Linda Manager is a handy tool for culling information about your Nexus One. It basically lets you peek into the inner workings of your phone, providing you with access to files and folders normally beyond the reach of mere mortal phone users. For that reason, use care when using Linda Manager. The program adequately warns you when you venture into potentially dangerous territory.

Above all, Linda Manager can be used as a file management tool for the MicroSD card. I admit that this app is designed for the more technical-minded users, but it's still a nice thing to have in your app treasure chest. You never know when you may need it.

Movies



The Movies app is the Nexus One gateway to Hollywood. It lists currently running films and what's opening, and it has links to your local theaters with showtimes and other information. It's also tied into the popular Rotten Tomatoes Web site for reviews and feedback. If you enjoy going to the movies, you'll find the Movies app a valuable addition to your Nexus One.

Ringdroid



The Ringdroid app lets you customize and create ringtones for the Nexus One. You can either snip a segment of music already on your phone or use the phone to record your own ringtone. This one-purpose app does its one job very well.

ScreenMode Widget



The ScreenMode widget is a program that allows you to place a three-button widget on the Nexus One home screen. The three buttons control how the screen dims:

- ✓ **Sleep Auto:** Keeps the phone working the way it normally does. This first button sets the screen to dim (sleep) as controlled by the phone's settings, and the phone is locked when it's dimmed.
- ✓ **Awake Stay:** Allows the screen to sleep (dim and turn off) but doesn't lock the phone. When you press the power button, the phone comes back to life without your seeing the unlock screen.
- ✓ **Screen Stay:** Keeps the screen on and phone unlocked all the time. Press this third button when you want to keep the phone's screen turned on without having to keep touching it.

Refer to Chapter 21 for more information about Widgets on the Nexus One.

Voice Recorder



The Nexus One can record your voice or other sounds, and the Voice Recorder is a good app for performing that task. It has an elegant and simple interface: Touch the big Record button to start recording. Make a note for yourself or record a friend doing his Daffy Duck impression.

Previous recordings are kept in a list on the Voice Recorder's main screen. Each recording is shown with its title, the date and time of the recording, and the recording's duration.

Zedge



The Zedge program is a helpful resource for finding wallpapers and ringtones for the Nexus One. It's a sharing app, so you can access wallpapers and ringtones created by other Android phone users as well as share your own.

Zedge features an easy-to-use interface, plus lots of helpful information on what it does and how it works.

Index

• A •

- ABC key, 61–62
- accelerometer, 44–45, 319
- accessibility settings, 306
- accessories
 - car dock, 21–22
 - desktop dock, 21
 - earphones, 18–19
- accounts
 - e-mail, setting up, 160–162
 - Facebook, creating, 180–181
 - Google
 - acquiring, 32–33
 - overview, 27–28
 - password, 26–27, 35
 - setting up, 33–34
 - setting up Google Voice, 111
 - synchronizing, 33–34
- Accounts & Sync Settings window, 34
- Add Call button, 79
- Add to Home Screen menu, 296
- Advanced Task Killer, 338
- Agenda view, Calendar app, 266
- airline apps, 292
- Airplane mode, 291–292
- AK Notepad, 338
- alarms, Clock app, 271–272
- album artwork, 251–252
- Albums category, Music app, 251
- albums, Gallery app, 234–236
- Alert icon, 35
- ALT key, 62
- Always Forward option, 101
- Amazon MP3 store, 259–262
- Android characters, text messaging, 135–136
- Android Market
 - buying apps, 279–280
 - controlling apps, 284–285
 - free apps, 278–279
 - overview, 275
 - removing installed apps, 283–284
 - reviewing downloads, 280–281
 - updating apps, 281–283
 - visiting, 276–277
- Android operating system, 31
- Android updates, 314
- Answer button, 86, 96
- Answer/Mute/Hang up button, earphone noodle controller, 18
- AnyCut app, 299
- app icons
 - adding to Home screen, 298
 - function of, 46
 - location of, 47
 - rearranging, 300–301
 - removing, 300–301
- apps (applications; programs)
 - buying, 279–280
 - controlling, 284–285
 - defined, 3
 - finding lost, 56
 - free, 278–279
 - organizing into folders, 301–303
 - removing installed, 283–284
 - reviewing downloads, 280–281
 - reviewing recently used, 56–57, 323–324
 - starting
 - from Home screen, 53
 - from Launcher, 54–56
 - updating, 281–283
- Artists category, Music app, 251
- Astro app, 195
- Attach menu, 141–142
- attachments
 - e-mail, 159–160, 243
 - multimedia messaging, 141–143
- Audio option, Attach menu, 141–143
- Auto flash mode, Camera app, 227

Auto focus mode, Camera app, 228
 automatic syncing, 312
 Awake Stay control, ScreenMode
 widget, 340

• B •

back cover, removing, 11–12
 Back soft button, 27, 42, 168
 Back to Call button, 100–101
 background programs, 338
 backing up phone, 313–314
 battery
 charging, 13–14
 identifying power drain, 309–311
 installing, 10–13
 location of, 20
 monitoring, 308–309
 overview, 307
 saving power, 89, 203, 247, 279,
 311–313, 333
 troubleshooting, 319
 Battery Level setting, 309
 battery status icons, 308
 Battery Status setting, 308
 Battery Use screen, 310
 BCC field, 157
 Bluetooth
 activating, 203
 Airplane mode, 291
 conserving battery power, 312, 333
 headset, answering calls, 87
 sharing images and videos, 243
 using devices, 203–206
 Bluetooth button, 78, 199
 Bluetooth Settings screen, 204
 Bluetooth status icon, 203, 205
 Bookmark button, 168
 bookmarking
 sharing bookmarks, 172–173
 Web pages, 32, 168–170
 Browser app
 downloading
 files, 174–175
 images from Web pages, 174
 reviewing downloads, 175
 overview, 165–166

settings
 display, 176–177
 home page, setting, 176
 overview, 175
 privacy and security options, 177

Web pages

bookmarks, 168–170
 multiple, 170–171
 searching, 171–172
 sharing, 172–173
 switching between, 168
 viewing, 166
 visiting, 166–167
 Browser app icon, 166
 :-) button, 61, 134–135
 Buy button, Market app, 279
 Buy Now button, Market app, 280

• C •

Calculator app, 269–270
 Calculator app icon, 269
 Calendar app
 browsing dates, 264–266
 creating events, 268–269
 event locations, 268–269, 330
 event notifications, 269
 overview, 263–264
 reviewing schedule, 266–267
 travel information, 292
 Calendar app icon, 264
 call forwarding status icon, 102
 Call In Progress notification icon, 77–78, 80
 Call Log
 calling from, 83–84
 creating contacts from, 89–91, 121–122
 reviewing, 89–91
 Call Log button, 81, 84, 90–91
 Call On Hold icon, 94
 Call Waiting, 106
 Caller ID, 105–106
 calling
 from Call Log, 83–84
 from Contacts list
 choosing contact, 80–83
 using direct-dial shortcut, 83
 using Quick Contact information, 82

- from dialpad, 76–80
- direct-dial screen shortcut, 328–329
- hanging up phone, through earphone
 - noodle controller, 18
- international, 79, 112, 292–294, 334
- locking phone while, 332
- missed calls, 89
- multiple calls
 - conference calls, 96, 98–101
 - juggling calls, 96–98
 - placing on hold, 94
 - receiving call when on phone, 94–96
- overview, 75
- receiving calls
 - answering phone, through earphone
 - noodle controller, 18
 - overview, 86–88
 - setting incoming call signals, 88–89
 - when on phone, 94–96
 - using Voice Dialer app, 84–85
- Call-In-Progress notification icon, 205
- Camera app
 - location of camera, 16
 - overview, 223
 - photos
 - reviewing, 226–227
 - settings, 227–228
 - taking, 224–225
 - video
 - overview, 228
 - recording, 229–230
 - reviewing, 230–232
 - settings, 232
- Camera app icon, 224
- Camera mode, 184
- Caps Lock, 60, 63
- Capture Picture option, Attach menu, 141–142
- Capture Video option, Attach menu, 141–142
- car dock, 21–22
- Car Home icon, 53
- Car Home screen, 22, 53–54
- carrying phone, 22–23
- CC field, 157
- charging battery, 13–14
- cleaning phone, 313
- Clear Form Data option, 177
- Clear History command, 168
- Clock app, 21, 270–272
- Clock app icon, 270
- Clock widget, 272
- Color Effect option, Camera app, 227
- Color Effect settings, Camera app, 232
- .com key, 61
- Combined Inbox option, 161–162
- compass arrow, Maps app, 211–212
- Complete Action Using menu, 104
- composing messages
 - e-mail
 - from Contacts list, 158–159
 - overview, 155–157
 - multimedia, 139–141
 - text, 134–136
- computer
 - connecting phone to, 192–193
 - disconnecting phone from, 193
 - MicroSD card, 193–195, 197
 - overview, 191–192
 - synchronizing with doubleTwist, 195–196
- conference calls, 96, 98–101
- connectivity
 - Bluetooth
 - activating, 203
 - using devices, 203–206
- computer
 - connecting phone to, 192–193
 - disconnecting phone from, 193
 - MicroSD card, 193–195, 197
 - overview, 191–192
 - synchronizing with doubleTwist, 195–196
- wireless networks
 - accessing Wi-Fi, 199–202
 - turning on Wi-Fi, 198–199
 - using, 198
- contact picture, 87
- Contact shortcut, 299
- Contacts icon, 80
- Contacts list
 - calling from
 - choosing contact, 80–83
 - using direct-dial shortcut, 83
 - using Quick Contact information, 82

Contacts list (*continued*)

- composing e-mail messages from, 158–159
- creating contacts
 - from Call Log, 121–122
 - in Gmail, 123
 - from scratch, 122–123
 - through Maps app, 123–125
- deleting contacts, 130
- editing contacts
 - Favorites list, adding to, 129
 - overview, 126–127
 - phone number and e-mail address, setting default, 129
 - photos, assigning to, 127–128, 227, 238, 335
- finding location of contacts, 218
- importing contacts
 - from MicroSD card, 125–126
 - from SIM card, 125
- overview, 117–120
- ringtones, setting, 103–104
- searching, 121
- sharing contacts, 130
- text messaging from, 134
- cookies, 177
- copying text, 68–70
- corporate use, configuring phone for, 36–37
- country code prefix, 293
- Crop command, Gallery app, 239–240
- cropping photos, 128
- cursor, moving, 66
- cutting text, 68–70



Day view, Calendar app, 266

Del key, 60, 63

Delete button

- Camera app, 226, 231
- dialpad, 76–77
- Gallery app, 238, 241–242
- keyboard, 26

Delete Old Messages option, 144

deleting

- alarms, 272
- contacts, 130
- messaging conversations, 144
- music, 257
- photos, 226, 242
- playlists, 256
- videos, 231, 242

Deselect All button, Gallery app, 242

desktop dock, 21

Dial Contact shortcut, 299

Dial voice mail button, 76

dialpad, 76–80

Dialpad button, 78

dictation, 70–71

dictionary, adding words to, 326–328

direct text-message screen shortcut, 329

direct-dial shortcut, 83, 328–329

directions, 218–220

Discard button, 152

Done button

- Camera app, 226, 230–231
- keyboard, 34, 61

double dots, function of, 47, 50

double-tapping, 42–43

doubleTwist app, 195–196

Download History screen, 175

downloading

- defined, 174
- files, 174–175
- images from Web pages, 174
- reviewing downloads, 175

Downloading notification, 174

Downloads button, Market app, 281

Downloads list, Market app, 281



earphones

- overview, 18–19
- using during calls, 79

EasyTether Lite app, 205

EDGE icon, 82, 198

Edit Text menu, 67–70

e-mail

- Airplane mode, 291
- attachments, 159–160, 243
- author's address, 5
- automatic checking, 324–325
- checking inbox, 149–152
- composing messages
 - from Contacts list, 118, 158–159
 - overview, 155–157
- configuring
 - accounts, setting up, 160–162
 - options, 163
 - signatures, 162
- overview, 147–148
- reading messages, 152–155
- receiving messages, 149
- searching, 155
- setting default address, 129
- text messaging versus, 138

Email app

- inbox, 150, 151
- reading messages, 152, 154
- setting up accounts, 160–161
- settings, 163
- sharing images and videos, 243

Email app icon, 148

Email link, 118, 120

Emergency Call button, 30

emoticons, 134

End button, 77–78, 96–98

envelope timer icon, 140



Facebook

- creating account, 180–181
- overview, 179–180
- sending pictures to, 184–185
- settings, 186
- sharing images and videos, 227, 243–244
- sharing pictures, 185–186
- status, 183
- visiting, 181–183

Facebook notification icon, 183

Facebook Uploaded icon, 185

Facebook widget, 183

Favorite (star) button, 120, 129

Favorites button, 119, 129

Favorites list, Contacts list, 129

Finance program, 338

finding lost phone, 329–330

flash modes, Camera app, 227–228

FlightMode Control widget, 339

focus modes, Camera app, 228

Force Stop button, 284–285

Forward button, 155, 168

Forward When Busy option, 101

Forward When Unanswered option, 101

Forward When Unreached option, 101

forwarding calls

overview, 101–102

sending calls directly to voice mail, 102

4G networks, 198

Friends option, Facebook screen, 181–182



Gallery app

assigning photos to contacts, 127–128

e-mail attachments, 160

managing images and videos in groups, 240–242

manipulating images, 237–240

multimedia messaging, 139–140

overview, 233

reviewing, 234–237

sharing images and videos

Bluetooth, 243

Email and Gmail, 243

Facebook, 185–186, 243–244

Messaging, 245

overview, 242

Picasa, 245–246

Twitter, 246

YouTube, 246–248

Gallery app icon, 234

General Packet Radio Service (GPRS)

icon, 82, 198

gestures, 42–43
 Get Directions option, Maps app, 214, 218
 Gmail app
 creating contacts in, 123
 inbox, 149–150
 reading messages, 152–153
 sharing images and videos, 243
 signatures, 162
 Gmail app icon, 148
 Go button, function of, 61
 Google account
 acquiring, 32–33
 overview, 27–28
 password, 26–27, 35
 setting up, 33–34
 setting up Google Voice, 111
 synchronizing, 33–34
 Google Calendar, 263–269
 Google Checkout, 279–280
 Google contact information, 10
 Google Finance, 339
 Google Talk, 145
 Google Talk status icon, 118, 120
 Google Voice
 inbox, 113–114
 international calling, 293
 overview, 110–111
 retrieving messages, 113–114
 setting up, 111–113
 using on Internet, 115–116
 Google widget, 47, 53, 171
 GPRS (General Packet Radio Service)
 icon, 82, 198
 GPS (global positioning system). *See also*
 Maps app
 Gallery app, 238, 239–240
 lost phone, 329
 overview, 212
 security, 177
 GPS button, 199
 GPS Is On status icon, 212
 GPS Status icon, 211–212
 green check mark, 2
 green phone button, 76–77
 green plus-sign (+) button, 122

• H •

Haptic Feedback option, 311
 headphone jack, location of, 15
 history, Web browsing, 168
 Hold button, 78, 94
 home pages
 defined, 45
 setting, 176
 setting as blank, 176
 Home screen
 adding navigation shortcut to, 221–222
 Car Home screen, 53–54
 customizing
 adding apps, 298
 organizing apps into folders, 301–303
 overview, 295–296
 rearranging icons and widgets, 300–301
 removing icons and widgets, 300–301
 shortcuts, 299
 wallpaper, changing, 296–297
 widgets, 298–299
 defined, 33
 notifications, reviewing, 50–52
 overview, 46–50
 preview images, 48–49
 starting apps, 53
 widgets, accessing, 53
 Home soft button, 34, 42, 56

• I •

icons, defined, 295
 Ignore button, 86, 96
 ignoring calls, 96
 images
 assigning to contacts, 127–128
 deleting, 226, 242
 downloading from Web pages, 174
 managing in groups, 240–242
 reviewing, 226–227
 sending to Facebook, 184–185
 settings, 227–228
 sharing, 185–186, 227
 storage of, 225
 taking, 224–225

- importing contacts
 - from MicroSD card, 125–126
 - from SIM card, 125
- inbox
 - e-mail, 149–152
 - Google Voice, 113–114
- Infinity focus mode, Camera app, 228
- Install button, Market app, 278
- installing battery, 10–13
- international calling, 79, 112, 292–294, 334
- iTunes, 259

• J •

- juggling calls, 96–98

• K •

- keyboard
 - adjusting, 305
 - displaying, 60–62
 - feedback, setting, 326
 - overview, 59–60
 - size of, 318
 - special characters, 64–65
 - spelling suggestions, 65–66
 - typing, 63–64
- KickBack option, accessibility, 306

• L •

- labels, Gmail, 152
- Labs feature, Maps app, 213
- Labyrinth game, 46
- landscape orientation
 - keyboard, 318
 - overview, 44–46
 - troubleshooting, 319
 - usefulness of, 332
- Latitude feature, Maps app, 222
- Launcher
 - finding lost apps, 56
 - reviewing recently used apps, 56–57
 - starting apps, 54–56
- Launcher icon, 33, 46, 47
- LED flash, location of, 16

- Linda Manager, 195, 339
- links
 - highlighting, 166
 - opening in new window, 170
 - sharing, 172–173
 - in text messages, 136
 - on Web pages, 166
- live wallpaper, 47, 49, 296–297
- Location option, Camera app, 228
- locking phone, 28–30, 303–305, 332
- long presses, 43
- lost phone, 329–330

• M •

- maintenance
 - backing up phone, 313–314
 - cleaning phone, 313
 - updating system, 314–315
- Manage button, 99
- Maps app
 - conserving battery power, 333
 - creating contacts through, 123–125
 - current location, 214–215
 - directions, 218–220
 - event locations, 268–269
 - finding locations
 - of contact, 118, 120, 218
 - specific addresses, 216
 - type of business or point of interest, 216–218
- Labs feature, 213
- location information for events, 330
- navigating to destinations, 220–221
- navigation shortcut, adding to the Home screen, 221–222
- overview, 210–213

- Maps app icon, 210
- Market app
 - buying apps, 279–280
 - controlling apps, 284–285
 - free apps, 278–279
 - overview, 275
 - removing installed apps, 283–284
 - reviewing downloads, 280–281
 - updating apps, 281–283
 - visiting, 276–277

- Market app icon, 276
- megapixels, 228
- Menu soft button, function of, 42
- Merge Calls button, 96–98
- messaging
 - multimedia
 - attaching media to messages, 141–143
 - composing messages, 139–141
 - photos and videos, 232, 245
 - receiving messages, 143
 - roaming, 290
 - text
 - abbreviations for, 137
 - composing messages, 134–136
 - from Contacts list, 118
 - deleting conversations, 144
 - direct text-message screen shortcut, 329
 - e-mail versus, 138
 - overview, 133, 143
 - receiving messages, 138
 - sending messages, 136–138
 - settings, 144–145
- Messaging app icon, 136
- micro USB connector, defined, 14
- microfiber cloth, 313
- microphones
 - earphone noodle controller, 18
 - function of, 17
 - location of, 15–16
- MicroSD card
 - accessing, 193–195, 334
 - backing up phone, 313–314
 - computer connections, 192–193
 - formatting, 197
 - function of, 22
 - importing contacts from, 125–126
 - location of, 20
 - removing, 20–21, 197
 - replacing, 197
 - unmounting, 197
- MicroSD card full icon, 197
- Microsoft Exchange Server account,
 - synchronizing with, 36–37
- mini-USB connector, defined, 14
- Missed Call notification icon, 89
- missed calls, 89
- MMS (Multimedia Messaging Service)
 - attaching media to messages, 141–143
 - composing messages, 139–141
 - photos and videos, 232, 245
 - receiving messages, 143
 - roaming, 290
- Mobile Defense, 329–330
- Mobile Phone icon, Facebook, 183
- modem, using phone as, 205
- Month view, Calendar app, 264–265
- More Notifications icon, 51
- More option, Gallery app, 238
- Most Visited button, 170
- Movies app, 340
- MP3 format, 105
- MP3 Store app icon, 260
- MP3 Store Downloading icon, 262
- multimedia messaging
 - attaching media to messages, 141–143
 - composing messages, 139–141
 - photos and videos, 232, 245
 - receiving messages, 143
 - roaming, 290
- Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS). *See* multimedia messaging
- multiple calls
 - conference calls, 96, 98–101
 - juggling calls, 96–98
 - placing on hold, 94
 - receiving call when on phone, 94–96
- Music app
 - browsing library, 250–251
 - buying at Amazon MP3 store, 259–262
 - deleting music, 257
 - overview, 249
 - playing music, 251–254
 - playlists
 - creating, 255–256
 - reviewing, 254–255
 - ringtones, 104–105
 - storing music, 251, 257
 - synchronizing with computer, 257–259

Music app icon, 250
Mute button, 78, 79
muting
 phone, 44
 through earphone noodle controller, 18
MyBookmarks app, 170



Navigate option, Maps app, 214, 220
Navigation icon, 220
New Contact button, 123
New Email notification, 149
New Gmail notification, 149
New Text Message icon, 138
New Voicemail icon, 108
News and Weather app, 272–273
News and Weather app icon, 272
News and Weather widget, 53, 272
News Feed option, Facebook screen, 181–182
Next button, function of, 61
Nexus One phone
 accessories
 car dock, 21–22
 desktop dock, 21
 earphones, 18–19
 carrying, 22–23
 configuring for corporate use, 36–37
 exterior of, 14–17
 Google account
 acquiring, 32–33
 password, changing, 35
 setting up, 33–34
 Home screen
 apps, starting, 53
 Car Home screen, 53–54
 notifications, reviewing, 50–52
 overview, 46–50
 widgets, accessing, 53
 interior of, 19–21
 Launcher
 finding lost apps, 56
 reviewing recently used apps, 56–57
 starting apps, 54–56

 maintenance
 backing up phone, 313–314
 cleaning phone, 313
 updating system, 314–315
 orientation, 14–22, 44–46
 setting up
 charging battery, 13–14
 contents of box, 10
 installing battery, 10–13
 overview, 9, 25
 silencing phone, 44
 Sleep mode
 controlling options for, 38
 entering, 37
 waking up from, 31–32
 soft buttons, 42
 storing, 23
 touch screen gestures, 42–43
 trackball, 43–44
 turning off, 38–39
 turning on, 26–31
 volume, controlling, 43
No Signal icon, 82
noise-cancelling microphone, 16–17
noodle controller, earphones, 18
notification (status) light, location of, 15
notification light, charging battery, 13–14
notifications
 accessing, 50–52
 dismissing all, 51
 function of, 46
 location of, 47
 reviewing, 50–52
Notifications option, Facebook screen, 182
number-and-symbol keyboard, 62



Off flash mode, Camera app, 227
On flash mode, Camera app, 227–228
onscreen keyboard
 displaying, 60–62
 overview, 59–60
 size of, 318
 special characters, 64–65

onscreen keyboard (*continued*)

spelling suggestions, 65–66

typing, 63–64

overheating phone, 319



pairing Bluetooth devices, 203–204

Pandora Radio, 262

panning in maps, 210

passwords

Gmail, 148

Google account, 26–27, 35

network, 200–202

pasting text, 68–70

pattern lock, 28–30, 303–305

Pause button, Music app, 252–253

PdaNet app, 205

periods, inserting automatically, 64

personal identification number (PIN), 112

Phone app

Call Log, reviewing, 89–91

Call Waiting, 106

Caller ID, 105–106

calling

from Call Log, 83–84

from Contacts list, 80–84

from dialpad, 76–80

overview, 75

using Voice Dialer app, 84–85

forwarding calls

overview, 101–102

sending calls directly to voice mail, 102

missed calls, 89

multiple calls

conference calls, 98–101

juggling calls, 96–98

placing on hold, 94

receiving call when on phone, 94–96

overview, 93

receiving calls

overview, 86–88

setting incoming call signals, 88–89

ringtones

choosing, 103

creating, 105

setting for contacts, 103–104

using music as, 104–105

Phone app icon, 76

Phone Options menu, 38–39

Phone Vibrate option, 88

photos

assigning to contacts, 127–128

deleting, 226, 242

downloading from Web pages, 174

managing in groups, 240–242

reviewing, 226–227

sending to Facebook, 184–185

settings, 227–228

sharing, 185–186, 227

storage of, 225

taking, 224–225

Photos option, Facebook screen, 181–182

Picasa, 234–236, 240, 245–246

Picture Quality setting, Camera app, 228

Picture review screen, Camera app, 226

Picture Size option, Camera app, 228

pictures

assigning to contacts, 127–128

deleting, 226, 242

downloading from Web pages, 174

managing in groups, 240–242

reviewing, 226–227

sending to Facebook, 184–185

settings, 227–228

sharing, 185–186, 227

storage of, 225

taking, 224–225

Pictures option, Attach menu, 141–142

PIN (personal identification number), 112

pinching, 43

placing callers on hold, 94

Play Button icon, Gallery app, 234

Play Next Track button, earphone noodle

controller, 18

Play Previous Track button, earphone

noodle controller, 18

playing music, 251–254

playlists

creating, 255–256

defined, 251, 254

- deleting, 256
 - removing songs from, 256
 - reviewing, 254–255
 - Playlists category, Music app, 251
 - Play/Pause button, earphone noodle controller, 18
 - plus sign (+), 122, 293, 334
 - portrait orientation, 44–46
 - pound (#) symbols, 71
 - power button
 - function of, 17
 - location of, 15, 16
 - Power Control widget, 53, 199
 - power/USB connector, location of, 15
 - prepaid SIM cards, 294
 - Previous Image button, Camera app, 224, 226
 - Previous Video button, Camera app, 229–230
 - privacy and security options, Browser app, 177
 - Problem icon, 134
 - Profile option, Facebook screen, 181–182
 - proximity sensor, 23, 79
 - Pulse Notification Light box, 88
 - punctuation, dictating, 71
 - pushpin icon, 218
- **Q** •
- Quick Contact feature
 - calling from, 83
 - e-mailing from, 158
 - setting number and e-mail address, 129
- **R** •
- radio, using phone as, 262
 - ratings, app, 276
 - reading e-mail messages, 152–155
 - rear speaker, location of, 16
 - receiving calls
 - answering phone, through earphone noodle controller, 18
 - overview, 86–88
 - setting incoming call signals, 88–89
 - when on phone, 94–96
 - receiving messages
 - e-mail, 149
 - multimedia, 143
 - text, 138
 - Recently used programs list, 56–57
 - Record & Upload button, YouTube app, 274
 - Record Audio option, Attach menu, 141–142
 - Record button
 - Camera app, 229
 - Voice Recorder, 341
 - Refresh Interval option, Facebook, 186
 - Remember Forum Data option, 177
 - Remember icon, 4
 - Repeat button, Music app, 252
 - Repetition button, Calendar app, 269
 - replacing battery, 312
 - Reply All button, 152, 154
 - Reply button, 152
 - Reply to All button, 152
 - resetting software, 317
 - Retake button, 185
 - Return button, function of, 61
 - Ringdroid app, 340
 - Ringer Is Silenced icon, 44, 88
 - Ringer Volume slider, 88
 - ringtones
 - choosing, 103
 - creating, 105
 - e-mail, 163
 - Facebook updates, 186
 - setting, 103–104
 - text messages, 145
 - using music as, 104–105
 - volume of, 88
 - roaming, 289–290, 334
 - Roaming icon, 82, 290
 - Rotate Left command, Gallery app, 239, 241–242
 - Rotate Right command, Gallery app, 239, 241–242
 - Rotten Tomatoes Web site, 340



- satellite view, Maps app, 210, 212
- Save As Draft button, 152, 157
- Scale bar, Maps app, 213
- screen brightness
 - adjusting, 305
 - conserving battery power, 311
- Screen brightness button, 199
- screen protector, 313
- Screen Stay control, ScreenMode widget, 340
- screen timeout, adjusting, 305
- ScreenMode widget, 340
- scrolling, 55, 80–81, 210
- Search key, variations on, 60–61
- Search Nearby option, Maps app, 215
- Search soft button, 42, 56, 335
 - searching apps, 276
- searching
 - Contacts list, 121
 - e-mail, 155
 - music, 253
 - Web, 171–172
- security
 - Browser app, 177
 - unlock pattern, 303–305
- Select All button, Gallery app, 242
- Select All option, Edit Text menu, 67
- Select Text option, Edit Text menu, 67
- selecting text
 - overview, 66–68
 - single word, 68
 - on Web pages, 68
- Send button, 152
- Send Email icon, 158
- sending text messages, 136–138
- Set As button, Camera app, 227
- Set As command, Gallery app, 238
- Settings icon, 33, 88
- Settings shortcut, 299
- Share button
 - Camera app, 226–227, 232
 - Gallery app, 238, 241, 243–244, 246
 - Share Contact With menu, 130
 - Share Via menu, 173
- sharing
 - contacts, 130
 - photos
 - Bluetooth, 243
 - Camera app, 227
 - Email and Gmail, 243
 - Facebook, 185–186, 243–244
 - messaging, 245
 - overview, 242
 - Picasa, 245–246
 - Twitter, 246
 - videos
 - Bluetooth, 243
 - Camera app, 232
 - Email and Gmail, 243
 - Facebook, 243–244
 - messaging, 245
 - overview, 242
 - YouTube, 246–248
 - Web pages, 172–173
- Shift key, 27, 60
- Short Message Service (SMS). *See text messaging*
 - abbreviations for, 137
 - composing messages, 134–136
 - from Contacts list, 118
 - direct text-message screen shortcut, 329
 - e-mail versus, 138
 - managing
 - deleting conversations, 144
 - overview, 143
 - settings, 144–145
 - overview, 133
 - receiving messages, 138
 - sending messages, 136–138
- shortcuts, adding to Home screen, 299
- Show on Map command, Gallery app, 238
- Show On Map option, Maps app, 214
- Shuffle button, Music app, 252, 254
- Shutter button, 185, 224–225
- Sign In button, 27
- Signal icon, 82
- signal strength icons, 76, 82

- signatures, 162
- Silencer button, 44
- silencing phone, 44
- Silent mode, 44
- SIM card
 - function of, 22
 - importing contacts from, 125
 - location of, 20
 - prepaid, 294
 - removing, 20
- Sleep Auto control, ScreenMode
 - widget, 340
- Sleep mode
 - controlling options for, 38
 - entering, 37
 - waking up from, 31–32
- Slideshow button, Gallery app, 234
- Slideshow option, Attach menu, 141–143
- SMS (Short Message Service). *See* text messaging
 - abbreviations for, 137
 - composing messages, 134–136
 - from Contacts list, 118
 - direct text-message screen shortcut, 329
 - e-mail versus, 138
 - managing
 - deleting conversations, 144
 - overview, 143
 - settings, 144–145
 - overview, 133
 - receiving messages, 138
 - sending messages, 136–138
- social networking
 - Facebook
 - accounts, creating, 180–181
 - overview, 179–180
 - sending pictures to, 184–185
 - setting status, 183
 - settings, 186
 - sharing pictures, 185–186
 - visiting, 181–183
 - Twitter
 - overview, 186–187
 - setting up, 187
 - tweeting, 187–188
- soft buttons
 - location of, 15, 17
 - overview, 42
- Song List button, Music app, 252
- Songs category, Music app, 251
- sound notifications, 77, 79, 88
- Sound on Keypress option, 326
- SoundBack option, 306
- Speaker button, 78–79, 101
- speakers, location of, 15–16
- special characters, 64–65
- spelling suggestions, 65–66, 333
- spreading, 43
- SSID, 200
- Star button, 155
- status (notification) light, location of, 15
- status bar
 - function of, 46
 - location of, 47
- status icons
 - function of, 46
 - location of, 47
- Stay Awake option, 305
- stereos, connecting phone to, 253–254
- Still/Video slider, Camera app, 224, 229
- stopping unneeded services, 325–326
- storing phone, 23
- StreamFurious, 262
- Street view, Maps app, 215
- Subject field, 156–157
- subscriptions, 196
- Successful Install notification, 278, 283
- Swap button, 96–97
- swiping, 43
- switching between calls, 96
- Symbols key, 27
- Sync button, 199
- synchronizing
 - automatic, 312
 - with doubleTwist, 195–196
 - Facebook account, 180–181
 - Google account, 33–34
 - with Microsoft Exchange Server account, 36–37
 - music, 257–259

• T •

tags, YouTube, 247
 Take Photo option, Facebook screen, 181–182
 TalkBack option, accessibility, 306
 Technical Stuff icon, 5
 temperature, 319
 text
 dictionary, adding words to, 326–328
 editing
 cutting, copying, and pasting, 68–70
 moving cursor, 66
 selecting text, 66–68
 size of, on Web, 176–177
 Text Message icon, 118
 Text message icon, 120
 Text Message icon, 134
 Text Message Limit option, 144
 text messaging
 abbreviations for, 137
 composing messages, 134–136
 from Contacts list, 118
 direct text-message screen shortcut, 329
 e-mail versus, 138
 managing
 deleting conversations, 144
 overview, 143
 settings, 144–145
 multimedia
 attaching media to messages, 141–143
 composing messages, 139–141
 overview, 245
 receiving messages, 143
 overview, 133
 receiving messages, 138
 sending messages, 136–138
 3G networks, 82, 198, 311
 Thumb tab, Music app, 250–251
 Tip icon, 4
 Today command, Calendar app, 265
 touch screen
 function of, 17
 gestures, 42–43
 location of, 15
 troubleshooting, 318

touching, 42
 trackball
 function of, 17
 lights, 17, 37
 location of, 15–16
 overview, 43–44
 usefulness of, 332
 Transcript Not Available message, 114
 transferring files to phone, 194–195
 Trash icon, 301
 troubleshooting
 battery, 319
 common solutions, 315–317
 keyboard size, 318
 orientation, 319
 phone temperature, 319
 support, 317–318
 touch screen, 318
 turning phone off, 38–39
 turning phone on, 26–31
 Tweet icon, Twitter, 187
 Twidroid app, 187
 Twitgoo, 246
 Twitpic, 246
 Twitter
 overview, 186–187
 setting up, 187
 sharing photos, 227, 246
 tweeting, 187–188

• U •

Unhold button, 94
 Uninstall button, Market app, 283
 unlocking phone, 28–30, 303–305
 Unmerge button, 100
 Unmounted MicroSD Card icon, 197
 Update button, Market app, 281
 Updates Available notification icon, 281
 updating phone system, 314–315
 uploading, defined, 174, 247
 Uploading notification, 174
 USB cable, 192–193
 USB Debugging option, 305
 USB icon, 192



- vCard (.vcf) format, 126
- .vcf (vCard) format, 126
- Vibrate mode
 - conserving battery power, 311
 - e-mail, 163
 - Facebook updates, 186
 - incoming calls, 89
 - setting with the volume control, 328
 - text messages, 145
- Vibrate Mode icon, 88–89
- Vibrate on Keypress option, 326
- Video Camera mode, Camera app, 228–229
- Video Duration setting, Camera app, 232
- Video Quality settings, Camera app, 232
- videos
 - deleting, 231, 242
 - managing in groups, 240–242
 - overview, 228
 - recording, 229–230
 - reviewing, 230–232
 - settings, 232
 - sharing, 232
 - storage of, 230
- Videos option, Attach menu, 141–142
- view slider, Gallery app, 236
- Voice Dialer app, 84–85
- Voice Dialer icon, 85
- Voice Input (Microphone) button, 61
- Voice Input feature
 - dictation, 64
 - overview, 70–71
 - searching contacts, 121
 - searching e-mail, 155
 - text messaging, 135–136
- Voice Input screen, 70–71
- voice mail
 - carrier
 - overview, 107–108
 - retrieving messages, 108–109
 - setting up, 108
- Google Voice
 - overview, 110–111
 - retrieving messages, 113–114

- setting up, 111–113
 - using on Internet, 115–116
- sending calls directly to, 102
- Voice Recorder, 341
- Voicemail Settings screen, 112
- volume button
 - function of, 43
 - location of, 15–17
 - setting Vibrate mode with, 328
- volume, controlling, 43, 305
- VPNs, 202



- wallpaper
 - assigning photos to, 227, 238
 - changing, 296–297
 - live, 47, 49, 296–297
 - Market app, 277
- Warning! icon, 5
- WAV format, 105
- Web pages
 - bookmarks, 168–170
 - downloading images from, 174
 - multiple, 170–171
 - reloading, 167
 - searching, 171–172
 - selecting text on, 68
 - sharing, 172–173
 - stopping from loading, 167
 - switching between, 168
 - viewing, 166
 - visiting, 166–167
- Web sites
 - accessories, 21
 - Amazon, 260
 - author's, 5
 - doubleTwist, 195
 - Facebook, 180
 - Gmail, 123, 148
 - Google Calendar, 264
 - Google support, 10
 - Google Voice, 113, 115
 - Mobile Defense, 330
 - Picasa, 236, 245

Web sites (*continued*)

Rotten Tomatoes, 340

Twitter, 187

Twitter image-sharing sites, 246

Week view, Calendar app, 266

What's Nearby? option, Maps app, 215

White Balance setting, Camera app, 232

White Balance settings, Camera app, 227

widgets

accessing, 53

adding to Home screen, 298–299

defined, 53

function of, 46

Market app, 277

rearranging, 300–301

removing, 300–301

Wi-Fi

accessing, 199–202

conserving battery power, 312, 333

roaming and, 290

turning on, 198–199

Wi-Fi button, 199–200

Wi-Fi status icon, 200

Windows Media Player, 258–259

Windows-contact file format, 126

wireless networks

accessing Wi-Fi networks, 199–202

turning on Wi-Fi, 198–199

using, 198



YouTube app, 246–248, 273–274

YouTube app icon, 246, 273



Zedge, 105, 341

Zoom controls

Camera app, 224–225, 226

Maps app, 210

Notes

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page, leaving small margins at the top and bottom. There are no vertical lines or other markings on the page.

Notes

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue lines, resembling notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Notes

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue lines, resembling notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Notes

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue lines, resembling notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Notes

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue lines, resembling notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Notes

This image shows a single page of white paper with horizontal blue lines. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page, leaving small margins at the top and bottom. There are no vertical lines or other markings on the page.

Notes

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue lines, resembling notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

Notes

This image shows a single sheet of white paper with horizontal blue lines, resembling notebook paper. The lines are evenly spaced and run across the width of the page. There is no handwriting or other markings on the paper.

**Business/Accounting
& Bookkeeping**

Bookkeeping For Dummies
978-0-7645-9848-7

eBay Business
All-in-One For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-38536-4

Job Interviews
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-17748-8

Resumes For Dummies,
5th Edition
978-0-470-08037-5

Stock Investing
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-40114-9

Successful Time
Management
For Dummies
978-0-470-29034-7

Computer Hardware

BlackBerry For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-45762-7

Computers For Seniors
For Dummies
978-0-470-24055-7

iPhone For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-42342-4

Laptops For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-27759-1

Macs For Dummies,
10th Edition
978-0-470-27817-8

Cooking & Entertaining

Cooking Basics
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-7645-7206-7

Wine For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-470-04579-4

Diet & Nutrition

Dieting For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-4149-0

Nutrition For Dummies,
4th Edition
978-0-471-79868-2

Weight Training
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-471-76845-6

Digital Photography

Digital Photography
For Dummies,
6th Edition
978-0-470-25074-7

Photoshop Elements 7
For Dummies
978-0-470-39700-8

Gardening

Gardening Basics
For Dummies
978-0-470-03749-2

Organic Gardening
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-43067-5

Green/Sustainable

Green Building
& Remodeling
For Dummies
978-0-470-17559-0

Green Cleaning
For Dummies
978-0-470-39106-8

Green IT For Dummies
978-0-470-38688-0

Health

Diabetes For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-27086-8

Food Allergies
For Dummies
978-0-470-09584-3

Living Gluten-Free
For Dummies
978-0-471-77383-2

Hobbies/General

Chess For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-8404-6

Drawing For Dummies
978-0-7645-5476-6

Knitting For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-28747-7

Organizing For Dummies
978-0-7645-5300-4

SuDoku For Dummies
978-0-470-01892-7

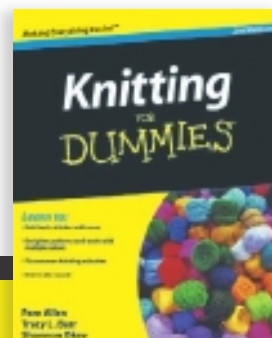
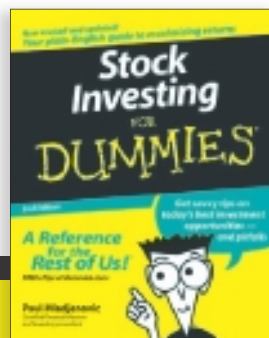
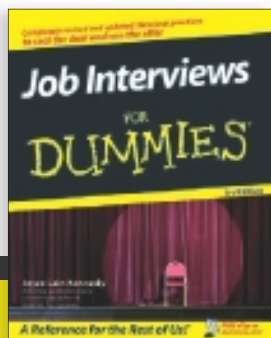
Home Improvement

Energy Efficient Homes
For Dummies
978-0-470-37602-7

Home Theater
For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-470-41189-6

Living the Country Lifestyle
All-in-One For Dummies
978-0-470-43061-3

Solar Power Your Home
For Dummies
978-0-470-17569-9



Internet

Blogging For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-23017-6

eBay For Dummies,
6th Edition
978-0-470-49741-8

Facebook For Dummies
978-0-470-26273-3

Google Blogger
For Dummies
978-0-470-40742-4

Web Marketing
For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-37181-7

WordPress For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-40296-2

Language & Foreign Language

French For Dummies
978-0-7645-5193-2

Italian Phrases
For Dummies
978-0-7645-7203-6

Spanish For Dummies
978-0-7645-5194-9

Spanish For Dummies,
Audio Set
978-0-470-09585-0

Macintosh

Mac OS X Snow Leopard
For Dummies
978-0-470-43543-4

Math & Science

Algebra I For Dummies
978-0-7645-5325-7

Biology For Dummies
978-0-7645-5326-4

Calculus For Dummies
978-0-7645-2498-1

Chemistry For Dummies
978-0-7645-5430-8

Microsoft Office
Excel 2007 For Dummies
978-0-470-03737-9

Office 2007 All-in-One
Desk Reference
For Dummies
978-0-471-78279-7

Music

Guitar For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-9904-0

iPod & iTunes
For Dummies,
6th Edition
978-0-470-39062-7

Piano Exercises
For Dummies
978-0-470-38765-8

Parenting & Education

Parenting For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-5418-6

Type 1 Diabetes
For Dummies
978-0-470-17811-9

Pets

Cats For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-5275-5

Dog Training For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-8418-3

Puppies For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-470-03717-1

Religion & Inspiration

The Bible For Dummies
978-0-7645-5296-0

Catholicism For Dummies
978-0-7645-5391-2

Women in the Bible
For Dummies
978-0-7645-8475-6

Self-Help & Relationship

Anger Management
For Dummies
978-0-470-03715-7

Overcoming Anxiety
For Dummies
978-0-7645-5447-6

Sports

Baseball For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-7645-7537-2

Basketball For Dummies,
2nd Edition
978-0-7645-5248-9

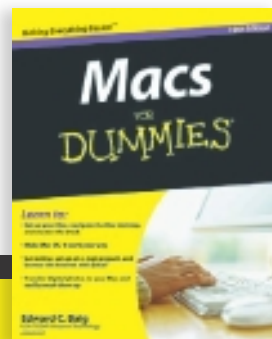
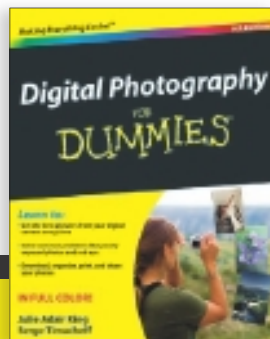
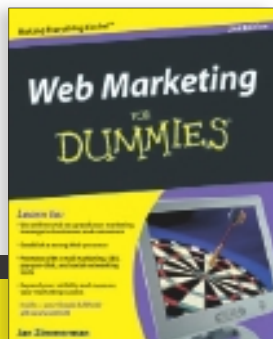
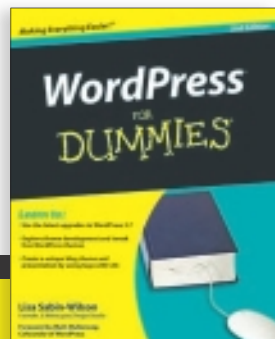
Golf For Dummies,
3rd Edition
978-0-471-76871-5

Web Development

Web Design All-in-One
For Dummies
978-0-470-41796-6

Windows Vista

Windows Vista
For Dummies
978-0-471-75421-3



DUMMIES.COM®

How-to?
How Easy.



Go to www.Dummies.com

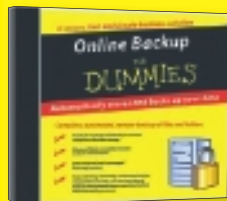
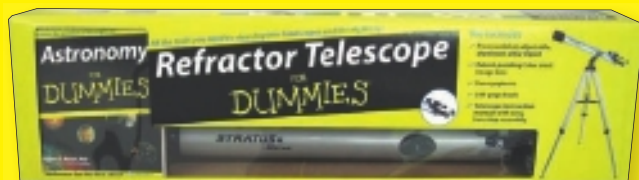
From hooking up a modem to cooking up a casserole, knitting a scarf to navigating an iPod, you can trust Dummies.com to show you how to get things done the easy way.

Visit us at Dummies.com

Dummies products make life easier!

DVDs • Music • Games •
DIY • Consumer Electronics •
Software • Crafts • Hobbies •
Cookware • and more!

For more information, go to
Dummies.com® and search
the store by category.



Mobile Apps FOR DUMMIES®

There's a Dummies App for This and That

With more than 200 million books in print and over 1,600 unique titles, Dummies is a global leader in how-to information. Now you can get the same great Dummies information in an App. With topics such as Wine, Spanish, Digital Photography, Certification, and more, you'll have instant access to the topics you need to know in a format you can trust.

To get information on all our Dummies apps, visit the following:

www.Dummies.com/go/mobile from your computer.

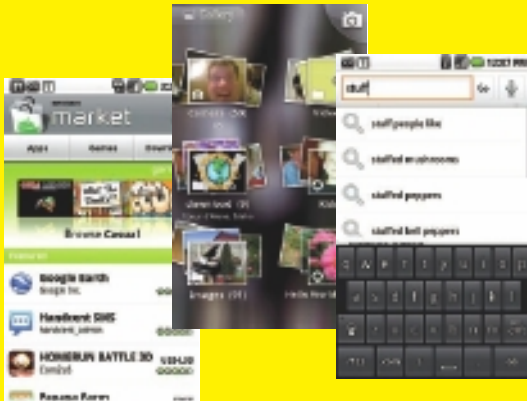
www.Dummies.com/go/iphone/apps from your phone.



Get the steps, tips, and tricks to maximize the performance of your superphone

Google's revolutionary smartphone is packed with features and functionality just waiting to be unleashed, and this practical user's guide shows you how to get the most from your Nexus One. From setting up your phone, texting, and sending e-mail to taking pictures, playing games, and getting verbal driving directions, you'll quickly find out how to get up and running with your Nexus One.

- **Start off on the right foot** — see how to best configure your phone
- **Explore your phone** — find out how to make calls, set up your voicemail, and manage contacts
- **Make the connection** — set up your phone for social networking to post updates to Facebook and Twitter
- **Get up to speed on all the fun** — try out some non-phone activities such as shooting videos, creating an image gallery, playing tunes, and more
- **Take your smartphone to new places** — find out how to travel with your Nexus One, from taking the phone overseas and making international calls to customizing the phone and troubleshooting



"This book will make you one with your Nexus One. Dan Gookin's simple, easy-to-understand instruction will walk you through all there is to know about your smartphone and turn you into a Nexus One pro."

— Erick Tseng, Senior Product Manager, Android, Google



Open the book and find:

- How to set up and modify your phone
- Steps for building your Contacts list
- Tips for sending text and multimedia messages
- All about using e-mail and surfing the Web
- How to take and edit pictures and record video
- Turn your phone into a portable music player
- Download and install new apps
- Secrets for customizing your phone

Go to **Dummies.com**®
for videos, step-by-step examples,
how-to articles, or to shop!

For Dummies®
A Branded Imprint of



\$24.99 US / \$29.99 CN / £17.99 UK

ISBN 978-0-470-64173-6



Dan Gookin wrote the very first *For Dummies* book in 1991. With more than 11 million copies in print, his books have been translated into 32 languages. Dan is the bestselling author of *PCs For Dummies* and *Word For Dummies*. He offers tips and fun at www.wambooli.com.